



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Ezekiel**

**Version 56**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2021-12-21

**Version:** 56

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2021-12-06

**Version:** 32

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2021-09-07

**Version:** 2.1.23

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2021-09-14

**Version:** 0.22

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2021-12-09

**Version:** 24

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2021-11-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>11</b>
Ezekiel	11
Introduction to Ezekiel	12
Ezekiel 1	14
Ezekiel 2	43
Ezekiel 3	54
Ezekiel 4	82
Ezekiel 5	100
Ezekiel 6	118
Ezekiel 7	133
Ezekiel 8	161
Ezekiel 9	180
Ezekiel 10	192
Ezekiel 11	215
Ezekiel 12	241
Ezekiel 13	270
Ezekiel 14	294
Ezekiel 15	318
Ezekiel 16	327
Ezekiel 17	391
Ezekiel 18	416
Ezekiel 19	449
Ezekiel 20	464
Ezekiel 21	514
Ezekiel 22	547
Ezekiel 23	580
Ezekiel 24	630
Ezekiel 25	658
Ezekiel 26	676
Ezekiel 27	698
Ezekiel 28	735
Ezekiel 29	762
Ezekiel 30	784
Ezekiel 31	811
Ezekiel 32	830
Ezekiel 33	864
Ezekiel 34	898
Ezekiel 35	930
Ezekiel 36	946
Ezekiel 37	985
Ezekiel 38	1014
Ezekiel 39	1038
Ezekiel 40	1068
Ezekiel 41	1118
Ezekiel 42	1145
Ezekiel 43	1166
Ezekiel 44	1194
Ezekiel 45	1226
Ezekiel 46	1252

Ezekiel 47 .....	1277
Ezekiel 48 .....	1301
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy .....</b>	<b>1337</b>
Abstract Nouns .....	1338
Active or Passive .....	1340
Apostrophe .....	1343
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information .....	1345
Background Information .....	1349
Biblical Distance .....	1352
Biblical Volume .....	1355
Biblical Weight .....	1359
Doublet .....	1361
Ellipsis .....	1363
Euphemism .....	1366
Exclamations .....	1368
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' .....	1370
First, Second or Third Person .....	1372
Forms of You .....	1374
Fractions .....	1375
Hebrew Months .....	1377
How to Translate Names .....	1380
Hyperbole .....	1384
Hypothetical Situations .....	1388
Idiom .....	1391
Introduction of a New Event .....	1393
Irony .....	1396
Litotes .....	1399
Merism .....	1401
Metaphor .....	1403
Metonymy .....	1409
Nominal Adjectives .....	1411
Numbers .....	1413
Order of Events .....	1416
Ordinal Numbers .....	1418
Parables .....	1421
Parallelism .....	1423
Personification .....	1426
Pronouns .....	1428
Proverbs .....	1430
Reflexive Pronouns .....	1433
Rhetorical Question .....	1436
Simile .....	1439
Symbolic Action .....	1442
Symbolic Language .....	1444
Symbolic Prophecy .....	1446
Synecdoche .....	1449
Textual Variants .....	1451
Translate Unknowns .....	1453
Verse Bridges .....	1456
When Masculine Words Include Women .....	1458

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>1460</b>
abomination, abominable	1461
Abraham, Abram	1462
Adam	1463
adversary, enemy	1464
alien, foreigner, sojourn	1465
Almighty	1466
altar	1467
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...	1468
Amorite	1469
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1470
anoint, anointed, anointing	1472
appoint, appointed	1473
Arabah	1474
Asher	1475
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	1476
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1478
atonement, atone, atoned	1479
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1480
barley	1481
barren, dry	1482
Bashan	1483
beast	1484
Benaiah	1485
Benjamin, Benjaminite	1486
bless, blessed, blessing	1487
blood	1489
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	1491
bread	1492
bronze	1493
brother	1494
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1495
burnt offering, offering by fire	1496
bury, buried, burial	1497
call, call out	1498
camel	1500
Canaan, Canaanite	1501
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	1502
cedar, cedarwood	1503
Chaldea, Chaldean	1504
cherub	1505
chief, leader	1506
Christ, Messiah	1507
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1509
clean, wash	1511
column, pillar	1513
comfort, comforts, comforter, un comforted	1514
command, commandment	1515
confirm, confirmation, legal	1516
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1517
consume, devour	1518
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	1519

court, courtyard .....	1521
covenant .....	1522
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox .....	1524
crown, crowned .....	1525
cry, cry out, outcry .....	1526
cut off, cut down .....	1527
darkness .....	1528
David .....	1529
declare, proclaim, announce .....	1530
decree, decreed .....	1531
delight .....	1532
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	1533
descend, descendant .....	1534
desert, wilderness .....	1535
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted .....	1536
destroy, destruction, annihilate .....	1537
devour .....	1538
die, dead, deadly, death .....	1539
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious .....	1541
dominion .....	1542
donkey, mule .....	1543
earth, land .....	1544
Egypt, Egyptian .....	1545
elder, older, old .....	1546
En Gedi .....	1547
Ephraim, Ephraimite .....	1548
Ethiopia, Ethiopian .....	1549
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	1550
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins .....	1552
exalt, exalted, exaltation .....	1553
exile, exiled .....	1554
Ezekiel .....	1555
face, facial .....	1556
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	1558
famine .....	1560
fear, afraid, frighten .....	1561
feast, feasting .....	1562
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot .....	1563
firstfruits .....	1564
flesh .....	1565
flock, herd .....	1566
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned .....	1567
forsake, forsaken, leave .....	1569
freewill offering .....	1570
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful .....	1571
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	1573
Gad .....	1574
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway .....	1575
Gilead, Gileadite .....	1576
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ... ..	1577
glory, glorious, glorify .....	1578
God .....	1580

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	1582
gold, golden .....	1584
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	1585
govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha .....	1587
grain offering .....	1588
grain, grainfields .....	1589
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place .....	1590
Greece, Grecian .....	1591
groan .....	1592
hand .....	1593
hang, hung .....	1595
head .....	1596
heart .....	1597
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	1598
Hittite .....	1600
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	1601
honey, honeycomb .....	1603
honor .....	1604
hope, hoped .....	1605
horse, warhorse, horseback .....	1606
horseman .....	1607
house, household .....	1608
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	1610
iniquity .....	1612
Israel, Israelites .....	1613
Issachar .....	1615
Jacob, Israel .....	1616
Jerusalem .....	1617
Job .....	1619
Jordan River, Jordan .....	1620
Joseph (OT) .....	1621
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	1622
Judah .....	1624
Judea, Judah .....	1625
judge, judgment .....	1626
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	1628
Kedar .....	1630
Kerethites .....	1631
king, kingship .....	1632
kingdom .....	1633
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	1635
lamb, Lamb of God .....	1637
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	1639
Lebanon .....	1641
Levi, Levite .....	1642
life, live, living, alive .....	1643
lion, lioness .....	1645
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	1646
lots, casting lots .....	1648
love, beloved .....	1649
messenger .....	1651
might, mighty, mighty works .....	1652

miracle, wonder, sign .....	1653
Moab, Moabite .....	1655
mourn, mourner, weeping .....	1656
name .....	1657
Naphtali .....	1658
nation .....	1659
Nebuchadnezzar .....	1661
Negev .....	1662
new moon .....	1663
Noah .....	1664
noble, nobleman, royal official .....	1665
oath, swear, swearing, swear by .....	1666
oil .....	1667
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs .....	1668
Passover .....	1669
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	1671
people of God .....	1672
people, people group .....	1673
perish .....	1675
persecute .....	1676
Persia, Persians .....	1677
Philistines .....	1678
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	1679
priest, priesthood .....	1681
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ... ..	1683
profane, profaned .....	1684
promise, promised .....	1685
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess .....	1686
prosper, prosperity, prosperous .....	1688
prostitute, harlot, whored .....	1689
prostrate, bow down, worship .....	1690
proud, pride, prideful .....	1691
provoke, provoked, provocation .....	1693
pure, purify, purification .....	1694
purple .....	1695
Rabbah .....	1696
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	1697
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness .....	1699
redeem, redeemer, redemption .....	1700
reign, rule .....	1701
remnant .....	1702
repent, repentance .....	1703
report, reported, tell, reputation .....	1705
rest, rested, restless .....	1706
restore, restoration .....	1707
return, turn back .....	1708
Reuben .....	1709
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	1710
robe, robed .....	1712
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader .....	1713
Sabbath .....	1714
sackcloth .....	1716



sacrifice, sacrifices, offering .....	1717
Samaria, Samaritan .....	1719
sanctuary .....	1720
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	1721
scribe .....	1723
seed, semen .....	1724
seek, search, look for .....	1725
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	1726
set apart .....	1729
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach .....	1730
sign, proof, reminder .....	1732
silver .....	1734
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	1735
slaughter, slaughtered .....	1737
Sodom .....	1738
son .....	1739
spirit, wind, breath .....	1741
statute .....	1743
strength, strengthen, strong .....	1744
sword, swordsmen .....	1746
tabernacle .....	1747
Tarshish .....	1748
temple, house, house of God .....	1749
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence .....	1751
threshold, doorway .....	1753
throne, enthroned .....	1754
time, untimely, date .....	1755
transgress, transgression .....	1756
tremble, stagger, shake .....	1757
trespass .....	1758
tribe, tribal, tribesmen .....	1759
trumpet, trumpeters .....	1760
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .....	1761
Tyre, Tyrians .....	1762
unleavened bread .....	1763
vine .....	1764
vineyard .....	1765
virgin, virginity .....	1766
voice .....	1767
vow .....	1768
walk, walked .....	1769
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware .....	1770
wheat .....	1771
wine, wineskin, new wine .....	1772
winnow, sift .....	1773
wise men, advisor .....	1774
wrath, fury .....	1775
Yahweh .....	1776
Zadok .....	1778
zeal, zealous .....	1779

<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>1780</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	1780

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors ..... 1786  
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors ..... 1787  
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors ..... 1788



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Ezekiel**

## Introduction to Ezekiel

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of Ezekiel

Yahweh calls Ezekiel to speak his words (1:1–3:27)  
Yahweh judges Judah and Jerusalem (4:1–24:27)  
Ezekiel prophesies against nearby nations (25:1–32:32)  
Yahweh explains the fall of Jerusalem (33:1–33)  
Ezekiel brings messages of hope (34:1–48:35)  
A new shepherd (34:1–31)  
Edom destroyed (35:1–15)  
Israel restored (36:1–37:28)  
Gog and Magog (38:1–39:29)  
Jerusalem and the temple restored (40:1–48:35)

#### What is Ezekiel about?

The Book of Ezekiel contains words that Ezekiel prophesied between 592 B.C. and 573 B.C. The Jewish people were exiled in Babylonia. Ezekiel told them that God had punished them because they sinned against him. However, Ezekiel assured them that God would restore them. God was using Babylon to punish them. But eventually another nation would defeat the Babylonians. Ezekiel also prophesied about how God will restore Jerusalem and the temple so that the people can worship and sacrifice to him again. Ezekiel then described how the land will be divided again among the tribes of Israel.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

“Ezekiel” or “The Book of Ezekiel” is the traditional name for this book. Translators may also call it “The Messages from God Brought by Ezekiel.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Who wrote the Book of Ezekiel?

Ezekiel wrote the prophecies in the Book of Ezekiel. He was a prophet and priest who lived near Babylon in the time of the exile.

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What was Ezekiel’s temple?

Several chapters of the Book of Ezekiel give instructions about building a new temple. However, this temple is not the same as the temple the people would build after going back to Jerusalem. Because Ezekiel’s temple has never been built, some scholars think that this temple is to be built in the future. Other scholars think that Ezekiel’s temple is symbolic of the Church.

#### Do the sacrifices in Ezekiel follow the law of Moses?

The sacrifices in Ezekiel 46 are somewhat different than the required sacrifices in Numbers 28. This may be because Ezekiel prophesied about a new temple with new sacrifices.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### How should one represent Ezekiel's visions in translation?

The Book of Ezekiel has many complicated visions. Some are similar to passages in other Scripture books that describe future events. Some of these visions are about God rescuing Israel in the distant future. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

It is unclear whether Ezekiel actually traveled to the particular places named in the visions, or whether what he described were mental ideas. For this reason, Ezekiel's viewpoint is sometimes difficult to understand, even though the meanings of the visions may be clear.

Translators should avoid trying to explain these visions in their translations. Instead, they should present the visions just as they are in the source text.

### What does "and you will know that I am Yahweh" mean?

This is a common phrase in the Book of Ezekiel. It is meant to assure the reader that these messages truly came from God, and that he will do what he has promised. The translator may also use the phrase "and you will understand that I am Yahweh and what I say will happen." The UST translates it as "then you will know that I, Yahweh, have the power to do what I say that I will do."

# Ezekiel 1

## Ezekiel 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

#### Ezekiel's call

Ezekiel had a vision of God calling him to prophetic ministry. (See: [call](#), [call out](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Ezekiel 1:1

### In the thirtieth year

This is the thirtieth year of Ezekiel's life. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month

"the fifth day of the fourth month." This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is around the end of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### it came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### I was living among the captives

The word "I" refers to Ezekiel. "I was one of the captives"

### I saw visions of God

"God showed me unusual things"

### the Kebar Canal

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. "the Kebar River"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the captives](#)
- [The heavens](#)
- [of God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the thirtieth year, the fourth month, and the fifth day of the month, it came about that I was living among [the captives](#) by the Kebar Canal. [The heavens](#) opened, and I saw visions of [God](#).

## Ezekiel 1:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of King

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> On the fifth day of that month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—



## Ezekiel 1:3

### to Ezekiel ... upon him there

Ezekiel speaks of himself as if he were another person. Alternate translation: “to me, Ezekiel ... upon me there” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### the word of Yahweh came to Ezekiel

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to Ezekiel” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Buzi

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the hand of Yahweh was upon him

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. Alternate translation: “Yahweh was controlling him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [Ezekiel](#)
- [son](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Chaldeans](#)
- [and the hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> the word of Yahweh came to Ezekiel son of Buzi the priest, in the land of the Chaldeans by the Kebar Canal, and the hand of Yahweh was upon him there.

## Ezekiel 1:4

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

### a windstorm

This is a storm that has a lot of wind.

### coming from the north

North is the direction to your left when you look toward the sun while it is rising.

### a great cloud with fire flashing within it

This can be translated as a new sentence: "The storm had a very large cloud with fire flashing in it"

### fire flashing

This could mean: (1) "flashing lightning" or (2) "constant lightning."

### brightness surrounding it and inside of it

"a very bright light was around the cloud and inside of it"

### the color of amber

"bright yellow like amber" or "bright yellow" or "glowing yellow"

### amber

a hard yellow resin that is used as a beautiful decoration on jewelry

### Translation Words - ULT

- windstorm
- with fire
- and the fire

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then I looked, and there was a windstorm coming from the north; a great cloud with fire flashing within it and brightness surrounding it and inside of it, and the fire was the color of amber inside the cloud.

## Ezekiel 1:5

### In the middle

“Inside the storm”

### the likeness of four living creatures

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like these things. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “what looked like four living creatures” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### This was their appearance

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “This is what they looked like” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### They had the likeness of a man

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “The four creatures looked like people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of a man](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> In the middle was the likeness of four living creatures. This was their appearance: They had the likeness of a man,

## Ezekiel 1:6

**but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings**

“but each of them had four different faces and four wings.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> but they had four faces each, and each of the creatures had four wings.

## Ezekiel 1:7

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

### but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf

“but their feet looked like calf hooves” or “but their feet looked like the feet of calves”

### hooves of a calf

the hard part of a calf’s foot

### that shone like polished bronze

“that were shiny like bronze that has been polished.” This describes the feet of the creatures. Alternate translation: “and they shone like polished bronze” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were straight](#)
- [bronze](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Their legs [were straight](#), but the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf that shone like polished [bronze](#).

## Ezekiel 1:8

### on all four sides

“on all four sides of their bodies”

### For all four, their faces and wings were like this

“For all four of the creatures, their wings and their faces were like this”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yet they had human
- hands
- their faces

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Yet they had human hands under their wings on all four sides. For all four, their faces and wings were like this:

## Ezekiel 1:9

### they did not turn as they went

“the creatures did not turn as they moved”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- as they...went

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> their wings were touching the wings of the next creature, and they did not turn as they went; instead, each one went straight forward.

## Ezekiel 1:10

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

### The likeness of their faces was like the face of a man

Ezekiel is describing the faces of the creatures on their front side. The abstract noun "likeness" means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a man's face. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "The face of each creature looked like the face of a man" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The likeness of [their faces was like the face of a man](#). The four of them [had the face of a lion](#) to the right side, and the four of them [had the face](#) of an ox on the left side. They four [had also the face](#) of an eagle.

### The four of them had the face of a lion to the right side

"The face on the right side of each one's head looked like the face of a lion"

### the four of them had the face of an ox on the left side

"the face on the left side of the head of each one looked like the face of an ox"

### They four had also the face of an eagle

"The face on the back of the head of each one looked like the face of an eagle"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their faces was like](#)
- [had also the face](#)
- [had the face](#)
- [had the face](#)
- [the face of \(2\)](#)
- [of...a man](#)
- [of a lion](#)



## Ezekiel 1:11

**their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing**

“each creature held up two of his wings so that one wing touched the wing of the creature on one side of him, and the other wing touched the wing of the creature on the other side of him”

**and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies**

This can be translated as a new sentence: “The other two wings of each creature covered its body”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Their faces were like that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [Their faces were like that](#), and their wings were spread out above, so that each creature had a pair of wings that touched another creature's wing, and also a pair of wings that covered their bodies.

## Ezekiel 1:12

### Each went straight forward

“Each creature moved with a face looking forward”

### Translation Words - ULT

- went
- go
- directed

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Each **went** straight forward, so that wherever the Spirit **directed** them to **go**, they went without turning.

## Ezekiel 1:13

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

### As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like these things. Both “likeness” and “appearance” are abstract nouns that can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “As for what the living creatures looked like, they were similar to burning coals” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### there were flashes of lightning

“lightning came out from the fire.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of fire
- there were flashes
- also moved
- among

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> As for the likeness of the living creatures, their appearance was like burning coals of fire, like the appearance of torches; bright fire also moved about among the creatures, and there were flashes of lightning.

## Ezekiel 1:14

### The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they had the appearance of lightning

Lightning flashes and then disappears quickly, and the creatures moved from one place to another quickly. The abstract noun

“appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “The living creatures were moving swiftly back and forth, and they looked like lightning” (See: [Simile](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The living creatures were moving swiftly [back and forth](#), and they had the appearance of lightning!

### Translation Words - ULT

- [back and forth](#)

## Ezekiel 1:15

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of

#### ULT

**15** Then I looked at the living creatures; and I saw one wheel on the ground beside each of living creatures with its four faces.

## Ezekiel 1:16

### This was the appearance and structure of the wheels

“This is what the wheels looked like and how they were made”

#### like beryl

Beryl is a kind of clear, valuable stone, often of yellow or golden color. “clear and yellow like a beryl stone” or “clear and yellow like a precious stone”

#### the four had the same likeness

Here the abstract noun “likeness” refers to what the four wheels looked like. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “all four of the wheels looked the same” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### their appearance and structure was like a wheel intersecting another wheel

The abstract nouns “appearance” and “structure” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “they appeared to be made with one wheel going through another wheel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> This was the appearance and structure of the wheels: Each wheel was like beryl, and the four had the same likeness; their appearance and structure was like a wheel intersecting another wheel.

## Ezekiel 1:17

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel continues to describe his vision.

### they went in any of their four directions

This could mean: (1) “their” refers to the creatures. Alternate translation: “they would go straight in any one of the four directions that the creatures looked towards” or (2) “their” refers to the wheels.

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> As they moved, they went in any of their four directions, without turning as they went.

### Translation Words - ULT

- they went

## Ezekiel 1:18

### As for their rims

“This is what the rims of the wheels looked like”

### they were high and fearsome

“the rims were very tall and awe-inspiring” or “the rims where tall and frightening”

### for the rims were full of eyes round about

“because the rims had very many eyes around all four of the wheels”

#### ULT

**18** As for their rims, they were high and fearsome, for the rims were full of eyes round about.



## Ezekiel 1:19

### When the living creatures rose up from the earth

The creatures were flying in the air after they left the ground.  
Alternate translation: "So when the creatures left the ground and went up into the air" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the wheels also rose up

"the wheels also left the ground and went into the air"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [moved](#)
- [the earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Whenever the living creatures moved, the wheels [moved](#) beside them. When the living creatures rose up from [the earth](#), the wheels also rose up.

## Ezekiel 1:20

### Wherever the Spirit would go, they went

The word “they” refers to the creatures.

### the wheels rose up beside them

“the wheels went up into the air with the living creatures”

### the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels

This could mean: (1) Ezekiel is speaking of the “creatures” of verse 19 as if they were one creature. Alternate translation: “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or (2) Ezekiel is using an idiom. Alternate translation: “the spirit of life was in the wheels” or “the living spirit was in the wheels” or (3) the spirit in the creatures and in the wheels is the same. Alternate translation: “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [go](#)
- [the spirit](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Wherever the Spirit would [go](#), they went, and the wheels rose up beside them, for [the spirit](#) of the living creature was in the wheels.

## Ezekiel 1:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Whenever the creatures moved
- when the creatures stood still
- earth
- the spirit

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Whenever the creatures moved, the wheels also moved; and when the creatures stood still, the wheels stood still; when the creatures rose up from the earth, the wheels rose up beside them, because the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.

## Ezekiel 1:22

### the likeness of an expansive dome

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like “an expansive dome.” The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “what looked like an expansive dome” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### an expansive dome

A dome looks like a hollow ball that is cut in half. “Expansive” means very large. “a huge upside-down bowl”

### awe-inspiring crystal

“awe-inspiring ice” or “crystal that makes people marvel when they look at it”

### stretched out over their heads above

“and the expansive dome was spread out above the heads of the creatures” or “and the expansive dome took up a lot of space over the heads of the creatures”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heads](#)
- [their heads](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Over the [heads](#) of the living creatures was the likeness of an expansive dome; it looked like awe-inspiring crystal stretched out over [their heads](#) above.

## Ezekiel 1:23

### Beneath the dome

“under the dome”

**Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body**

“Each of the living creatures also had two other wings, which they used to cover their bodies”

### Translation Words - ULT

- stretched out straight

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Beneath the dome, each one of the creature’s wings stretched out straight and touched another creature’s wings. Each of the living creatures also had a pair to cover themselves; each had a pair to cover his own body.

## Ezekiel 1:24

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about his vision of the living creatures.

### Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of many waters. Like the voice of the Almighty whenever they moved. Like

The words **whenever they moved** could mean: (1) all the words before them in this verse, “Whenever they moved, I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Like” or (2) to the words that follow, “wings. Like the noise of rushing water. Like the voice of the Almighty. Whenever they moved, it sounded like.”

### Like ... waters. Like ... moved. Like ... rainstorm. Like ... army.

These sentences are not complete because Ezekiel was showing that he was excited about what he saw. They can be translated as complete sentences: “The wings sounded like ... water. They sounded like ... moved. They sounded like ... rainstorm. They sounded like ... army.” (See: [Simile](#))

### many waters

This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to a loud river or a large waterfall or the waves crashing at the ocean. All of these are very loud.

### Like the voice of the Almighty

The Bible sometimes refers to thunder as “the voice of the Almighty.” Alternate translation: “It sounded like the voice of the Almighty God” or “It sounded like the thunder of the Almighty” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Like the sound of a rainstorm

Possible meanings are: (1) “Like the sound of very big storm” or (2) “Like the sound of a very large crowd of people” Alternate translation: “There was a sound that was loud like a big storm” or “There was a sound that was loud like a very large crowd of people” (See: [Simile](#))

### Whenever they stood still

“Whenever the creatures stopped moving”

### they lowered their wings

“the creatures let their wings hang down by their sides.” They did this when they were not using their wings to fly.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Almighty](#)

### ULT

**24** Then I heard the sound of their wings. Like the noise of many waters. Like the voice of [the Almighty](#) whenever they moved. Like the sound of a rainstorm. Like the sound of an army. Whenever they stood still, they lowered their wings.

## Ezekiel 1:25

### A voice came from above the dome

“Someone who was above the dome spoke.” If you need to tell whose voice this is, you should probably identify it as the voice of Yahweh ([Ezekiel 1:3](#)).

### the dome over their heads

“the dome that was over the heads of the creatures”

### the dome

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:23](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their heads](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> A voice came from above the dome over [their heads](#) whenever they stood still and lowered their wings.

## Ezekiel 1:26

### over their heads

“over the heads of the living creatures”

### was the likeness of a throne

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a throne. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “was something that looked like a throne” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### sapphire

a very valuable stone that is clear blue and very shiny

### on the likeness of the throne was

The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “on what looked like a throne there was” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### a likeness like the appearance of a man

The abstract nouns “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with verbal phrases. If you need to tell who this is, you should probably identify him as Yahweh ([Ezekiel 1:3](#)). Alternate translation: “something that looked similar to what appeared to be a man” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their heads](#)
- [of a throne](#)
- [of a man](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Above the dome over [their heads](#) was the likeness [of a throne](#) that was like the appearance of a sapphire stone, and on the likeness of the throne was a likeness like the appearance [of a man](#).



## Ezekiel 1:27

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.

### from the appearance of his hips up

The person's body above the hips looked like glowing metal that had fire in it. The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "from what appeared to be his hips up" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### from the appearance of his hips downward the appearance of fire and brightness all around

The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "all around him below what appeared to be his hips, I saw what looked like fire and a bright light" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a figure with
- in
- of fire

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> I saw a figure with the appearance of glowing metal with fire in it from the appearance of his hips up; I saw from the appearance of his hips downward the appearance of fire and brightness all around.

## Ezekiel 1:28

### Like the appearance of a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day was the appearance of the bright light surrounding it

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb.  
Alternate translation: “The brightness surrounding it appeared to be like the way a rainbow appears in the clouds on a rainy day” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### rainbow

the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer

### It was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of Yahweh

The abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like the glory of Yahweh. Both “appearance” and “likeness” can be translated as with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “It appeared to be what looked like the glory of Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I fell on my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))

### I heard a voice speaking

The word “voice” is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: “I heard someone speaking” or “Someone spoke, and I heard his voice” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the glory of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I fell](#)
- [my face](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Like the appearance of a rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day was the appearance of the bright light surrounding it. It was the appearance of the likeness [of the glory of Yahweh](#). When I saw it, [I fell on my face](#), and I heard a voice speaking.

## Ezekiel 2

### Ezekiel 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call continues in this chapter. God appointed Ezekiel to be a prophet but warned him that the people were very rebellious and would not listen to him. (See: [call](#), [call out](#) and [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Ezekiel 2:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

### He said to me

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)). It was not “the Spirit.”

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [stand up](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> He said to me, “[Son of man](#), [stand up](#) on your feet; then I will speak to you.”

## Ezekiel 2:2

### the Spirit

Other This could mean: (1) "a spirit" or (2) "a wind."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Spirit](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then, as he spoke to me, [the Spirit](#) entered into me and set me on my feet, and I heard him speaking to me.

## Ezekiel 2:3

### up to this very day

“even now” or “even today.” This means that the people of Israel were continuing to disobey God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- the people
- of man
- of Israel
- nations
- have rebelled
- their ancestors

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He said to me, “**Son of man**, I am sending you to **the people of Israel**, to rebellious **nations** that **have rebelled** against me—both they and **their ancestors** have sinned against me up to this very day!

## Ezekiel 2:4

### General Information:

God continues to speak to Ezekiel.

### Their descendants

the descendants of the past generations of Israel who had rebelled against God, referring to the people living in Israel at the time Ezekiel writes

### have stubborn faces

“have expression on their faces that show that they are stubborn”

### stubborn faces and hard hearts

The words “stubborn faces” refer to the way they act on the outside, and the words “hard hearts” refer to the way they think and feel. Together they emphasize that the people of Israel would not change how they lived in order to obey God. (See: [Doublet](#))

### stubborn

This describes a person who refuses to change what he thinks or what he is doing.

### hard hearts

Rocks never change and become soft, and these people never change and become sorry when they do evil things. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [faces](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Their descendants have stubborn [faces](#) and hard [hearts](#). I am sending you to them, and you will say to them, ‘This is what [the Lord](#) Yahweh says.’

## Ezekiel 2:5

### house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Alternate translation: "people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a prophet has been among them

"the one whom they have refused to listen to was a prophet"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [will at least know that](#)
- [a prophet](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Either they will listen or they will not listen. They are a rebellious [house](#), but they [will at least know that a prophet](#) has been among them.



## Ezekiel 2:6

### General Information:

God continues to speak to Ezekiel

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You, [son of man](#), do not [be afraid](#) of them or their words. Do not [be afraid](#), although you are with briers and thorns and although you live with scorpions. Do not [fear](#) their words or [be dismayed by](#) their faces, since they are a rebellious [house](#).

### briers and thorns and ... scorpions

These words describe the people of Israel who will not treat Ezekiel kindly when he tells them what God says. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### briers and thorns

Briers are bushes with sharp points on the branches. The sharp points on the branches are called thorns.

### scorpions

A scorpion is a small animal with two front claws, six legs, and a large tail with a poisonous stinger. Its sting is very painful.

### Do not fear their words

“Do not be afraid of what they say.”

### be dismayed by their faces

The words “their faces” are a metonym for the message the people express with their faces. Alternate translation: “lose your desire to serve me because of the way they look at you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [be afraid](#)
- [be afraid](#)
- [fear](#)
- [be dismayed by](#)
- [house](#)

## Ezekiel 2:7

### General Information:

God continues to speak to Ezekiel.

### are most rebellious

“are very rebellious” or “totally rebel against me”

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But you will speak my words to them, whether they listen or not, because they are most rebellious.

## Ezekiel 2:8

### house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [house](#)
- [eat what](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But you, [son of man](#), listen to what I am saying to you. Do not be rebellious like that rebellious [house](#). Open your mouth and [eat what](#) I am about to give to you!”

## Ezekiel 2:9

### a hand was extended out to me

This could mean: (1) a person in the heavens had extended his hand out toward Ezekiel and all Ezekiel could see was from the hand to the elbow or shoulder or (2) the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)) extended his hand.

### a written scroll

“a scroll that had writing on it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a hand

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then I looked, and a hand was extended out to me; in it was a written scroll.

## Ezekiel 2:10

### He spread it out

The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)).

### it had been written on both its front and back

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone had written on both its front and its back” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “lamentations,” “mourning,” and “woe.” Alternate translation: “someone had written on it that these people would lament, be sad the way they would be if someone they loved had died, and have bad things happen to them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [both its front](#)

#### ULT

**10** He spread it out before me; it had been written on [both its front](#) and back, and written on it were lamentations, mourning, and woe.

## Ezekiel 3

### Ezekiel 3 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Ezekiel's call concludes in this chapter. God told Ezekiel more about what he should say to the people and how he should say it. (See: [call](#), [call out](#))

## Ezekiel 3:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

### He said to me

The word “He” refers to the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)).

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### what you have found

This refers to the scroll that God was giving him ([Ezekiel 2:9](#)).

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [Eat](#)
- [eat](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> He said to me, “[Son of man](#), what you have found, [eat](#). [Eat](#) this scroll, then go speak to [the house of Israel](#).”

## Ezekiel 3:2

### that scroll

Many versions have "the scroll" or "this scroll."

### Translation Words - ULT

- he fed

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So I opened my mouth, and he fed me that scroll.



## Ezekiel 3:3

### feed your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll

The word “belly” refers to the part of the body people can see from the outside. The word “stomach” refers to the internal organs inside the belly.

### it was as sweet as honey

Honey tastes sweet, and the scroll tasted sweet.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- feed
- So I ate it

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He said to me, “[Son of man](#), [feed](#) your belly and fill your stomach with this scroll that I have given to you!” [So I ate it](#), and it was as sweet as honey in my mouth.

## Ezekiel 3:4

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that he saw.

### he said to me

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” ([Ezekiel 1:26](#)). It was not “the Spirit.”

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [go](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, “[Son of man](#), go to [the house of Israel](#) and speak my words to them.

## Ezekiel 3:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a people
- the house
- of Israel

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For you are not being sent to a people of strange speech or difficult language, but to the house of Israel—

**Ezekiel 3:6****of strange speech or a difficult language**

“who speak a strange or difficult language”

**not to many peoples of strange speech**

“I am not sending you to a mighty nation whose people speak a strange language”

**if I sent you to them, they would have listened to you**

This is a hypothetical situation that could have happened but did not. Yahweh did not send Ezekiel to people who did not understand his language. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**if I sent you to them**

The word “them” refers to a mighty nation other than Israel.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [peoples](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> not to many [peoples](#) of strange speech or a difficult language, whose words you cannot understand. Surely if I sent you to them, they would have listened to you.

## Ezekiel 3:7

### strong browed and hard hearted

These mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “very rebellious” or “very stubborn” (See: [Doublet](#))

### strong browed

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “unwilling to change” (See: [Idiom](#))

### hard hearted

This phrase suggests that the people resist God and are unwilling to obey him. The heart is used to describe the place in the body where a person decides what they want to do. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But the house](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel is](#)
- [and hard](#)
- [hearted](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [But the house of Israel](#) will not be willing to listen to you, for they are not willing to listen to me. So all [the house of Israel is](#) strong browed [and hard hearted](#).

## Ezekiel 3:8

### General Information:

The Spirit of God continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts Ezekiel to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### I have made your face as hard as their faces

A hard face is a metaphor for being stubborn. Alternate translation: “I have made you as stubborn as they are” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I have made ... your brow as hard as their brows

The “brow” is the forehead or eyebrow and is a metonym for what the person thinks. Alternate translation: “I have made ... you strong so you will not stop doing what you are doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your face](#)
- [their faces](#)
- [hard](#)
- [as hard](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Behold! I have made [your face](#) as [hard](#) as [their faces](#) and your brow [as hard](#) as their brows.

## Ezekiel 3:9

### I have made your brow like a diamond, harder than flint

“I have made your brow like the hardest stone, harder than flint”

#### flint

a stone that is hard enough to start a fire by hitting it with metal or another stone

#### house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [harder](#)
- [fear](#)
- [or be discouraged](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I have made your brow like a diamond, [harder](#) than flint! Do not [fear](#) them [or be discouraged](#) by their faces, since they are a rebellious [house](#).”

## Ezekiel 3:10

### take them into your heart and hear them with your ears

Here “heart” represents a person’s mind. Alternate translation: “remember them and listen carefully” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then he said to me, “[Son of man](#), all the words that I announce to you—take them into your heart and hear them with your ears!



## Ezekiel 3:11

### Then go to the captives

The word “captives” refers to the people of Israel who were living in Babylon.

### your people

“your people group.” Ezekiel had lived in Judah before the Babylonians took him to Babylon.

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the captives](#)
- [your people](#)
- [your people](#)
- [the Lord](#)

#### ULT

11 Then go to [the captives](#), to [your people](#), and speak to them. Say to them, 'This is what [the Lord](#) Yahweh says,' whether they will listen or not."

## Ezekiel 3:12

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues telling about the vision he saw.

### I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!”

Some versions take “Blessed ... place!” as a words that the “great earthquake” spoke: “I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake, which said, ‘Blessed be the glory of Yahweh from his place!’” Others understand the sound of the earthquake as the sound of the glory of Yahweh leaving his place, “as the glory of Yahweh left its place, I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake.”

### the sound of a great earthquake

It is not clear if the sound came from an earthquake, from a voice that was loud like an earthquake, or from the wings and wheels. Alternate translation: “a sound like the sound of a great earthquake” or “a voice speaking; the voice sounded like a great earthquake” or “a loud rumbling noise”

### the glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

### the sound of a great earthquake

“a loud, deep and powerful rumbling sound like the sound of an earthquake”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the Spirit lifted me up](#)
- [Blessed](#)
- [be the glory](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**12** [Then the Spirit lifted me up](#), and I heard behind me the sound of a great earthquake: “[Blessed be the glory of Yahweh](#) from his place!”

## Ezekiel 3:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> It was the sound of the wings of the living creatures as they touched one another, and the sound of the wheels that were with them, and the sound of a great earthquake.

## Ezekiel 3:14

### General Information:

Ezekiel seems to have been angry because Yahweh had sent him to speak to the Israelite exiles, thus rebelling against Yahweh himself. Though he was supposed to speak to them, he sat in silence for seven days, even though he could feel the anger of Yahweh “powerfully pressing on” him.

### ULT

**14** The Spirit lifted me up and took me away, and I went with bitterness in my spirit’s rage, for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me!

### away, and I went with bitterness in my spirit’s rage

The words “bitterness” and “rage” are types of anger. This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “away. I was bitter and my spirit was full of anger” or “away. I was very bitter and angry”

### bitterness

Ezekiel speaks of his anger at Yahweh as if there were a bad taste in his mouth because Yahweh had forced him to eat something that tasted bad. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for the hand of Yahweh was powerfully pressing on me

Ezekiel speaks of being sad and tired because Yahweh had commanded him to do things he did not want to do as if Yahweh were pushing him down into the ground. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the hand of Yahweh

This could mean: (1) the word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh” or (2) Ezekiel knew that Yahweh was angry with him because he was not obeying Yahweh by speaking to the Israelite exiles. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Spirit](#)
- [in my spirit’s](#)
- [rage](#)
- [for the hand](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [was powerfully pressing](#)

## Ezekiel 3:15

### Tel Aviv

A town in Babylon, about 80 kilometers southeast of the main city, which was also called Babylon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Kebar Canal

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

### overwhelmed in amazement

“unable to do anything because I was so amazed”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the captives](#)
- [overwhelmed in amazement](#)

### ULT

**15** So I went to [the captives](#) at Tel Aviv who lived along the Kebar Canal, and I stayed there among them for seven days, [overwhelmed in amazement](#).

## Ezekiel 3:16

### General Information:

Ezekiel tells about his experience at Tel-Aviv.

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

**16** Then it happened after seven days that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 3:17

### watchman

God told Ezekiel to warn the people of Israel just as a watchman would warn the people of a city if enemies were coming, so that they could prepare and be safe. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

17 “[Son of man](#), I have made you a watchman [for the house of Israel](#), so listen to the word from my mouth, and give them my warning.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [for the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 3:18

### the wicked

“wicked people”

### require his blood from your hand

This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. Alternate translation: “treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When I say](#)
- [but I will require](#)
- [from your hand](#)

### ULT

**18** [When I say](#) to the wicked, ‘You will surely die’ and you do not warn him or speak a warning to the wicked about his evil deeds so he might live—the wicked one will die for his sin, [but I will require](#) his blood [from your hand](#).



## Ezekiel 3:19

### he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked deeds

The phrase “wicked deeds” means the same thing as “wickedness.”  
Alternate translation: “he does not stop doing wicked things” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [turn from](#)
- [your...life](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But if you warn the wicked, and he does not [turn from](#) his wickedness or from his wicked deeds, then he will die for his sin, but you will have rescued your own [life](#).

## Ezekiel 3:20

### set a stumbling block before him

This could mean: (1) “make something bad happen to him” or (2) “cause him to sin openly.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he will die in his sin

“he will die as a sinner” or “he will die as a guilty person because he has disobeyed me”

### I will require his blood from your hand

This is an idiom for holding someone responsible or guilty of murder. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:18](#). Alternate translation: “I will treat you as if you had murdered him” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [If a righteous man](#)
- [in his sin](#)
- [but I will require](#)
- [from your hand](#)

#### ULT

**20** [If a righteous man](#) turns from his righteousness and acts unjustly, and I set a stumbling block before him, he will die. Because you did not warn him, he will die [in his sin](#), and I will not call to mind the righteous deeds that he performed, [but I will require](#) his blood [from your hand](#).

## Ezekiel 3:21

### since he was warned

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “since you warned him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the righteous man
- so that
- to stop sinning
- sins
- live
- he will surely
- your own life

### ULT

**21** But if you warn the righteous man to stop sinning so that he no longer sins, he will surely live since he was warned; and you will have rescued your own life.”

## Ezekiel 3:22

### the hand of Yahweh

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So the hand](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [Go out](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [So the hand of Yahweh](#) was on me there, and he said to me, “Arise! [Go out](#) into the plain, and I will speak with you there!”

## Ezekiel 3:23

### the glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

### the Kebar Canal

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

### I fell on my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and went out](#)
- [the glory](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [was staying](#)
- [so I fell](#)
- [my face](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> I arose [and went out](#) into the plain, and there [the glory of Yahweh was staying](#), like the glory that I had seen beside the Kebar Canal; [so I fell on my face](#).

## Ezekiel 3:24

### he spoke with me

If your language has to identify the one speaking, it would be best to identify the speaker as the “one who looked like a man” (Ezekiel 1:26). It was not “the Spirit.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Spirit
- your house

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The Spirit came to me and stood me up on my feet; and he spoke with me, and said to me, “Go and shut yourself up within your house,

## Ezekiel 3:25

**they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them**

This is best translated literally.

### Translation Words - ULT

- for now, son
- of man
- go out

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> for now, son of man, they will place ropes upon you and tie you so you cannot go out among them.

## Ezekiel 3:26

### General Information:

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### the roof of your mouth

“the top of your mouth”

### you will be mute

“you will not be able to speak”

### house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> I will make your tongue stick to the roof of your mouth, so you will be mute, and you will not be able to rebuke them, since they are a rebellious [house](#).



## Ezekiel 3:27

### I will open your mouth

“I will make you able to speak”

### the one who will not listen will not listen

“the one who refuses to listen will not listen”

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But when I speak with you, I will open your mouth so you will say to them, ‘This is what [the Lord](#) Yahweh says.’ The one who will hear will hear; the one who will not listen will not listen, for they are a rebellious [house](#)!”

## **Ezekiel 4**

### **Ezekiel 4 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Destruction of Jerusalem**

The destruction of Jerusalem is pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the lack of food and water that would occur during the siege of Jerusalem.

## Ezekiel 4:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He tells Ezekiel to take a brick and dirt and pieces of wood and act as if he were Yahweh destroying the city of Jerusalem.

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### carve the city of Jerusalem

You may need to make explicit that Ezekiel is to carve a picture. Alternate translation: “carve a picture of the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [of Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

**1** “But you, [son of man](#), take a brick for yourself and place it before you. Then carve the city [of Jerusalem](#) on it.

## Ezekiel 4:2

### lay siege against it

“surround the city in order to capture it”

### build forts against it

“build strong walls against it.” The walls would keep people from leaving the city.

### Raise up an assault ramp against it

“Build a ramp outside of it for the enemies to get inside.” Jerusalem had a wall around it to protect the people inside. The enemies could only get inside if they had a ramp to climb up over the wall.

### Place battering rams all around it

“Set around it huge poles people would use to break down the gates and get inside.” “Battering rams” are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Place

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then lay siege against it, and build forts against it. Raise up an assault ramp against it and set camps around it. Place battering rams all around it.

## Ezekiel 4:3

### set your face against it

This is a command to stare at the model of the city as a symbol of punishing the city. Alternate translation: “stare at the city” or “stare at the city so that it will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” refers to literally staring at something. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your face against it, for it will be under siege](#)
- [a sign](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then take for yourself an iron pan and use it as an iron wall between yourself and the city and set [your face against it, for it will be under siege](#), and you are to put the siege against it. This will be a [sign](#) to the [house of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 4:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### put the sin of the house of Israel on it

This could mean: (1) “symbolically bear the punishment for the sins of the Israelites” or (2) “suffer by lying on your side because of their sin.”

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you will carry their sin

This could mean: (1) “you will be guilty of their sin” or (2) “you will be punished for their sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated “symbolically” by Ezekiel as noted in the UST.

### lie down against the house of Israel

“lie facing the kingdom of Israel in a hostile manner”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [put](#)
- [the sin](#)
- [the house of Israel](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then, lie on your left side and [put the sin of the house of Israel](#) on it; you will carry their sin for the number of the days that you lie down against [the house of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 4:5

### I myself am assigning to you one day to represent each year of their punishment

“I myself command you to lie on your side for the same number of days as the number of years that I will punish them”

### each year of their punishment

This could mean: (1) each year that they will be punished for their sins or (2) each year that they have sinned.

### 390 days

“three hundred and ninety days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to represent each](#)
- [the sin](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> I myself am assigning to you one day [to represent each](#) year of their punishment: 390 days! In this way, you will carry [the sin of the house of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 4:6

### General Information:

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### these days

the days Ezekiel lies down on his left side to illustrate the siege of the kingdom of Israel

### you will carry the sin

This could mean: (1) “you will be guilty of the sin” or (2) “you will be punished for the sin.” Either of these meanings will be demonstrated symbolically by Ezekiel as noted in the UST. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 4:4](#).

### the house of Judah

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I am assigning to you one day for each year

“I will make you do this one day for each year that I will punish them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Judah](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When you have completed these days, then lie down a second time on your right side, for you will carry [the sin of the house of Judah](#) for forty days. I am assigning to you one day for each year.



## Ezekiel 4:7

### Set your face toward Jerusalem that is under siege

This is a command to stare at the model of Jerusalem as a symbol of punishing Jerusalem. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). Alternate translation: “Stare at Jerusalem that is under siege” or “Stare at Jerusalem that is under siege, so that it will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Set [your face](#) toward [Jerusalem](#) that is under siege, and with your arm uncovered [prophesy](#) against it.

### Set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze. “Set your face” refers to literally staring at something. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### prophesy against it

“prophesy about the bad things that will happen to Jerusalem”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your face](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [prophesy](#)

## Ezekiel 4:8

### For behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### I am placing bonds on you

Bonds are ropes or chains that keep a person from moving. It is not clear whether the word “bonds” is a metaphor for something Yahweh does that is as if he had bound Ezekiel or if he is using literal, physical ropes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For behold! I am placing bonds on you so you will not turn from one side to the other until you have [completed](#) the days of your siege.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [completed](#)

## Ezekiel 4:9

### General Information:

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### wheat, barley ... millet, and spelt

These are different kinds of grains.

### beans

vines whose seeds, which grow in a single row inside its otherwise empty fruit, can be eaten

### lentils

These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### 390 days

“three hundred and ninety days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wheat](#)
- [you will eat it](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Take for yourself [wheat](#), barley, beans, lentils, millet, and spelt; put them in a single container and make bread for yourself according to the number of the days that you will lie upon your side. For 390 days [you will eat it](#).

## Ezekiel 4:10

### twenty shekels per day

“20 shekels per day.” A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: 200 grams of bread each day” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- eat
- you will eat it

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The food you will eat will be by weight, twenty shekels per day, and you will eat it at set times each day.

## Ezekiel 4:11

### a sixth of a hin

“1/6 hin” or “a sixth part of a hin” or “about one-half liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Fractions](#))

### a hin

A hin is 3.7 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### ULT

**11** Then you will drink water, measured out to a sixth of a hin, and you will drink it at set times.

## Ezekiel 4:12

### General Information:

The Spirit continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### You will eat it

The word “it” refers to the bread ([Ezekiel 4:9](#)).

### barley cakes

flat bread made of barley ([Ezekiel 4:9](#)) (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### you will bake it on excrement of human dung

“you will cook it over a fire made with pieces of human solid waste.” Your language may have a way of expressing this politely.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You will eat it](#)
- [as barley](#)
- [of human](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You will eat it as barley cakes, but you will bake it on excrement of human dung within their sight!”

## Ezekiel 4:13

### will banish

will send away by force

### Translation Words - ULT

- For Yahweh
- that the bread
- that the people of Israel
- that the people of Israel
- will eat
- among the nations

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For Yahweh says, “This means that the bread that the people of Israel will eat will be unclean, there among the nations where I will banish them.”

## Ezekiel 4:14

### Alas, Lord Yahweh

“Lord Yahweh, it would be wrong for me to do that.” Ezekiel is very troubled by what the Lord has told him to do.

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#). Here Ezekiel is speaking to the Lord.

### foul meat has never entered my mouth

“I have never eaten foul meat”

### foul meat

“disgusting, unclean meat.” This refers to meat that is unclean because it has come from an animal that has died of sickness or old age or was killed by another animal. The word “foul” shows his disgust over meat like this.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [I have never](#)
- [eaten either anything](#)
- [meat](#)

### ULT

**14** But I said, “Alas, [Lord](#) Yahweh! I have never been unclean! [I have never eaten either anything](#) that died or anything killed by animals, from my youth until now, and foul [meat](#) has never entered my mouth!”



## Ezekiel 4:15

### Look

“Listen” or “Pay attention to the important thing I will tell you now”

### I have given you

“I will allow you to use”

### cow manure

solid waste from cows. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this.

### human dung

solid waste from humans. Your language may have a polite way of expressing this. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:12](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [human](#)
- [can prepare your bread](#)

### ULT

**15** So he said to me, “Look! I have given you cow manure instead of [human dung](#) so you [can prepare your bread](#) over that.”

## Ezekiel 4:16

### Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### I am breaking the staff of bread in Jerusalem

“I will stop the supply of food to Jerusalem”

### the staff of bread

The supply is called a staff because some people need a staff to walk and do their work, and people need bread to live. Bread represents all kinds of food. Alternate translation: “the supply of food” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### they will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety

You may need to make explicit why they will ration the bread. “they will carefully divide their bread because they fear that there will not be enough” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### rationing

giving small amounts of something of which there is not enough to many people

### rationing it in trembling

The word “shaking” is a metaphor for being afraid and “trembling” represents fear. Alternate translation: “rationing it while shaking” or “rationing it in fear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [bread](#)
- [of...bread](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [and they will eat](#)

### ULT

**16** He also said to me, “[Son of man!](#) Behold! I am breaking the staff of [bread in Jerusalem](#), and they will eat bread while rationing it in anxiety and drink water while rationing it in trembling.

## Ezekiel 4:17

### every man will be dismayed at his brother and waste away

This could mean: (1) “everyone will look at his brother and worry about how much food his brother eats and waste away” or (2) “every one of them will be dismayed and waste away” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Because they will lack [bread](#) and water, every man will be dismayed [at his brother](#) and waste away because of their iniquity.”

### waste away

The phrase “waste away” is usually used of flesh or wood rotting. Here it is a metaphor for wicked people becoming thin and dying because they have no food. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [at his brother](#)

## **Ezekiel 5**

### **Ezekiel 5 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The destruction of Jerusalem**

The destruction of Jerusalem is continued to be pictured in this chapter. Ezekiel showed the destruction of Jerusalem by fire and war.

## Ezekiel 5:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. All instances of “the city” refer to the “city” that Ezekiel carved onto the brick ([Ezekiel 4:1](#)).

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### barber’s razor

“blade for cutting hair”

### pass the razor over your head and your beard

“shave your head and your face” or “remove the hair from your head and the beard from your face”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [sword](#)
- [and pass](#)
- [your head](#)

### ULT

**1** “Then you, [son of man](#), take a sharp [sword](#) as a barber’s razor for yourself, [and pass](#) the razor over [your head](#) and your beard, then take scales to weigh and divide your hair.

## Ezekiel 5:2

### Burn a third of it

“Burn a third of your hair” (See: [Fractions](#))

### midst

middle

### when the days of the siege are completed

“when the days of Jerusalem’s siege have ended” or “when the days have ended that you show how Jerusalem will put under siege”

### take a third of the hair

“take one of the three piles of hair” (See: [Fractions](#))

### strike it with the sword all around the city

“hit it with your sword all over the city”

### scatter a third of it to the wind

“let the wind blow the last third of your hair in different directions” (See: [Fractions](#))

### I will draw out a sword to chase after the people

The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy soldiers who will attack with their swords, and to “draw out a sword” is to send the soldiers into battle. Alternate translation: “I will cause their enemies to pursue them and attack them with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will draw out a sword

“I will pull a sword out of its container”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with the sword](#)
- [a sword to chase](#)
- [Then scatter](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Burn a third of it with fire in the midst of the city when the days of the siege are completed, and take a third of the hair and strike it [with the sword](#) all around the city. [Then scatter](#) a third of it to the wind, and I will draw out [a sword to chase](#) after the people.

## Ezekiel 5:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.

### a small number of hairs from them

“a few hairs from the piles”

### tie them

The word “them” refers to the hairs. This could mean: (1) the hairs were long enough so Ezekiel could tie them or (2) Ezekiel was to sew the hairs or otherwise attach them (3) Ezekiel was to place the hairs loosely in a fold of the garment.

### the folds of your robe

This could mean: (1) “the cloth on your arms” (“your sleeves”) or (2) “the end of the cloth on your robe” (“your hem”) or (3) the fold in the garment where it is tucked into the belt.

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But take a small number of hairs from them and tie them into the folds of your robe.

## Ezekiel 5:4

### Then take

This continues the instructions Yahweh gives to Ezekiel beginning with the words “But take” in verse 3. Ezekiel was to “take a small number of hairs” and “take more of the hair and throw it” when he shaved his hair and beard ([Ezekiel 5:1](#)) and before he burned the hair ([Ezekiel 5:2](#)). You may need to place these verses before those verses. “But when you shave off your hair and beard, and before you burn them, take ... After you have scattered the hair to the wind, then take” (See: [Order of Events](#) and [Verse Bridges](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then take more of the hair and throw it into the midst of the fire; and burn it in the fire; from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel.”

### from there a fire will go out to all the house of Israel

“from there a fire will spread out and burn up all the people of Israel.” Yahweh speaks of how he will punish Israel as if he were going to set fire to a house and of the people of Israel as if they were the family that lives in that house but were at that time outside the house. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the fire
- fire
- a fire
- will go out
- the house
- of Israel



## Ezekiel 5:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak.

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### This is Jerusalem

“This carving represents Jerusalem” ([Ezekiel 4:1](#))

### in the midst of the nations

This could mean: (1) other nations were on all sides of Jerusalem or (2) “more important than all other nations.”

### I have placed her

Jerusalem is referred to as “her” and “she.” (See: [Personification](#))

### other lands

“the neighboring countries” or “the countries around her”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [of the nations](#)
- [with other lands](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this, “This is [Jerusalem](#) in the midst of the nations, where I have placed her, and where I have surrounded her [with other lands](#).”

## Ezekiel 5:6

### The people have rejected my judgments

“The people of Israel and Jerusalem have refused to obey my judgments.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- rejected
- my decrees
- the nations have
- the countries
- walked

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But she has in wickedness **rejected my decrees** more than **the nations have**, and my statutes more than **the countries** that surround her. The people have rejected my judgments and have not **walked** in my statutes.”

## Ezekiel 5:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### Because you are more troublesome than

“because your sinfulness is worse than” or “because you are more unruly than”

### that surround you

“that are all around you.”

### have not walked in my statutes

Walking is a metaphor for the way a person lives. Alternate translation: “have not lived according to my statutes” or “have not obeyed my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### or acted according to my decrees

“or obeyed my decrees”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [walked in](#)
- [my decrees](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, “Because you are more troublesome than [the nations](#) that surround you and have not [walked in](#) my statutes or acted according to [my decrees](#), or even acted according to the decrees of [the nations](#) that surround you,”

## Ezekiel 5:8

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### I will execute judgments within your midst

“I will judge you in various ways” or “I will punish you” .

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- I will execute judgments
- for the nations

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> therefore the Lord Yahweh says this,  
“Behold! I myself will act against you. I will execute judgments within your midst for the nations to see.”

## Ezekiel 5:9

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel and Jerusalem.

### **what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again**

“as I have not done before and will not do in a similar way again” or “like I have never done before and will never do again” .

### **because of all your disgusting actions**

“because of all the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods.

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I will do to you what I have not done and the like of which I will not do again, because of all your disgusting actions.

## Ezekiel 5:10

### **fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers**

Ezekiel is probably telling what will really happen when the people have no food.

### **I will execute judgment on you**

“I will judge you” or “I will punish you severely”

### **scatter to every direction all of you who are left**

“I will force all of you who are left to go to different places.”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- fathers
- their fathers
- will eat
- will eat
- the children
- and sons
- direction
- of you who are left

### **ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Therefore fathers will eat the children in your midst, and sons will eat their fathers, since I will execute judgment on you and scatter to every direction all of you who are left.

## Ezekiel 5:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### defiled ... sanctuary

ruined the place that Yahweh had set aside to be only for his use

### with all your hateful things

“with all of those things of yours that I hate.” You may need to make explicit that this refers to idols: “with all your idols, which I hate” or “with all your disgusting idols.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### with all your disgusting deeds

“with all the disgusting things that you do”

### my eye will not have pity on you

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “I will not pity you” (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

### I will not spare you

“I will surely punish you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [my sanctuary](#)

### ULT

**11** Therefore, as I [live](#)—this is [the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—it is certainly because you have defiled [my sanctuary](#) with all your hateful things and with all your disgusting deeds, that I myself will reduce you in number; my eye will not have pity on you, and I will not spare you.

## Ezekiel 5:12

### they will be consumed by famine in your midst

“many of them will die because of famine”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- and they will be consumed
- by the sword
- and draw out a sword
- Then I will scatter
- direction

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> A third of you will die by plague, and they will be consumed by famine in your midst. A third will fall by the sword surrounding you. Then I will scatter a third in every direction, and draw out a sword to chase after them as well.



## Ezekiel 5:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

### my wrath will be completed

“I will no longer be angry because I will have done everything I wanted to do because I was angry”

### I will cause my fury toward them to rest

The word “fury” means violent anger, and here it is a metonym for punishment. “I will stop punishing them because I will have punished them fully.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will be satisfied

You may need to make explicit why Yahweh will be satisfied. Alternate translation: “I will be satisfied that I have punished them enough” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### when I have completed my fury against them

“when I have finished punishing them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will cause my fury](#)
- [have spoken in my wrath](#)
- [to rest](#)
- [know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**13** Then my wrath will be completed, and I will cause my fury toward them to rest. I will be satisfied, and they will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken in my wrath when I have completed my fury against them.

## Ezekiel 5:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> I will make you a desolation and a reproach to [the nations](#) that surround you in the sight of everyone who passes by.

## Ezekiel 5:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel and Judah.

### in wrath and fury

The words “wrath” and “fury” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh is very angry. Alternate translation: “because I will be very angry with you” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [something...other people to condemn](#)
- [to the nations](#)
- [and fury](#)
- [I, Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So Jerusalem will become [something](#) for [other people to condemn](#) and to mock, a warning and a horror [to the nations](#) that surround you. I will execute judgments against you in wrath [and fury](#), and with a furious rebuke—I, [Yahweh](#) have declared this!

## Ezekiel 5:16

### will send out harsh arrows of famine against you

The word “arrows” is a metonym for the sharp pains that people feel when they have had no food for a long time. Alternate translation: “will make you feel the pain of intense hunger” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### increase the famine on you

“make the famine more severe for you” or “make the famine last longer for you” or “make sure that there is less and less for you to eat”

### break your staff of bread

A “staff” was something that people leaned upon to support them. This phrase is a metaphor that means removing the supply of food that the people were depending upon. See how “staff of bread” is translated in [Ezekiel 4:16](#). Alternate translation: “cut off your food supply” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [against](#)
- [of bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> I will send out harsh arrows of famine [against](#) you that will become the means with which I will destroy you. For I will increase the famine on you and break your staff [of bread](#).

## Ezekiel 5:17

### Plague and blood will pass through you

Sickness and violent death are spoken of as if they were soldiers going through the city killing everyone they could. Alternate translation: "Many people will die of disease, and many others will die in war" (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a famine
- and disasters
- a sword
- I, Yahweh

### ULT

**17** I will send a famine and disasters against you so you will be childless. Plague and blood will pass through you, and I will bring a sword against you—I, Yahweh, have declared this."

## **Ezekiel 6**

### **Ezekiel 6 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Shrines on the hill tops**

God will destroy all those who have been worshiping idols at the hill top shrines.

## Ezekiel 6:1

### General Information:

Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people so that the people of Israel would hear the words and know that Ezekiel's words were for them. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word of [Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 6:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) against the mountains [of Israel](#) and [prophesy](#) to them.

### set your face against the mountains of Israel

This is a command to stare at the mountains as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). Alternate translation: “stare at the mountains of Israel” or “stare at the mountains of Israel so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set your face against the mountains of Israel

The mountains of Israel were far away, so Ezekiel could not see them, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming it. Alternate translation: “turn toward the mountains of Israel and stare” or “stare toward the mountains of Israel so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the mountains of Israel

“the mountains in the land of Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [prophesy](#)



## Ezekiel 6:3

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### I am bringing a sword against you

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “I am bringing soldiers to come and kill you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [The Lord \(2\)](#)
- [a sword](#)
- [and I will destroy](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Say, ‘Mountains [of Israel](#), listen to the word [of the Lord](#) Yahweh! [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this to the mountains and to the hills, to the streambeds, and to the valleys: Behold! I am bringing [a sword](#) against you, [and I will destroy](#) your high places.’

## Ezekiel 6:4

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "People will no longer worship at your altars and your enemy will destroy your pillars" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### I will throw down

Yahweh was speaking of sending soldiers ([Ezekiel 6:3](#)) to do these things. Alternate translation: "I will send soldiers to throw down" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### your dead

"your people who have died"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then your altars](#)
- [and I will throw down](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then your altars will become desolate and your pillars will be destroyed, and I will throw down your dead in front of their idols.

## Ezekiel 6:5

### I will lay ... and scatter

Yahweh was speaking of sending soldiers ([Ezekiel 6:3](#)) to do these things. Alternate translation: "I will send soldiers to lay ... and scatter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the people](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [your altars](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> I will lay the dead bodies [of the people of Israel](#) before their idols, and scatter your bones around [your altars](#).

## Ezekiel 6:6

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### **cities will be laid waste**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Enemy armies will lay waste your cities" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **they will be broken**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "enemy armies will break your altars" or "enemy armies will break them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **your pillars will be cut down**

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated "pillars" in [Ezekiel 6:4](#). Alternate translation: "they will cut down your pillars" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **your works will be wiped away**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one will remember what you have done" or "they will destroy everything you have made" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your altars](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Everywhere you live, cities will be laid waste and the high places ruined, so that [your altars](#) will be laid waste and made desolate. Then they will be broken and disappear, your pillars will be cut down and your works will be wiped away.

## Ezekiel 6:7

### The dead will fall down in your midst

“You will see the enemy kill many people”

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will fall down
- and you will know
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The dead [will fall down](#) in your midst [and you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 6:8

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### some who escape the sword

The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: "some whom the soldiers do not kill" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### when you are scattered throughout the countries

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "when I scatter you in different countries" or "when I force you to live in other countries" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [some who escape the sword](#)
- [among the nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But I will preserve a remnant among you, and there will be [some who escape the sword among the nations](#), when you are scattered throughout the countries.

## Ezekiel 6:9

### I was grieved by their promiscuous heart that turned away from me

Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a woman who sleeps with many people. Alternate translation: "I was sad because they were like a wife who has left me to sleep with other men" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### by their eyes that whored after their idols

Yahweh speaks of the Israelites as if they were a married woman who looks at other men and desires to sleep with them. Alternate translation: "by the way they desired strongly to worship idols" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### they will show loathing on their face for the wickedness which they have committed

This could mean: (1) "their faces will show that they hate themselves because of the wicked things they have done" or (2) "their faces will show that they hate the wicked things that they have done."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nations](#)
- [I](#)
- [by their promiscuous](#)
- [that whored](#)
- [heart](#)
- [for the wickedness](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then those who escape will think of me among the [nations](#) where they will be held captive, that [I](#) was grieved [by their promiscuous heart](#) that turned away from me, and by their eyes [that whored](#) after their idols. Then they will show loathing on their face [for the wickedness](#) which they have committed with all their abominations.

## Ezekiel 6:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- So they will know
- Yahweh
- evil

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So they will know that I am Yahweh. It was for a reason that I said I would bring this evil to them.



## Ezekiel 6:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Ezekiel.

### The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### Clap your hands and stomp your foot

Ezekiel was to do this symbolic action to get the people's attention. This was not applause. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

### Alas

This word is spoken by those who see people doing bad things and realize that bad things will happen to the evildoers as a result. If your language has a similar word, you might want to use it here.

### the house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they will fall by sword, famine, and plague.

To "fall" is a euphemism for to "die." The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation:

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the evil](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [by sword](#)
- [famine](#)

### ULT

**11** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Clap your hands and stomp your foot! Say, 'Alas!' because of all [the evil](#) abominations of [the house of Israel](#)! For they will fall [by sword, famine, and plague](#).

## Ezekiel 6:12

### I will accomplish my fury against them

“I will satisfy my anger against them” or “I will punish them until I am no longer angry”

### Translation Words - ULT

- by the sword
- by famine
- my fury

### ULT

**12** The one far away will die by plague, and the one who is near will fall **by the sword**. Those who remain and survive will die **by famine**. In this way I will accomplish **my fury** against them.

## Ezekiel 6:13

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak

Another possible meaning is "hill, on all the mountain peaks, under every flourishing tree, and under every thick oak."

### flourishing

healthy and growing

### oak

a large tree with strong wood that provided shade for worshipers

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then you will know
- Yahweh
- their altars
- peaks

### ULT

**13** Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when their dead lie among their idols, around their altars, on every high hill—on all the mountain peaks, and under every flourishing tree and thick oak—the places where they burned incense to all their idols.

## Ezekiel 6:14

### Diblah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [land](#)
- [desolate](#)
- [Then they will know that](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**14** I will strike with [my hand](#) and make the [land desolate](#) and a waste, from the wilderness to Diblah, throughout all the places where they live. [Then they will know that I am Yahweh.](#)" <sup>[1]</sup>

6:14 <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies and modern versions have .

## **Ezekiel 7**

### **Ezekiel 7 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Now is the time for punishment**

The people will be punished severely for their idol worship and the temple will be destroyed. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## Ezekiel 7:1

### General Information:

This starts God's prophecy of judgment on Israel.

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 7:2

### the Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### to the land of Israel

The word "land" is a metonym for the people who live on the land. Alternate translation: "to the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### An end!

"The end has come!"

### the four borders of the land

"the entire land" The "four borders" are to the north, east, south, and west.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of the land](#)

#### ULT

2 "You, [son of man](#)—[the Lord Yahweh](#) says this to the land [of Israel](#)." 'An end! An end has come to the four borders [of the land](#).

## Ezekiel 7:3

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### the end is upon you

The "end" is spoken of as if it were a robber attacking the people. Alternate translation: "your life is finished" (See: [Personification](#))

### I am sending out my wrath on you

"Wrath" is spoken of as if it were an arrow that Yahweh was shooting at the people. Alternate translation: "I am angry, and I will punish you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### according to your ways

"according to the things you do" or "because of the wicked things you do"

### I will bring all your abominations upon you

"I will punish you for doing those things that I hate so much"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will judge you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now the end is upon you, for I am sending out my wrath on you, [and I will judge you](#) according to your ways; then I will bring all your abominations upon you.



## Ezekiel 7:4

### For my eyes will not pity you

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: "For I will not pity you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### I will bring your ways upon you

The way a person lives is spoken of as a path on which one walks. Alternate translation: "I will punish you for the things you have done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your abominations will be in your midst

This could mean: (1) "I will punish all of you because of your abominations" or (2) "this will happen as long as you continue to worship idols."

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: "understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God" or "realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [so you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For my eyes will not pity you, and I will not spare you. Instead, I will bring your ways upon you, and your abominations will be in your midst, [so you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 7:5

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:11](#). Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### Disaster! A unique disaster! Behold, it is coming.

These exclamations are meant to make the passage very strong. Alternate translation: "Behold, a terrible disaster is coming, one that no one has ever experienced before"

### Behold, it

"You can be absolutely sure that it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Disaster](#)
- [disaster](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [Disaster!](#) A unique [disaster!](#) Behold, it is coming. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 7:6

### The end has woken up against you

The judgment that is coming is treated as if it were an enemy waking up from sleep. (See: [Personification](#))

#### ULT

6 An end is surely coming. The end has woken up against you. Behold, it is coming!

## Ezekiel 7:7

### the mountains will no longer be joyful

The word “mountains” is a metonym for the people who live on the mountains. Alternate translation: “the people on the mountains will not have any more joy” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- The time

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Your doom is coming to you who inhabit [the land](#). [The time](#) has come; the day of destruction is near, and the mountains will no longer be joyful.

## Ezekiel 7:8

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the people of Israel.

### Now before long

"Very soon now"

### I will pour out my fury against you and fill up my wrath upon you

Yahweh uses the terms "pour out" and "fill up" to speak of his anger as if it were water that he poured out into a jar. These phrases emphasize that Yahweh will punish the people severely. Alternate translation: "I will punish you severely because I am very angry" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### fury

"wrath" or "great anger"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my fury against you](#)
- [when I judge](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now before long I will pour out [my fury against you](#) and fill up my wrath upon you [when I judge](#) you according to your ways and bring all your abominations upon you.

## Ezekiel 7:9

### For my eye will not look compassionately

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: "I will not look on them with compassion" or "I will not be compassionate to them" (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

### I will not spare you

"I will not leave you without punishment" or "I will punish you"

### your abominations will be in your midst so you will know that I am Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 7:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [so you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For my eye will not look compassionately, and I will not spare you. As you have done, I will do to you; and your abominations will be in your midst [so you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#), the one punishing you.

## Ezekiel 7:10

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

### Behold, the day! Behold, it is coming!

"Behold! The day is coming!" You may need to make explicit which day is coming. Alternate translation: "Behold! The day when I will punish you is coming!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Behold

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### Doom has gone out

"Disaster has begun to come to Israel" or "Terrible things have begun to happen"

### The rod has blossomed, arrogance has budded

This could mean: (1) "The people of Israel have grown very proud" or (2) "The people of Israel have become very violent and very proud." (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- out

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Behold, the day! Behold, it is coming!  
Doom has gone out! The rod has blossomed, arrogance has budded!

## Ezekiel 7:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a rod

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Violence has grown up into a rod of wickedness— none of them, and none of their multitude, none of their wealth, and none of their importance will last!



## Ezekiel 7:12

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

### The time is coming; the day has come close

Both "The time" and "the day" refer to the time when God will punish the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "Israel's punishment will happen very soon" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### my anger is on the entire multitude

"I am angry with the whole multitude"

### multitude

a very large number of people. Here it refers to the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The time](#)
- [let the buyer rejoice](#)
- [is on the entire](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> [The time](#) is coming; the day has come close. Do not [let the buyer rejoice](#), nor the seller mourn, since my anger [is on the entire](#) multitude!

**Ezekiel 7:13****as long as they both live**

as long as “the buyer” and “the seller” (7:12) both live

**the vision concerning the entire multitude will not be reversed**

“God will surely do to the multitude what he has shown me”

**none of them will be strengthened**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will not strengthen any of them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [return](#)
- [be reversed](#) (2)
- [will be strengthened](#)

**ULT**

**13** For the seller will not [return](#) to the land he sold as long as they both live, because the vision concerning the entire multitude will not [be reversed](#); and because of their sins, none of them [will be strengthened](#)!

## Ezekiel 7:14

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

### They have blown the trumpet

"They have blown the trumpet to call people to fight against the enemy"

### my anger is on the entire multitude

"I am angry with the whole multitude." See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 7:12](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [marching](#)

#### ULT

**14** They have blown the trumpet and made everything ready, but there is no one [marching](#) to battle; since my anger is on the entire multitude.

## Ezekiel 7:15

### The sword is on the outside

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation:

### the building

the city

### while famine and plague will consume those in the city

The word “consume” is a metaphor for “totally destroy.” Alternate translation: “and most of the people in the city will die from hunger and sickness” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [are inside the building](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [while famine](#)
- [will consume those](#)

#### ULT

**15** The sword is on the outside, and plague and famine [are inside the building](#). Those who are in the field will die [by the sword](#), [while famine](#) and plague [will consume those](#) in the city.

## Ezekiel 7:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**16** But some survivors will escape from among them, and they will go to the mountains. Like doves of the valleys, all of them will moan—each man for his iniquity.

## Ezekiel 7:17

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

### Every hand will falter and every knee will be weak as water

The hands and knees are synecdoches for the people themselves. Alternate translation: "Everyone will be so terrified that they will be unable to work and their knees will become weak so that they cannot stand" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### falter

fail to do what it is supposed to do

### every knee will be weak as water

Another possible translation is, "every knee will flow with water," a euphemism for all the people losing control of their bladders because they are so frightened. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### knee ... weak as water

Water cannot stand up, and the people's knees will be so weak that the people are unable to stand on their legs. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will be weak](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Every hand will falter and every knee will be weak as water,

## Ezekiel 7:18

### terror will cover them

Terror is spoken of as if it were clothing. Alternate translation: "everyone will see how terrified they are" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### baldness on all of their heads

Shaving the head was a sign of sadness. Alternate translation: "all of them will shave their heads" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**18** and they will wear [sackcloth](#), and terror will cover them; [and shame](#) will be on every [face](#), and baldness on all of [their heads](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sackcloth](#)
- [and shame](#)
- [face](#)
- [of their heads](#)

## Ezekiel 7:19

### in the day of Yahweh's rage

"in the day when Yahweh acts on his anger" or "when Yahweh punishes them"

### the day

This can be a time period of more or less than one 24-hour day.

### their hunger will not be satisfied

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will not be able to satisfy their hunger" or "they will still be hungry even after they eat all they have" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### their iniquity has become a stumbling block

This could mean: (1) "because having a lot of gold and silver has led them to sin" or (2) "because they are evil, they are committing sins that show how evil they are."

### Translation Words - ULT

- their silver
- Their silver
- and their gold
- and their gold
- of Yahweh's
- Their lives
- their iniquity

### ULT

**19** They will throw **their silver** into the streets **and their gold** will be like refuse. **Their silver and their gold** will not be able to rescue them in the day of **Yahweh's rage**. **Their lives** will not be saved, and their hunger will not be satisfied, because **their iniquity** has become a stumbling block.



## Ezekiel 7:20

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

### with them

with the jeweled ornaments

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> In their pride they took the beauty of his jeweled ornaments, and with them they made their idolatrous figures, and their detestable things. Therefore, I am turning these into an unclean thing to them.

## Ezekiel 7:21

### I will give those things into the hand of strangers

The word “hand” is used to refer to control. “I will give those idols into the control of people they do not know” or “I will give those idols to people they do not know” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### plunder

things that are stolen or taken by force

### they will defile them

The strangers and wicked people will defile the idols that the people of Israel had made.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [into the hand of](#)
- [of the earth](#)
- [and they will defile them](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then I will give those things [into the hand of](#) strangers as plunder and to the wicked [of the earth](#) as plunder, [and they will defile them](#).

## Ezekiel 7:22

### I will turn my face away

“I will not pay attention” or “I will look away” or “I will not notice”

### my cherished place

“the place I love.” This refers to God’s temple.

### bandits

violent people who steal and destroy

### Translation Words - ULT

- my face
- they defile
- and defile

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then I will turn my face away from them when they defile my cherished place; bandits will enter it and defile it.

## Ezekiel 7:23

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to Ezekiel about Israel.

### Make a chain

Chains are used to hold slaves or prisoners. God says this to show the people that they will become slaves or prisoners.

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Make a chain, because [the land](#) is filled [with the judgment of blood](#), and the city is full of violence.

### the land is filled with the judgment of blood

This could mean: (1) "everywhere in the country God is judging people because they violently killed others" or (2) "the courts everywhere in the country are murdering people." The word "blood" here represents murder and death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the city is full of violence

The city is spoken of as if it were a container, and violence is spoken of as an object that can be put in a container. The abstract noun "violence" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "violence is everywhere in the city" or "many people in the city are doing violent things to others" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [with the judgment](#)
- [of blood](#)

**Ezekiel 7:24****they will possess their houses**

the wicked will take the Israelites' houses

**I will bring an end to the pride of the mighty**

"I will cause the powerful people in Israel to stop being proud of themselves"

**their holy places will be defiled!**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "enemies will defile the places where they worship"  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

**their holy places**

the places in which they worshiped idols

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the most wicked](#)
- [of the nations](#)
- [they will possess](#)
- [their houses](#)
- [of the mighty](#)
- [for their holy places](#)
- [will be defiled](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> So I will bring [the most wicked of the nations](#), and [they will possess their houses](#), and I will bring an end to the pride [of the mighty](#), for [their holy places will be defiled!](#)

## Ezekiel 7:25

### Fear will come

“The people will be afraid”

### They will seek peace

“They will try to make peace with their enemies”

### but there will be none

“but they will be unable to make peace with their enemies”

### Translation Words - ULT

- They will seek
- peace

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Fear will come! They will seek peace, but there will be none.

## Ezekiel 7:26

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Israel.

### Disaster upon disaster will come

Disaster is spoken of as if it could move by itself. Alternate translation: "One disaster after another will happen" (See: [Personification](#))

### they will seek a vision from the prophet

"they will ask the prophets what visions they have seen"

### the law will perish from the priest and advice from the elders

"The priests will not teach the law, and the elders will not be able to give good advice." This is because God will not give them wisdom.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they will seek](#)
- [will perish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Disaster upon disaster will come, and there will be rumor after rumor. [Then they will seek](#) a vision from the prophet, but the law [will perish](#) from the priest and advice from the elders.

## Ezekiel 7:27

### the prince

This could mean: (1) “the king’s son” or (2) every male member of the royal family except the king.

### will dress in despair

This could mean: (1) clothing is a metonym for what a person feels, “will have no hope,” or (2) “will dress in clothes that show he is mourning.” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### the hands of the people of the land will tremble in fear

The word “hands” is a synecdoche for the people. Alternate translation: “the people of the land will be so afraid that their hands will tremble” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The king](#)
- [will mourn](#)
- [in despair](#)
- [while the hands](#)
- [of the people](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [with their own standards](#)
- [until they know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

27 [The king will mourn](#) and the prince will dress [in despair](#), [while the hands of the people of the land](#) will tremble in fear. According to their own ways I will do this to them! I will judge them [with their own standards until they know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).”

7:5 <sup>[1]</sup> some ancient copies have



## **Ezekiel 8**

### **Ezekiel 8 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Judah's sin**

The people have contaminated the temple with their worship of other gods and through their sin. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## Ezekiel 8:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel tells about another vision he saw.

### So it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### in the sixth year

You may need to make explicit the time period of which this is the sixth year. Alternate translation: "in the sixth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month

This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of September on Western calendars. Alternate translation: "the fifth day of the sixth month" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me

This should be translated literally, as Ezekiel later sees something like a hand. Others may choose to consider the hand a metaphor for Yahweh's presence or power. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Lord Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:4](#).

### fell upon

"took hold of"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in my house](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [that the hand](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [again fell](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So it came about in the sixth year and the sixth month, in the fifth day of the month, as I sat [in my house](#) and the elders [of Judah](#) sat before me, [that the hand of the Lord Yahweh again fell upon me there](#).

## Ezekiel 8:2

### a likeness with the appearance of a man

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like a man. Both “likeness” and “appearance” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “there was someone who appeared to be a man” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### glowing metal

When metal is very hot, it glows with a yellow or orange light.

### the appearance of his hips ... the appearance of something shining

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “what appeared to be his hips ... what appeared to be something shining” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fire
- fire

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So I looked, and behold, there was a likeness with the appearance of a man. From the appearance of his hips downward there was fire. And from his hips upward there was the appearance of something shining, like glowing metal.

## Ezekiel 8:3

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues telling about the vision from God.

### he reached out

The word “he” probably refers to the “figure like a man” ([Ezekiel 8:2](#)).

### between earth and heaven

“between the ground and the sky”

### in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem

The words “in visions” mean that this experience is happening in Ezekiel’s thoughts. His body would still be in his home while God shows him these things.

### the inner northern gate

“the inner northern gate of the temple.” The temple was surrounded by two walls, one inside the other. This gate was on the north side of the inner wall. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the idol that provokes great jealousy

“the idol that causes God to be very jealous”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of a hand
- of my head
- the Spirit
- earth
- heaven
- from God
- Jerusalem
- gate

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then he reached out the form of a hand and took me by the hair of my head; the Spirit lifted me up between earth and heaven, and in visions from God, he brought me to Jerusalem, to the entrance of the inner northern gate, where the idol that provokes great jealousy was standing.

## Ezekiel 8:4

### according to the vision I had seen on the plain

This could mean: (1) “who looked the same as what I had seen in the vision that I saw when I was on the plain” or (2) “who looked the same as what I saw when I was on the plain.”

### the plain

a large area of flat land that has few trees.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the glory
- the God
- of Israel

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then behold, the glory of the God of Israel was there, according to the vision I had seen on the plain.

## Ezekiel 8:5

### General Information:

The “figure like a man” ([Ezekiel 8:2](#)) speaks to Ezekiel.

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### lift up your eyes ... lifted up my eyes

This idiom means that he should look towards something. Alternate translation: “look up ... looked up” or “turn your head and look ... turned my head and looked” (See: [Idiom](#))

### gate leading to the altar

“gate through which people would walk so they could go to the altar”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [to the altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then he said to me, “[Son of man](#), lift up your eyes to the north.” So I lifted up my eyes to the north, and to the north of the gate leading [to the altar](#), there in the entrance, was the idol of jealousy.

## Ezekiel 8:6

### do you see what they are doing?

God uses this question to bring Ezekiel's attention to what the people were doing. Alternate translation: "I want you to understand why I hate what the people here are doing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So he said to me, "Son of man, do you see what they are doing? These are great abominations that the house of Israel is doing here to make me go far from my own sanctuary. But you will turn and see even greater abominations."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- the house
- of Israel
- my own sanctuary
- But you will turn

## Ezekiel 8:7

### the courtyard

You may need to make explicit which courtyard. “the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the courtyard](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then he brought me to the doorway [of the courtyard](#), and I looked, and there was a hole in the wall.



## Ezekiel 8:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He said to me, “**Son of man**, dig into this wall.” So I dug into the wall, and there was a door.

## Ezekiel 8:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the wicked
- abominations

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then he said to me, "Go and see [the wicked abominations](#) that they are doing here."

## Ezekiel 8:10

### behold

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw. Your language may have a different word to show this.

### every form of creeping thing and detestable beast

“carvings in the wall of all kinds of creeping animals and detestable beasts.” The phrase “creeping thing” refer to insects and other small animals.

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the wall all around

You may need to make explicit which wall. Alternate translation: “the wall all around the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**10** So I went in and looked, and behold! There was every form of creeping thing and detestable [beast](#)! Every idol of the [house of Israel](#) was carved into the wall all around.

## Ezekiel 8:11

### Jaazaniah ... Shaphan

men's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### censer

a pan that people burn incense in when they worship God or false gods

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the house
- of Israel were there
- son
- was standing
- They were standing
- in his hand

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Seventy elders of the house of Israel were there, and Jaazaniah son of Shaphan was standing in their midst. They were standing in front of the images, and each man had his censer in his hand so that the smell of the cloud of incense went up.

## Ezekiel 8:12

### do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark?

God is commanding Ezekiel to look at what the elders are doing.  
Alternate translation: "look at what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: "the Israelites" or "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the hidden chamber of his idol

"the room where no one can see him worship his idol"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the elders](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has forsaken](#)
- [the land](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He said to me, "Son of man, do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark? Each one does this in the hidden chamber of his idol, for they say, 'Yahweh does not see us! Yahweh has forsaken the land.'"

## Ezekiel 8:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Turn

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then he said to me, “Turn again and see the other great abominations that they are doing.”

## Ezekiel 8:14

### the entrance of the gate of Yahweh's house that was on the north side

This was the outer north gate—not the same one as in [Ezekiel 8:3](#).

### behold!

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

### mourning for Tammuz

grieving because the false god Tammuz had died (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the gate](#)
- [of Yahweh's](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Next he brought me to the entrance of [the gate of Yahweh's house](#) that was on the north side, and behold! The women were sitting there mourning for Tammuz.

## Ezekiel 8:15

### Do you see this ... man?

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen.  
Alternate translation: "Think about this ... man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [Turn](#)

### ULT

**15** So he said to me, "Do you see this, [son of man](#)? [Turn](#) again and see even greater abominations than these."



## Ezekiel 8:16

### behold!

This word shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

### portico

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support

### their faces toward the east

“they were looking toward the east”

### Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard of
- Yahweh’s
- of Yahweh
- of Yahweh
- house
- temple
- the temple
- the altar
- and their faces
- and...were worshipping

### ULT

**16** He brought me into the inner courtyard of Yahweh’s house, and behold! at the entrance of the temple of Yahweh between the portico and the altar, there were about twenty-five men with their backs toward the temple of Yahweh and their faces toward the east, and they were worshipping the sun.

## Ezekiel 8:17

### Do you see this ... man?

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. Alternate translation: "Think about this ... man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Is it a little thing for the house of Judah to do these abominations that they are doing here?

God uses this question to show that he is right to be angry at the people of Judah. Alternate translation: "I am right to be angry at the house of Judah because of these abominations that they are doing here." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### house of Judah

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: "the Judah people group" or "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they have filled the land with violence

"throughout the country they are doing violent things or "all over the country they are attacking one another"

### to provoke me to anger

"to make me angry"

### putting the branch to their noses

This could mean: (1) the people were using the branches in false worship or (2) the people were using the branches to show rebellion against Yahweh. The words "branch to ... noses" may be a literal tree branch and literal noses, or they could be the term for a hand gesture. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [for the house](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [these abominations](#)
- [the land](#)
- [they have turned again](#)

### ULT

17 He said to me, "Do you see this, [son of man](#)? Is it a little thing [for the house of Judah](#) to do [these abominations](#) that they are doing here? For they have filled [the land](#) with violence and [they have turned again](#) to provoke me to anger, putting the branch to their noses.

## Ezekiel 8:18

### my eye will not have compassion

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: "I will not look on them with compassion" or "I will not be compassionate to them" (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

### I will not spare them

"I will still punish them"

### Though they cry in my ears with a loud voice

"Though they yell their prayers to me with a loud voice"

### I will not hear them

"I will not listen to them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [act among them](#)
- [cry in](#)

#### ULT

**18** So I will also [act among them](#); my eye will not have compassion, and I will not spare them. Though they [cry in](#) my ears with a loud voice, I will not hear them."

## Ezekiel 9

### Ezekiel 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sorrow over sin

God was looking for people who were sad that there was so much evil being done. Yahweh would keep these faithful people from being killed with the rest of the people. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

## Ezekiel 9:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision God gave him. It started in [Ezekiel 8:1](#).

### he cried in my hearing

"I heard him call out"

### he cried

the "figure like a man" ([Ezekiel 8:2](#)) cried

### weapon of destruction

weapon for destroying people or things

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then he cried](#)
- [in his hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Then he cried](#) in my hearing with a loud voice, and said, "Let the guards come up to the city, each with his weapon of destruction [in his hand](#)."

## Ezekiel 9:2

### weapon of slaughter

weapon for killing many people

### behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### the upper gate that faces north

“the upper northern gate” or “the north gate of the inner court”

### linen

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. Alternate translation: “smooth cloth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### scribe’s equipment

tools that scribes write with

### bronze

A dark gold-colored metal. It is made from mostly copper with tin added for strength. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [in his hand](#)
- [with a scribe’s](#)
- [the bronze](#)
- [altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then behold! Six men came from the pathway of the upper [gate](#) that faces north, each with his weapon of slaughter [in his hand](#). There was a man in their midst dressed in linen [with a scribe’s](#) equipment at his side. So they went in and stood beside [the bronze altar](#).

## Ezekiel 9:3

### from the cherubim where it had been

This could mean: (1) “from above the four winged creatures” ([Ezekiel 1:5](#)) or (2) from between the two cherubim in the most holy place in the temple. Try to translate this literally. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### threshold of the house

The “house” refers to God’s temple.

### linen

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

### scribe’s equipment

tools that scribes write with. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the cherubim](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [He called](#)
- [the scribe’s](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then the glory of the [God of Israel](#) went up from [the cherubim](#) where it had been to the threshold [of the house](#). [He called](#) to the man dressed in linen who had [the scribe’s](#) equipment at his side.

## Ezekiel 9:4

### groan and sigh

These are sounds people make when they feel very sad or grieved about something. (See: [Doublet](#))

### the abominations being performed in the midst of the city

“the horrible things being done in the city” or “the detestable things that people are doing in the city

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Jerusalem](#)
- [the abominations being performed](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [Yahweh](#) said to him, “Pass through the midst of the city—the midst of [Jerusalem](#)—and make a mark on the foreheads of those who groan and sigh about all [the abominations being performed](#) in the midst of the city.”



## Ezekiel 9:5

### he spoke to the others within my hearing

The word “others” refers to the guards ([Ezekiel 9:1](#)).

### Do not let your eyes have compassion

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: “Do not have compassion” (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

### do not spare

“do not refrain from killing”

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then he spoke to the others within my hearing, “Pass through the city after him and kill. Do not let your eyes have compassion, and do not spare

## Ezekiel 9:6

### mark on his head

These were the people who groaned about the abominations happening in Jerusalem. See how you translated “mark” in [Ezekiel 9:4](#).

### Begin at my sanctuary

You may need to make explicit what the people are to begin to do at the sanctuary. Alternate translation: “Begin to kill the ones who do not have the mark at my sanctuary” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the elders

This could mean: (1) the “seventy elders of the house of Israel” ([Ezekiel 8:11](#)) or (2) any “old man” (see the beginning of the verse).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [either old](#)
- [with the elders](#)
- [Kill](#)
- [my sanctuary](#)
- [began](#)
- [the house](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [either old](#) man, young man, virgin, little children or women. [Kill](#) all of them! But do not approach anyone who has the mark on his head. Begin at [my sanctuary!](#)” So they [began with the elders](#) who were in front of [the house](#).

## Ezekiel 9:7

### General Information:

God continuing to speak to the guards judging the people of Israel.

### the house

the temple

### attacked the city

The word "city" is a metonym for the people in the city. Alternate translation: "attacked the people in the city"  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [its courtyards](#)
- [Proceed](#)
- [So they went out](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He said to them, "Defile [the house](#), and fill [its courtyards](#) with the dead. [Proceed!](#)" [So they went out](#) and attacked the city.

## Ezekiel 9:8

### I fell on my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### Ah, Lord Yahweh

Ezekiel says this because he is very troubled by what the Lord told the men to do to Jerusalem. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:14](#).

### will you destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem?

Ezekiel is pleading with Yahweh not to destroy the remnant. Alternate translation: “please do not destroy all the remnant of Israel in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem!” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### in the outpouring of your wrath on Jerusalem

Wrath is spoken of as if it were a liquid that Yahweh could pour out of a container. The word “Jerusalem” is a metonym for the people in the city. The abstract noun “outpouring” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “when you pour out your wrath on Jerusalem” or “when you punish the people of Jerusalem because you are very angry with them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and I fell](#)
- [my face](#)
- [and cried out](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of your wrath](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> As they were attacking it, I found myself alone [and I fell on my face and cried out](#) and said, “Ah, [Lord Yahweh](#), will you destroy all the [remnant of Israel](#) in the outpouring [of your wrath on Jerusalem?](#)”

## Ezekiel 9:9

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### exceedingly great

“very great”

### The land is full of blood and the city full of perversions

Here “land” is spoken of as if it were a container filled with blood. Here “blood” is metonym for murder. And “city” is spoken of as if it were a container and “perversions” were the contents inside of it. Alternate translation: “All over the land people are killing innocent people, and all over the city people are doing wicked things” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The iniquity](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [and Judah](#)
- [The land](#)
- [the land](#)
- [of blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has forgotten](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He said to me, “[The iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah](#) is exceedingly great. [The land](#) is full of blood and the city full of perversions, since they say, ‘[Yahweh has forgotten the land,](#)’ and ‘[Yahweh does not see!](#)’

## Ezekiel 9:10

### my eye will not look with compassion

The eye is a synecdoche for the person whose eye it is. Alternate translation: "I will not look on them with compassion" or "I will not be compassionate to them" (See: and [Synecdoche](#))

### bring it all on their heads

To bring someone's conduct on him represents punishing him for his bad conduct. Alternate translation: "punishing them as they deserve"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it all on their heads](#)

#### ULT

**10** So then, my eye will not look with compassion, and I will not spare them. I will instead bring [it all on their heads](#)."

## Ezekiel 9:11

### Behold

“Pay attention to what I am about to say”

### linen

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).  
Alternate translation: “smooth cloth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### He reported and said

“He reported to Yahweh and told him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [dressed](#)
- [came back](#)
- [you have commanded](#)

### ULT

**11** Behold! The man [dressed](#) in linen who had the scribe’s equipment by his side [came back](#). He reported and said, “I have done all that [you have commanded](#).”

## **Ezekiel 10**

### **Ezekiel 10 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **God left the temple**

God now abandoned Judah, and left the temple. This was devastating to the religious life of Judah. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))



## Ezekiel 10:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in [Ezekiel 8:1](#).

### toward the dome

“toward the curved roof”

### cherubim

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

### like a sapphire

a valuable blue or green gemstone

### with the appearance of the likeness of a throne

“that looked like something that looked like a throne.” Ezekiel is not willing to say for sure that it looked like a throne.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heads](#)
- [of the cherubim](#)
- [of a throne](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> As I looked toward the dome that was over the [heads of the cherubim](#); something appeared above them like a sapphire with the appearance of the likeness [of a throne](#).

## Ezekiel 10:2

### linen

a strong, smooth cloth made from a plant. It is worn by many people in places that are hot. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).  
Alternate translation: "smooth cloth" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Go between the wheels

Translate the word "wheels" as in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

### fiery coals

Coals are the burned pieces of wood left over after a fire. They are black, but they glow red and orange when they are very hot. They are also called charcoal.

### scatter them over the city

"sprinkle them over the city" or "spread them over the city"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the cherubim](#)
- [the cherubim](#)
- [in](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then Yahweh spoke to the man dressed in linen and said, "Go between the wheels underneath [the cherubim](#), and fill both your hands with fiery coals from between [the cherubim](#) and scatter them over the city." Then the man went [in](#) as I watched.

## Ezekiel 10:3

### Connecting Statement:

Ezekiel interrupts his description of what was happening and describes what he saw.

### The cherubim stood ... inner courtyard

This is background information for the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

### cherubim

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

### on the right side

As one faces east, “the right side” is toward the south. Alternate translation: “on the south side” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the house

the temple

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The cherubim](#)
- [stood on](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [courtyard](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [The cherubim stood on](#) the right side [of the house](#) when the man went in, and a cloud filled the inner [courtyard](#).

## Ezekiel 10:4

### The glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

### It filled

the glory of Yahweh filled

### Translation Words - ULT

- The glory
- glory
- of Yahweh
- of Yahweh's
- rose up
- cherubim
- of the house
- the house
- the courtyard

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The glory of Yahweh rose up from the cherubim and stood over the threshold of the house. It filled the house with the cloud, and the courtyard was full of the brightness of Yahweh's glory.

## Ezekiel 10:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the cherubim's
- courtyard
- of God Almighty

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The sound of the cherubim's wings was heard as far as the outer courtyard, like the voice of God Almighty when he speaks.

## Ezekiel 10:6

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark when the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said

This is a repeat of the information that was given in [Ezekiel 10:2](#). After talking about the cherubim and God's glory in 10:3-5, Ezekiel returns to telling about the man who was wearing linen.

### the man dressed in linen

Translate "linen" as in [Ezekiel 9:1](#).

### beside a wheel

Translate "wheel" as in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [the cherubim](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> It came about, when God commanded the man dressed in linen and said, "Take [fire](#) from between the wheels that are between [the cherubim](#)," the man went in and stood beside a wheel.

## Ezekiel 10:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- A cherub
- the cherubim
- among the cherubim
- hand
- the fire
- and went back out

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> A cherub reached out his hand between the cherubim to the fire that was among the cherubim, and lifted it up and placed it into the hands of the one dressed in linen. The man took it and went back out.

## Ezekiel 10:8

### I saw on the cherubim something like a man's hand under their wings

"I saw that the cherubim had something like a man's hand under their wings"

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I saw [on the cherubim](#) something like [a man's hand](#) under their wings.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the cherubim](#)
- [a man's](#)
- [hand](#)



## Ezekiel 10:9

### behold

Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw

### wheels

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So I looked, and behold! Four wheels were beside [the cherubim](#)—one wheel beside each [cherub](#)—and the appearance of the wheels was like a beryl stone.

### the appearance of the wheels was like a beryl stone

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “the wheels appeared to be like a beryl stone” or “what appeared to be wheels were like a beryl stone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### beryl stone

“Beryl” here is a very hard, valuable stone. This beryl was probably green or blue. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the cherubim](#)
- [cherub](#)

## Ezekiel 10:10

### Their appearance was the same likeness for all four of them

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “All four of them appeared to be similar” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### a wheel intersecting another wheel

The word “intersecting” means “crossing” or “passing through.”

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Their appearance was the same likeness for all four of them, like a wheel intersecting another wheel.

## Ezekiel 10:11

### they went in any of their four directions

This could mean: (1) "their" refers to the creatures. Alternate translation: "they would go straight in any one of the four directions that the creatures looked towards" or (2) "their" refers to the wheels.

### whatever direction the head faced, they followed

Here, the phrase **the head** could mean: (1) this refers to the winged creatures. Alternate translation: "they went in whatever direction the winged creatures were looking" or (2) this refers to the front wheel. Alternate translation: "they followed in whatever direction the front wheel went"

### Translation Words - ULT

- they went
- they went (2)
- the head

#### ULT

**11** When they moved, they went in any of their four directions, without turning as they went; but whatever direction the head faced, they followed after it without turning as they went.

## Ezekiel 10:12

### wheels

Translate the word “wheels” as in [Ezekiel 1:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Their whole body—including](#)
- [their hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> [Their whole body—including](#) their backs, [their hands](#), and their wings—was covered with eyes, and eyes covered the four wheels all around also.

## Ezekiel 10:13

### the wheels were called, “Whirling.”

The word “Whirling” means “Spinning.” Here it is the name of the wheels. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone called the wheels, ‘Whirling.’” or “the name of the wheels was ‘Whirling.’” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> As I listened, the wheels **were called**, “Whirling.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were called](#)

## Ezekiel 10:14

### They had four faces each

“Each cherub had four faces” or “Each of the cherubim had four faces.” Each creature had a face on the front, a face on the back, and a face on each side of its head. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- faces
- face
- was the face of
- face
- was the face of (2)
- the face of (3)
- the face
- a cherub
- a man
- a lion

### ULT

**14** They had four faces each; the first face was the face of a cherub, the second face was the face of a man, the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle.

## Ezekiel 10:15

### living creatures

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:13](#).

### rose up

“went up into the air”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the cherubim](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [Then the cherubim](#)—these were the living creatures that I had seen by the Kebar Canal—rose up.

## Ezekiel 10:16

### They still stayed beside them

“The wheels stayed with the cherubim.” Alternate translation: “The wheels moved with the cherubim”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Whenever the cherubim
- the cherubim
- moved
- earth

### ULT

16 Whenever the cherubim moved, the wheels would go beside them, and whenever the cherubim lifted up their wings to rise up from the earth, the wheels did not turn. They still stayed beside them.



## Ezekiel 10:17

### stood still

“stayed still” or “did not move”

### the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels

This could mean: (1) Ezekiel is speaking of the “creatures” of verse 15 as if they were one creature. Alternate translation: “the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels” or (2) Ezekiel is using an idiom. Alternate translation: “the spirit of life was in the wheels” or “the living spirit was in the wheels” or (3) the spirit in the creatures and in the wheels is the same. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “the same spirit that gave life to the creatures also gave life to the wheels” (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

**17** When the [cherubim stood still](#), the wheels stood still, and when they rose up, the wheels rose up with them, for [the spirit](#) of the living creature was in the wheels.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [cherubim stood still](#)
- [the spirit](#)

## Ezekiel 10:18

### the glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

### the house

the temple

### stood over

“stayed over” or “waited over”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the glory of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [went out](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [the cherubim](#)

### ULT

**18** [Then the glory of Yahweh went out](#)  
from over the threshold [of the house](#)  
and stood over [the cherubim](#).

## Ezekiel 10:19

### came upon them from above

“went above the cherubim”

### Translation Words - ULT

- The cherubim
- earth
- entrance to
- Yahweh’s
- house
- the God
- of Israel

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The cherubim lifted up their wings and rose from the earth in my sight when they went out, and the wheels did the same beside them. They stood at the eastern entrance to Yahweh’s house, and the glory of the God of Israel came upon them from above.

## Ezekiel 10:20

### the living creatures

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:13](#).

### the Kebar Canal

This is a river that people in Chaldea had dug to give water to their gardens. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the God](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [so I knew](#)
- [were cherubim](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> These were the living creatures that I had seen below [the God of Israel](#) by the Kebar Canal, [so I knew](#) that they [were cherubim](#)!

## Ezekiel 10:21

### the likeness of human hands

Here the abstract noun “likeness” means that what Ezekiel saw looked like human hands. The word can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “something that looked like human hands” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [faces](#)
- [of human](#)
- [hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They had four [faces](#) each and four wings each, and the likeness [of human hands](#) under their wings,

## Ezekiel 10:22

### the likeness of their faces was like the faces that I had seen

The abstract noun “likeness” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “their faces looked like the faces that I had seen” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### went straight ahead

“faced forward” or “looked directly ahead”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- the faces
- went

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> and the likeness of their faces was like the faces that I had seen in the vision at the Kebar Canal, and each of them went straight ahead.

## **Ezekiel 11**

### **Ezekiel 11 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Safety**

The people were trusting Jerusalem to keep them safe. But God was going to pull them out of Jerusalem. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

The people in Jerusalem used the metaphor “this city is the pot and we are the meat in the pot” meaning they were safe in Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 11:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision that started in [Ezekiel 8:1](#).

### to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house, facing east

This gate was part of the wall that surrounded the temple area.  
Alternate translation: "the gate on the eastern side of the wall surrounding Yahweh's house" or "the gate on the eastern wall of the temple courtyard"

### Yahweh's house

See how you translated this phrase in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### twenty-five men

"25 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### among them

"among the twenty-five men"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the Spirit](#)
- [the](#)
- [eastern gate](#)
- [of the gate](#)
- [of Yahweh's](#)
- [house](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [of Benaiah](#)
- [leaders of the people](#)

### ULT

**1** Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me to the eastern gate of Yahweh's house, facing east, and behold, in the doorway of the gate there were twenty-five men. I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah, leaders of the people, among them.



## Ezekiel 11:2

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to tell about the vision.

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> God said to me, “[Son of man](#), these are the men who devise iniquity, and who decide [wicked](#) plans in this city.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [wicked](#)

## Ezekiel 11:3

### The time to build houses is not now

This shows the people feel so secure they are not worried about building houses now. Other versions of the Bible read, "Now is the time to build our houses." This would mean that the people want to build houses because they feel secure.

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They are saying, 'The time to build **houses** is not now; this city is the pot, and we are the meat.'

### this city is the pot, and we are the meat

The people speak of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. The metaphor suggests that they are important and safe within the city. Alternate translation: "This city is like a pot that will protect us as a pot protects meat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the pot

This could mean: (1) a pot for storing meat or (2) a pot for cooking meat.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [houses](#)

## Ezekiel 11:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- of man

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Therefore prophesy against them.  
Prophesy, [son of man.](#)"

## Ezekiel 11:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to talk to the prophet Ezekiel.

### the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me

Ezekiel speaks of the Spirit of Yahweh inspiring and empowering him to prophesy as if the Spirit of Yahweh fell upon him. Alternate translation: "the Spirit of Yahweh empowered me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the Spirit of Yahweh fell on me and he said for me to say: This is what Yahweh says, "That is what you are saying, house of Israel; for I know what goes through your mind."

### That is what you are saying

"You are saying these things." This refers to what the people were saying in [Ezekiel 11:3](#).

### house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: "Israelites" or "Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the Spirit](#)
- [your mind](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fell](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [know](#)

## Ezekiel 11:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You have multiplied the people you have killed in this city and filled its streets with them.

## Ezekiel 11:7

### The people you have killed ... are the meat, and this city is the pot

Yahweh speaks of the people whom they have killed as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 11:3](#). Alternate translation: "The people you have killed ... are like the meat in the pot, and this city is like the pot. (See: [Metaphor](#))"

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: The people you have killed, whose bodies you have laid in the midst of Jerusalem, are the meat, and this city is the pot. [But you are going to be brought out](#) from the midst of this city.

### But you are going to be brought out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But I am going to bring you out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [But you are going to be brought out](#)

## Ezekiel 11:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

### this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You have feared the sword, so I am bringing the sword upon you—this is the declaration of the Lord Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- You have feared
- the sword
- the sword
- of the Lord

## Ezekiel 11:9

### put you into the hands of foreigners

Here the metonym “hands” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “put you into the power of foreigners” or “enable foreigners to capture you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [out](#)
- [into the hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I will bring you [out](#) of the midst of the city, and put you [into the hands](#) of foreigners, for I will bring judgment against you.



## Ezekiel 11:10

### You will fall by the sword

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “They will kill you with their swords” or “You will die in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

**10** You will fall by the [sword](#). I will judge you within the borders [of Israel](#) so [you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sword](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 11:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

### **This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat**

The people had spoken of themselves as if they were good cuts of meat and of the city as if it were a pot in which the meat was stored or cooked. Yahweh says that this is not true. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 11:3](#). Alternate translation: "This city is not like a pot that will protect you as a pot protects meat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **within the borders of Israel**

"in the land of Israel"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

**11** This city will not be your cooking pot, nor will you be the meat within her midst. I will judge you within the borders [of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 11:12

### the one whose statutes you have not walked in

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like person would walk along a road. Alternate translation: “the one whose statutes you have not obeyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [walked in](#)
- [the decrees](#)
- [the nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> [Then you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#), the one whose statutes you have not [walked in](#) and whose decrees you have not carried out. Instead, you have carried out [the decrees](#) of [the nations](#) that surround you.”

## Ezekiel 11:13

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Pelatiah son of Benaiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### I fell on my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

### Alas, Lord Yahweh

The word “Alas” is an exclamation that expresses fear and sadness. Alternate translation: “Oh no, Lord Yahweh” or “Ah, Lord Yahweh” (See: [Exclamations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of Benaiah](#)
- [So I fell](#)
- [my face](#)
- [and cried out](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**13** It came about that as I was prophesying, Pelatiah [son of Benaiah](#), died. [So I fell on my face and cried out](#) with a loud voice and said, “Alas, [Lord Yahweh](#), will you completely destroy the [remnant of Israel](#)?”

## Ezekiel 11:14

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**14** The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 11:15

### your brothers! Your brothers!

This is stated twice for emphasis.

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family, in this case the Israelites who are the descendants of Jacob. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**15** “Son of man, your brothers! Your brothers! The men of your clan and all the house of Israel! All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem, ‘They are far away from Yahweh! This land was given to us as our possession.’”

### All of them are those of whom it is said by those living in Jerusalem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The people living in Jerusalem say about all of them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### All of them are those of whom

Some versions have “All of them are those to whom”

### This land was given to us as our possession

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has given this land to us as our possession” or “This land has become our possession” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- Your brothers
- your brothers
- clan
- the house
- of Israel
- in Jerusalem
- from Yahweh
- This land

## Ezekiel 11:16

### General Information:

Yahweh gives this message to Ezekiel about the Israelites who were in exile.

### I have been a sanctuary for them

Yahweh speaks of dwelling among the people who are in exile as if he were a sanctuary for them. Alternate translation: "I have been with them" or "I have been like their place of worship" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [among the nations](#)
- [a sanctuary](#)

### ULT

**16** Therefore say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Though I have removed them far off [among the nations](#), and though I have scattered them among the lands, yet I have been [a sanctuary](#) for them for a little while in the lands where they have gone.'

## Ezekiel 11:17

### I will gather you from the peoples, and assemble you from the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The repetition emphasizes the surety of Yahweh's promise to bring the exiles back to the land of Israel. Alternate translation: "I will bring you back from all of the nations" (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Therefore say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: I will gather you from [the peoples](#), and assemble you from [the lands](#) where you were scattered, and I will give you the land [of Israel](#).'

### where you were scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "where I scattered you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the peoples](#)
- [the lands](#)
- [of Israel](#)



## Ezekiel 11:18

### every detestable thing and every abomination

These words have similar meanings and emphasize that God will remove all the idols from Israel. (See: [Doublet](#))

### every detestable thing

This means things that cause hatred or disgust. Here it refers to idols.

#### ULT

**18** Then they will go there and remove every detestable thing and every abomination from that place.

## Ezekiel 11:19

### General Information:

God continues the prophecy of what will happen to the scattered Israelites.

### I will give them one heart ... give them a heart of flesh

Yahweh speaks of all of the Israelites who are in exile as if they are one person, with one heart and one spirit. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will give them one heart

Here the metonym “heart” represents the will and emotions. Yahweh speaks of causing all of the people to share the same new emotions as if he were giving them one heart. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### I will put a new spirit within them

Here the metonym “spirit” represents the thoughts and disposition. Yahweh speaks of causing the people to think new thoughts as if he were giving them a new spirit. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### I will take out the heart of stone from their flesh and give them a heart of flesh

Yahweh speaks of the people being stubborn as if they had a stone heart and of their being willingly obedient as if they had a heart of flesh. He speaks of causing them to become willingly obedient as if he were exchanging those two hearts. Alternate translation: “I will cause them to stop being stubborn and instead cause them to obey me willingly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [within them](#)
- [the heart](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [them a heart of flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> I will give them one [heart](#), and I will put a new [spirit within them](#). I will take out [the heart](#) of stone from their flesh and give [them a heart of flesh](#),

## Ezekiel 11:20

### they will walk in my statutes, they will carry out my decrees and do them

Each of these phrases have similar meanings and describes the people as obeying what Yahweh has commanded them to do. They are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### they will walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if it were walking in them, like a person would walk along a road. Alternate translation: "they will obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they
- will walk in
- my decrees
- people
- God

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> so that [they will walk in](#) my statutes, they will carry out [my decrees](#) and do them. Then they will be my [people](#), and I will be their [God](#).

## Ezekiel 11:21

### those who walk with affection toward their detestable things

Yahweh speaks of a person's conduct as if it were the person walking. Alternate translation: "those who conduct their lives out of devotion to their detestable things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### detestable things

This means things that cause hatred or disgust. Here it refers to idols. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:18](#).

### I will bring their conduct on their own heads

Here the metonym "conduct" represents the consequences of their actions. The idiom "bring ... on their own heads" means they will experience these consequences. Alternate translation: "I will cause them to suffer the consequences of their actions" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [those who](#)
- [with affection](#)
- [walk](#)
- [on their own heads](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But to [those who walk with affection](#) toward their detestable things and their abominations, I will bring their conduct [on their own heads](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration."

## Ezekiel 11:22

### General Information:

The cherubim and the glory of God leave the temple and city.

### cherubim

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The cherubim](#)
- [the God](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [The cherubim](#) lifted up their wings and the wheels that were beside them, and the glory of [the God of Israel](#) was high up over them.

## Ezekiel 11:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then the glory of
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then the glory of Yahweh went up from within the midst of the city and stood on the mountain to the east of the city.

## Ezekiel 11:24

### the vision that I had seen went up from upon me

Ezekiel speaks of the vision ending as if the vision was an object that had been upon him and then left him. Alternate translation: “the vision that I had seen ended” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Spirit](#)
- [from the Spirit](#)
- [Chaldea](#)
- [exiles](#)
- [of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [The Spirit](#) lifted me up and brought me into [Chaldea](#), to the [exiles](#), in the vision [from the Spirit of God](#), and the vision that I had seen went up from upon me.

## Ezekiel 11:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the exiles
- of Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then I declared to the exiles all the things of Yahweh that I had seen.



## **Ezekiel 12**

### **Ezekiel 12 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Exile**

God warned that very soon the people in Jerusalem would be exiled to Babylon.

## Ezekiel 12:1

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 12:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### a rebellious house

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “a rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they have eyes to see but they do not see ... they have ears to hear but do not listen

People being unable to understand Yahweh’s message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were unable physically to see and hear. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), you live in the midst of a rebellious [house](#), where they have eyes to see but they do not see; and where they have ears to hear but do not listen, because they are a rebellious [house](#).”

## Ezekiel 12:3

### General Information:

Yahweh is telling Ezekiel to act out another parable.

### Therefore as for you

“So then, this is what I say to you”

### in their sight

“as they watch”

### Perhaps they will begin to see

People being able to understand Yahweh’s message and what he is doing is spoken of as if the people were able physically to see. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a rebellious house

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “a rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Therefore as for you, [son of man](#), prepare your things for exile, and begin going out by day in their sight, for I will exile you in their sight from your place to another place. Perhaps they will begin to see, though they are a rebellious [house](#).

## Ezekiel 12:4

### General Information:

God is speaking to Ezekiel and describing how he should act out the parable.

### in their sight

“as they watch”

### Translation Words - ULT

- will bring out
- go out

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You will bring out your things for an exile in the day in their sight; go out in the evening in their sight in the way that anyone goes into exile.

## Ezekiel 12:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and go out

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Dig a hole through the wall in their sight, and go out through it.

## Ezekiel 12:6

### have set you as a sign

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. Alternate translation: “have made you to be a warning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and bring them out](#)
- [you](#)
- [the land](#)
- [as a sign](#)
- [to the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup>In their sight, lift up your things onto your shoulder, [and bring them out](#) in the darkness. Cover your face, for [you](#) must not see [the land](#), since I have set you [as a sign to the house of Israel.](#)”

## Ezekiel 12:7

### General Information:

Ezekiel shows the people of Israel they will soon be forced into exile.

### just as I was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “just as Yahweh commanded me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### dug a hole through the wall by hand

“dug a hole through the wall with my hands”

### in the dark

“at night”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I was commanded](#)
- [I brought out](#)
- [out](#)
- [by hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So I did this, just as [I was commanded](#). [I brought out](#) my things of exile in the daytime, and in the evening I dug a hole through the wall [by hand](#). I brought my things [out](#) in the dark, and lifted them up on my shoulder in their sight.



## Ezekiel 12:8

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me in the morning, saying,

## Ezekiel 12:9

### Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, 'What are you doing?'

God asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knew—that the people had asked him this question.

Alternate translation: "Son of man, the house of Israel, that rebellious house, is asking, 'What are you doing?'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> "Son of man, is the house of Israel, that rebellious house, not asking, 'What are you doing?'"

### the house of Israel, that rebellious house

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate "rebellious house" as in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: "the people of Israel, that rebellious people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### What are you doing

Since the people had seen what Ezekiel was doing, their question implies their desire to know the reason why he was doing it. Alternate translation: "What is the meaning of the things you are doing" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the house](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 12:10

### in whose midst they are

The phrase “in whose midst” refers to Jerusalem, while “they” refers to the “house of Israel.” Alternate translation: “who are in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the prince](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**10** Say to them, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: this prophetic action concerns [the prince in Jerusalem](#), and all [the house of Israel](#) in whose midst they are.’

## Ezekiel 12:11

### I am a sign to you

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Ezekiel speaks of himself and his actions as being this warning. Alternate translation: “I am a warning to you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**11** Say, ‘I am [a sign](#) to you.’ As I have done, so it will be done to them; [they will go](#) into exile [and into captivity](#).

### so it will be done to them

The word “them” refers to the people living in Jerusalem. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so others will do to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a sign](#)
- [they will go](#)
- [and into captivity](#)

## Ezekiel 12:12

### in the dark

“at night”

### They will dig through the wall

The word “They” refers to the people living in Jerusalem.

### He will cover his face

“The prince will cover his face”

### Translation Words - ULT

- and will go out
- his face
- the land

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The prince who is among them will lift up his things upon his shoulder in the dark, and will go out through the wall. They will dig through the wall and bring out their things. He will cover his face, so he will not see the land with his eyes.

## Ezekiel 12:13

### I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare

Yahweh speaks of enabling the Chaldeans to capture the prince as if he himself were catching the prince in a trap that he had set. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will bring him to Babylon

Yahweh speaks of enabling the Chaldeans to bring the prince to Babylon as if he himself were bringing the prince there. Alternate translation: "I will cause the Chaldeans to bring him to Babylon" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to Babylon](#)
- [the land](#)
- [of the Chaldeans](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> I will spread out my net over him and he will be caught in my snare; then I will bring him [to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans](#), but he will not see it. He will die there.

## Ezekiel 12:14

### I will send out a sword after them

The word “sword” is a metonym for enemy armies who will attack with their swords. Alternate translation: “I will send armies to pursue them with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will also scatter
- direction
- a sword

### ULT

**14** I will also scatter in every direction all of those around him who were to assist him and his entire army, and I will send out a sword after them.

## Ezekiel 12:15

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**15** Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands.

### when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “when I cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then they will know that
- Yahweh
- among the nations



## Ezekiel 12:16

### I will spare ... from the sword, famine, and plague

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. You may need to make explicit that they will not die from famine or plague. Alternate translation: “I will keep ... from dying in battle, from starving to death, and from dying of disease” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lands](#)
- [so they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But I will spare a few men from among them from the sword, famine, and plague, so they may record all of their abominations in the [lands](#) where I take them, [so they will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).”

## Ezekiel 12:17

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

17 The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 12:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- eat
- your bread

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> "Son of man, eat your bread with trembling, and drink your water with shaking and worry.

## Ezekiel 12:19

### the land will be despoiled of its fullness

The word “fullness” refers to everything in the land. The word “despoiled” means that people will empty the land of everything in it. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “others will empty the land of everything in it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [there](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [of Jerusalem](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [They will eat](#)
- [their bread](#)

### ULT

**19** Then say to [the people of the land](#), ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this concerning the inhabitants [of Jerusalem](#), and the land [of Israel](#), “[They will eat their bread](#) with trembling and drink their water while shaking, since the land will be despoiled of its fullness because of the violence of all those who live [there](#).”

## Ezekiel 12:20

### the cities that were inhabited will be desolate

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cities where people lived will be desolate” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will be desolate
- so you will know
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So the cities that were inhabited will be desolate, and the land will become a wasteland; so you will know that I am Yahweh.””

## Ezekiel 12:21

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Again the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 12:22

### what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails'?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel something he already knows. The question is a mild rebuke for the people who use the proverb. Alternate translation: "the people in the land of Israel

have this proverb that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails.' (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> "Son of man, what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel that says, 'The days are prolonged, and every vision fails'?"

### The days are prolonged

This idiom means that many days have passed. Alternate translation: "Many days have passed" or "Time has gone by" (See: [Idiom](#))

### every vision fails

This means that the visions that the prophets receive and communicate to the people fail to happen. Alternate translation: "every prophetic vision fails to happen" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [fails](#)

## Ezekiel 12:23

### The days have drawn near

This phrase refers to the days in which Israel will be judged.  
Alternate translation: "The days of judgment are coming soon" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### every vision will be fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will fulfill every vision" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Therefore, say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: I will put an end to this proverb, and the people of Israel will no longer use it.' Say to them, 'The days have drawn near when every vision will be fulfilled.'



## Ezekiel 12:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what to say to the people of Israel.

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**24** For there will no longer be any false visions or favorable divinations within [the house of Israel](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 12:25

### I carry out the words that I speak

This idiom means that Yahweh does what he says. Alternate translation: “I do the things that I say” (See: [Idiom](#))

### The matter will no longer be delayed

The “matter” refers to the things that Yahweh says will happen. Alternate translation: “What I say will no longer be delayed” or “What I say will happen soon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### I will speak this word

“I will speak this message” or “I will speak this prophecy”

### in your days

This idiom refers to the period of time in which a person lives. Alternate translation: “while you are alive” or “during your lifetime” (See: [Idiom](#))

### rebellious house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> For I am [Yahweh](#)! I speak, and I carry out the words that I speak. The matter will no longer be delayed. For I will speak this word in your days, rebellious [house](#), and I will carry it out!—[this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.](#)”

## Ezekiel 12:26

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Again the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 12:27

### Behold

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times

These phrases are both ways the people of Israel are saying Ezekiel’s warnings will not happen in their lifetime but will happen far in the future. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

27 “[Son of man](#)! Behold, [the house of Israel](#) has said, ‘The vision that he sees is for many days from now, and he prophesies of far off times.’”

## Ezekiel 12:28

### My words will not be delayed any longer

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will no longer delay the word I have spoken” or “I will no longer delay doing what I said I would do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

**28** Therefore say to them, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: My words will not be delayed any longer, but the word that I have spoken will be done—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.’”

## **Ezekiel 13**

### **Ezekiel 13 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **False prophets**

God spoke against people who said they were prophesying but had not received any message from God. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

God said of people who encourage others to feel safe even when they continue to sin were not strengthening a wall but just putting whitewash on it to hide the imperfections. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 13:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Again, the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 13:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### prophesying out of their own imaginations

“prophesying only the things that they imagine”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- the prophets
- in Israel
- out of their own imaginations
- of Yahweh

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), prophesy against [the prophets](#) who are prophesying [in Israel](#), and say to those who are prophesying [out of their own imaginations](#), ‘Listen to the word [of Yahweh](#).’



## Ezekiel 13:3

### who follow their own spirit

Here the word “spirit” represents the thoughts and ideas of the person. To “follow” here is an idiom that means to do what their own ideas suggest for them to do. Alternate translation: “who act according to their own ideas” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Woe to the foolish [prophets](#) who follow [their own spirit](#), but who have seen nothing!

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [their own](#)
- [spirit](#)

## Ezekiel 13:4

### like jackals in the wastelands

Like jackals that scavenge for food and shelter among the abandoned ruins of cities, the prophets are using the destruction of Jerusalem for their own benefit. (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [Israel, your prophets](#) have been like jackals in the wastelands.

### jackals

wild animals that are related to dogs and that scavenge for food in abandoned places.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, your](#)
- [prophets](#)

## Ezekiel 13:5

### the wall around the house of Israel

This refers to the wall surrounding the city of Jerusalem.

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### resist in battle

You can supply the implicit information here. Alternate translation: “resist the enemy armies” or “defend the city” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the day of Yahweh

This refers to the time when Yahweh will judge his people by means of an enemy army. Alternate translation: “the day of Yahweh’s judgment” or “the day when Yahweh judges you by sending enemy armies to attack you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [of Israel in order to repair it](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> You have not gone to the breaks in the wall around the [house of Israel in order to repair it](#), in order to resist in battle on the day [of Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 13:6

### Such and such

This is a phrase used to refer to anything the prophet may have said. Your language may have another way to say this. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Yahweh's declaration

"is what Yahweh has declared"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Such and such is Yahweh's](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [that their messages would come](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The people have false visions and make false predictions, those who say, "Such and such is Yahweh's declaration." Yahweh has not sent them, but they nevertheless have made people hope [that their messages would come](#) true.

## Ezekiel 13:7

### Have you not had false visions ... when I myself have not spoken?

Yahweh uses a question to rebuke the false prophets. Alternate translation: "You have had false visions ... because I myself have not spoken." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### had false visions and made false predictions

Since the false prophets have not really received a message from Yahweh, what they predict about the future is not true.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh's](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Have you not had false visions and made false predictions, you who say, "Such and such is [Yahweh's](#) declaration" when I myself have not spoken?'

## Ezekiel 13:8

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, 'Because you have had false visions and have told lies—therefore [this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration against you:

## Ezekiel 13:9

### My hand will be against the prophets

Here the word “hand” represents Yahweh’s power. That his hand will be against them is a metaphor that means that he will punish them with his power. Alternate translation: “I will punish the prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### They will not be in the assembly of my people

This means that Yahweh will not consider these false prophets to be part of the people of Israel.

### or enrolled in the record of the house of Israel

This probably refers to an official record of the citizens of Israel. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nor will anyone enroll their names in the record of the house of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### know that I am the Lord Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am the Lord Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, the Lord Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [My hand](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [of my people](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [you will know that](#)
- [the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [My hand](#) will be against [the prophets](#) who have lying visions and who make false predictions. They will not be in the assembly [of my people](#), or enrolled in the record [of the house of Israel](#); they must not go to the land [of Israel](#). For [you will know that](#) I am [the Lord](#) Yahweh!

## Ezekiel 13:10

### General Information:

In these verses, Yahweh speaks of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Because of this

The word “this” refers to the prophets reporting false visions to the people and telling them lies.

### they led my people astray

Yahweh speaks of the prophets deceiving the people and getting them to believe lies as if the prophets had led the people away from the path upon which they should have been walking. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash

Here “a wall” stands for peace and security that the false prophets told the people that Yahweh was promising to give them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### whitewash

The word “whitewash” refers to a white liquid mixture or paint used to cover up impurities and make surfaces white.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they led my people](#)
- [Peace](#)
- [peace](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Because of this, and because [they led my people](#) astray and said, “[Peace!](#)” when there is no [peace](#), they are building a wall that they will paint with whitewash.’



## Ezekiel 13:11

### whitewashing

The word “whitewashing” refers to covering a surface with a white liquid mixture to cover up impurities and make the surface white.

### **I will send hailstones to make it fall down, and a windstorm wind to break it down**

Yahweh refers to the judgment that he will send upon the people as if it were a severe storm that breaks down the wall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### hailstones

balls of ice that sometimes falls from the sky during a rainstorm.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [It will fall down](#)
- [and a windstorm wind](#)

### ULT

**11** Say to those who are whitewashing the wall, '[It will fall down](#); there will be a downpour of rain, and I will send hailstones to make it fall down, [and a windstorm wind](#) to break it down.

## Ezekiel 13:12

### Have others not said to you, “Where is the whitewash that you put on it?”

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that others will ask the prophets what happened to their whitewash. Alternate translation: “Others will certainly say to you, ‘Where is the whitewash that you put on it?’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> See, the wall will fall down. Have others not said to you, “Where is the whitewash that you put on it?”

### Where is the whitewash that you put on it?

This could mean: (1) that this is an honest question for which the people expect and answer or (2) this is a rhetorical question that the people ask out of sarcasm. Alternate translation: “The whitewash that you put on it did no good.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## Ezekiel 13:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **I will bring a windstorm ... completely destroy it.**

Yahweh refers to the judgment that he will send upon the people as if it were a severe storm that breaks down the wall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **in my rage ... in my wrath ... in my rage**

“because of my rage ... because of my wrath ... because my rage.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [windstorm](#)
- [in my rage](#)
- [in my wrath](#)

### ULT

**13** Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I will bring a [windstorm in my rage](#), and there will be floods of rain [in my wrath](#)! Hailstones in my rage will completely destroy it.

## Ezekiel 13:14

### lay bare

“uncover”

### you will be annihilated in the middle of it all

The phrase “in the middle of it all” refers to the stones of the wall that Yahweh will break down. He speaks of destroying the people in his judgment as if the wall would crush them to death when he breaks it down. Alternate translation: “all of its stones will crush you to death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### annihilated

“destroyed”

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the ground](#)
- [So it will fall](#)
- [Then you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**14** For I will tear down the wall that you have covered with whitewash, and I will demolish it to [the ground](#) and lay bare its foundations. [So it will fall](#), and you will be annihilated in the middle of it all. [Then you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 13:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak of the false security that the prophets have given to the people by speaking of peace as if the prophets had built a poorly-constructed wall and covered it over with white paint in order to make it look good. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will annihilate in my fury

“Because I am very angry, I will annihilate”

### whitewashed it

The word “whitewash” refers to a white liquid mixture or paint used to cover up impurities and make surfaces white. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 13:10](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in my fury](#)

### ULT

**15** For I will annihilate [in my fury](#) the wall and those who whitewashed it. I will say to you, “The wall exists no more, nor do the people who whitewashed it  
—

## Ezekiel 13:16

### the prophets of Israel who prophesied about Jerusalem and who had visions of peace for her

This phrase defines who “the people who whitewashed it” are.

### visions of peace for her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the prophets
- of Israel
- about Jerusalem
- of peace for her
- peace
- this is the Lord

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> the prophets of Israel who prophesied about Jerusalem and who had visions of peace for her. But there is no peace!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.”

## Ezekiel 13:17

### set your face against the daughters

This is a command to stare at the women as a symbol of punishing them. Translate “set your face against” as you did in [Ezekiel 4:3](#).  
Alternate translation: “stare at the daughters” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set your face against

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” represents staring. Alternate translation: “stare at” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### daughters of your people

This idiom refers to women who belong to the same people group as Ezekiel does. Alternate translation: “women of Israel” or “your countrywomen” (See: [Idiom](#))

### prophecy out of their own minds

“prophesying only the things that they think in their own minds.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 13:2](#).

### prophecy against

“prophecy about the bad things that will happen to them.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [of your people](#)
- [who prophesy](#)
- [out of their own minds](#)

#### ULT

**17** So you, [son of man](#), set [your face](#) against the daughters [of your people](#) who [prophesy out of their own minds](#), and prophesy against them.

## Ezekiel 13:18

### sew magic charms onto every part of their hand

This means that they sew magic charms together and then attach them to their hands, not that they sew them directly onto their hands.

### charms

objects believed to have magical powers.

### used to hunt down people

Yahweh speaks of these women using beauty, mystery, and lies to deceive people as if the people were animals that the women hunted down and trapped with their charms. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they use to hunt down people" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### make veils for their heads of every size

This means that they make veils to put on the heads of people of different height. Alternate translation: "make veils for the heads of women of every stature" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Will you hunt down my people but save your own lives?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to rebuke the women who do these things. The implicit answer is, "no." Alternate translation: "Do not think that you will be able to save your own lives after you have hunted down my people!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [their](#)
- [but save...lives](#)
- [hand](#)
- [for their heads](#)
- [my people](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Woe to the women who sew magic charms onto every part of [their hand](#) and make veils [for their heads](#) of every size, used to hunt down people. Will you hunt down [my people](#) but save your own [lives](#)?'



## Ezekiel 13:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak against the false prophetesses in Israel.

### handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread

Barley is a grain used to make bread and the word “crumb” is a small amount of bread. Both phrases are small amounts of food and are used to emphasize how small the payment was to the prophetesses. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- You have profaned
- among my people
- people
- barley
- bread
- die
- your
- of those who
- continue to live

### ULT

**19** You have profaned me among my people for handfuls of barley and crumbs of bread, to kill people who should not die, and to preserve the lives of those who should not continue to live, because of your lies to my people who heard you.

## Ezekiel 13:20

### the magic charms that you have used to ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds

Yahweh speaks of these women using their magic charms to deceive people as if the people were birds that the women trapped with those charms. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### charms

objects believed to have magical powers

#### to ensnare

"to trap" "to catch in a snare"

#### tear them from your arms

"tear the charms from your arms"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [the people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I am against the magic charms that you have used to ensnare the people's lives as if they were birds. Indeed, I will tear them from your arms; and [the people](#) whom you have trapped like birds—I will let them go free.

## Ezekiel 13:21

### rescue my people from your hand

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “rescue my people from your power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they will no longer be trapped in your hands

Here the word “hand” represents power or control. Yahweh speaks of the people being in the control of these women as if the women had trapped them with their hands. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will no longer trap them like prey in your hands” or “you will no longer control them with your power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> I will tear away your veils and [rescue my people from your hand](#), so they will no longer be trapped [in your hands](#).  
[You will know that I am Yahweh.](#)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rescue](#)
- [my people](#)
- [from your hand](#)
- [in your hands](#)
- [You will know that](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 13:22

### discourage the heart of the righteous person

Here the word “heart” represents the person and his emotions. Alternate translation: “discourage the righteous person” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### turn from his way

To stop doing something is referred to as turning in a different direction. Alternate translation: “stop what he is doing” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the heart](#)
- [of the righteous person](#)
- [instead](#)
- [the actions of the wicked person](#)
- [that he will not turn from his way](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Because you discourage [the heart of the righteous person](#) with lies, even though I did not desire his discouragement, and because you encourage [instead the actions of the wicked person](#) so that he will not turn [from his way](#) to save his life—

## Ezekiel 13:23

### have false visions or continue to make predictions

Both of these phrases refer to talking about what will happen in the future. Alternate translation: "continue to make false predictions" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### I will rescue my people out of your hand

Here the word "hand" represents power or control. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 13:21](#). Alternate translation: "I will rescue my people from your power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for I will rescue](#)
- [my people](#)
- [out of your hand](#)
- [You will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> therefore you will no longer have false visions or continue to make predictions, [for I will rescue my people out of your hand](#). [You will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#)."

## **Ezekiel 14**

### **Ezekiel 14 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Jerusalem deserves punishment**

When the captives from Jerusalem arrive in Babylon, it will be obvious why God has punished them.

## Ezekiel 14:1

### Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me

The elders sat before Ezekiel in order to inquire of the Lord through Ezekiel. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Israel

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat before me.

## Ezekiel 14:2

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,



## Ezekiel 14:3

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### have taken their idols into their hearts

Yahweh speaks of the elders committing themselves to worshiping idols as if the elders had “taken their idols into their hearts.” Alternate translation: “have devoted themselves to idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### have put the stumbling block of their iniquity before their own faces

Yahweh speaks of the idols that the elders worship as if they were blocks over which the elders stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. Alternate translation: “have resolutely determined to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### stumbling block of their iniquity

This could mean: (1) the idols are a stumbling block that leads to the elders’ iniquity or (2) worshiping idols is an iniquity that causes the elders to stumble.

### Should I be inquired of at all by them?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the elders should not be inquiring of him. This question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Should I permit them to inquire of me at all?” or “They should not be inquiring of me at all.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- their hearts
- of their iniquity
- faces
- at all by

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> “[Son of man](#), these men have taken their idols into [their hearts](#) and have put the stumbling block [of their iniquity](#) before their own [faces](#). Should I be inquired of [at all by](#) them?”

## Ezekiel 14:4

### Therefore announce this to them

The word “them” refers to the “men from the elders of Israel.”

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### who takes his idols into his heart

Yahweh speaks of the people committing themselves to worshiping idols as if they had taken their idols into their hearts. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). Alternate translation: “who devotes himself to idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### who puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face

Yahweh speaks of the idols that people worship as if they were blocks over which the people stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). Alternate translation: “who resolutely determines to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I, Yahweh, will answer him according to the number of his idols

This phrase refers to the many idols that the people worship. It is implied that the severity of Yahweh’s answer will be as great as the number of idols that they worship. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh, will give him the answer that he deserves because he worships so many idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [heart](#)
- [of his iniquity](#)
- [before his face](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will answer](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Therefore announce this to them and say to them, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Every man of the [house of Israel](#) who takes his idols into his [heart](#), or who puts the stumbling block [of his iniquity before his face](#), and who then comes to [a prophet](#)—I, [Yahweh](#), will [answer](#) him according to the number of his idols.

## Ezekiel 14:5

### I may take back the house of Israel in their hearts

Here the word “hearts” represents the minds and affections of the people. Yahweh speaks of causing them to be devoted to him once again as if he were to capture their hearts. Alternate translation: “I will cause the people of Israel to be devoted to me again” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> I will do this so that I may take back [the house of Israel in their hearts](#) that have been driven far from me through their idols.’

### their hearts that have been driven far from me through their idols

Here the word “hearts” represents the minds and affections of the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who have all left me to worship their idols” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [in their hearts](#)

## Ezekiel 14:6

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore say to [the house of Israel](#), ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [Repent](#) and [turn away](#) from your idols! [Turn back your faces](#) from all your abominations.

### Repent and turn away from your idols! Turn back your faces from all your abominations

Both of these phrases are ways to tell the people of Israel to stop worshiping idols. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Repent and turn away

The words “repent” and “turn way” mean basically the same thing. Together they strengthen the command to stop worshiping idols. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Turn back your faces

Here the word “faces” represents the people. Alternate translation: “Turn back” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [turn away](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [Turn back](#)
- [your faces](#)

## Ezekiel 14:7

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### who takes his idols into his heart

Yahweh speaks of the people committing themselves to worshiping idols as if they had taken their idols into their hearts. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). Alternate translation: “who devotes himself to idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### puts the stumbling block of his iniquity before his own face

Yahweh speaks of the idols that people worship as if they were blocks over which the people stumble, and of being determined to worship those idols as if they had placed those stumbling blocks in front of their faces. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 14:3](#). Alternate translation: “who resolutely determines to worship the things that lead to iniquity” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [heart](#)
- [of his iniquity](#)
- [before](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [seek me](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will answer](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For every one [from the house of Israel](#) and every one of the foreigners staying [in Israel](#) who deserts me, who takes his idols into his [heart](#) and puts the stumbling block [of his iniquity before](#) his own face, and who then comes to [a prophet to seek me](#)—I, [Yahweh, will answer](#) him myself.

## Ezekiel 14:8

### I will set my face against that man

Yahweh speaks of being opposed to a person as if he were to set his face against that person. Alternate translation: “I will be against that man” or “I will oppose that man” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set my face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set my face” refers to staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### make him a sign and a proverb

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. The word proverb refers to what people will say about that sign when they see it. Alternate translation: “I will make that man to be a warning and a proverb” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will cut him off from the midst of my people

Yahweh speaks of causing a person no longer to belong to his people as if he were cutting that person off from the people, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “I will cause him no longer to belong to my people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my face](#)
- [for I will cut him off](#)
- [of my people](#)
- [and you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So I will set [my face](#) against that man and make him a sign and a proverb, [for I will cut him off](#) from the midst of [my people](#), and you will know that I am Yahweh.

## Ezekiel 14:9

### I will reach out with my hand against him

God's "hand" refers to what he does. Alternate translation: "I will work against him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- prophet
- my hand
- of my people
- Israel

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If a prophet is deceived and speaks a message, then I, [Yahweh](#), will deceive that [prophet](#); I will reach out with [my hand](#) against him and destroy him from the midst of [my people Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 14:10

### They will carry their own iniquity

Here the word “iniquity” represents the guilt that people incur for committing iniquity. Yahweh speaks of people suffering the consequences of their iniquity as if they were carrying the iniquity. Alternate translation: “They will suffer the consequences of their own iniquity” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their own iniquity](#)
- [of the prophet](#)

#### ULT

**10** They will carry [their own iniquity](#); the iniquity [of the prophet](#) will be the same as the iniquity of the one who inquires from him.



## Ezekiel 14:11

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will no longer wander away from following me

Yahweh speaks of the people no longer worshipping him as if they were to wander away from him and no longer follow him. Alternate translation: “will no longer stop worshipping me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [people](#)
- [God](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**11** Because of this, [the house of Israel](#) will no longer wander away from following me nor defile themselves any longer through all their transgressions. They will be my [people](#), and I will be their [God](#)—[this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.](#)”

## Ezekiel 14:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 14:13

### when a land sins against me

Here the word “land” represents the people who live in the land.  
Alternate translation: “when the people who live in a land sin against me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### break the staff of its bread

Yahweh speaks of the supply of bread as if it were a staff. The word “bread” represents all kinds of food. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:16](#). Alternate translation: “end the supply of its food” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### cut off both man and beast from the land

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if he were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “kill both man and beast in the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [both man](#)
- [and beast](#)
- [when a land](#)
- [sins](#)
- [sin](#)
- [with my hand against it](#)
- [of its bread](#)
- [a famine](#)
- [and cut off](#)

### ULT

13 “[Son of man](#), [when a land sins](#) against me by committing a [sin](#) so that I reach out [with my hand against it](#) and break the staff [of its bread](#), and send out over it [a famine and cut off both man and beast](#) from the land;

## Ezekiel 14:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- and Job
- by their
- this is the Lord

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> then even if these three men—Noah, Daniel, and Job—were in the land's midst, they could only rescue their own lives by their righteousness—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

## Ezekiel 14:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- it becomes a wasteland

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> If I send **evil** beasts through the land and make it barren so that **it becomes a wasteland** where no man may pass through because of the beasts,

**Ezekiel 14:16****these same three men**

Noah, Daniel, and Job

**as I live**

“as surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

**ULT**

**16** then even if these same three men were in it—as I live, declares [the Lord](#) Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue [even their own sons](#) or daughters; only their own [lives](#) would be rescued, but the land would become [a wasteland](#).

**only their own lives would be rescued**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they could only rescue their own lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the Lord](#)
- [even their own sons](#)
- [lives](#)
- [a wasteland](#)

## Ezekiel 14:17

### if I bring a sword against that land

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation:

### Sword, go through the land

Here the word “sword” represents the soldiers of an enemy army who attack with swords. Alternate translation: “Army, go through the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### cut off both man and beast from it

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if it were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: “kill both man and beast in the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a sword](#)
- [Sword](#)
- [land](#)
- [and cut off](#)
- [both man](#)
- [and beast](#)

#### ULT

**17** Or if I bring [a sword](#) against that [land](#) and say, ‘[Sword](#), go through the land and cut off both man and beast from it’,

## Ezekiel 14:18

### these three men

Noah, Daniel, and Job

### only their own lives would be rescued

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they would only rescue their own lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [even their own sons](#)
- [lives](#)

### ULT

**18** then even if these three men were in the midst of the land—as I live, declares [the Lord](#) Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue [even their own sons](#) or daughters; only their own [lives](#) would be rescued.



## Ezekiel 14:19

### **pour out my fury**

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury as if his fury were a liquid that he pours out from a container. Alternate translation: "I will express my fury" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **cut off both man and beast**

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if he were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. Alternate translation: "kill both man and beast" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **ULT**

**19** Or if I send a plague [against this land](#) and pour out [my fury against](#) it through bloodshed, in order to [cut off](#) both [man and beast](#),

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [against this land](#)
- [my fury against](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [man](#)
- [and beast](#)

## Ezekiel 14:20

### only their own lives would be rescued

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they would only rescue their own lives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- and Job
- the Lord
- only their own lives
- even their own
- sons

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> then even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were in that land—as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh—they would not be able to rescue even their own sons or daughters; only their own lives would be rescued by their righteousness.

## Ezekiel 14:21

### to cut off both man and beast from her

Yahweh speaks of killing people and animals as if it were cutting them off, like a person would cut a branch from a tree. The word “her” refers to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “to kill both man and beast in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [worse](#)
- [against](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [both man](#)
- [and beast](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I will certainly make things [worse](#) by sending my four punishments—famine, [sword](#), wild animals, and plague—[against Jerusalem](#) to [cut off both man and beast](#) from her.

## Ezekiel 14:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak with Ezekiel about the punishment of the people of Israel.

### Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the information that follows.

### left in her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

### be comforted concerning the punishment

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will comfort you concerning the punishment” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will be left](#)
- [survivors](#)
- [sons](#)
- [punishment](#)
- [I have sent to Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

**22** Yet, behold! A remnant [will be left](#) in her, [survivors](#) who will go out with [sons](#) and daughters. Behold! They will go out to you, and you will see their ways and actions and be comforted concerning the [punishment](#) that [I have sent to Jerusalem](#), and about everything else that I have sent against the land.

## Ezekiel 14:23

### done against her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

### their ways and their actions

Both of these phrases refer to what the people of Israel have done.  
Alternate translation: “the way they live” or “the things they do”  
(See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will know](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The survivors will comfort you when you see their ways and their actions, so [you will know](#) all these things I have done against her, that I have not done them in vain!—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

## **Ezekiel 15**

### **Ezekiel 15 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Useless**

God said that the people of Jerusalem were useless to him. He uses a simile to show just how useless they were.  
(See: [Simile](#))

## Ezekiel 15:1

### General Information:

Yahweh is talking to Ezekiel in this section.

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 15:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), how is [a vine](#) better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest?”

### how is a vine better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “a vine is not better than any tree with branches that is among the trees in a forest.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [a vine](#)



## Ezekiel 15:3

### Do people take wood from a vine to make anything?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "People do not take wood from a vine to make anything." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Do people take wood from a vine to make anything? Or do they make a peg from it **to hang** anything on it?

### do they make a peg from it to hang anything on it?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "they do not make a peg from it to hang things on it." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to hang](#)

## Ezekiel 15:4

### If it is thrown into a fire as fuel ... is it good for anything?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel of something he already knows. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If it is thrown into a fire as fuel ... it is not good for anything." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> See! If it is thrown into a fire as fuel, and [if the fire has burned](#) both of its ends and also the middle, is it good for anything?

### If it is thrown into a fire as fuel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If a person throws it into a fire as fuel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [if the fire](#)
- [has burned](#)

## Ezekiel 15:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking about the vine.

### See!

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### When it was complete

“When it was whole” or “Before the fire burned it”

### it could not make anything

“no one could make anything from it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- surely then, when the fire
- has burned

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> See! When it was complete, it could not make anything; surely then, when the fire has burned, then it still will not make anything useful.

## Ezekiel 15:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- the vine
- of Jerusalem

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this:  
Unlike the trees in the forests, I have  
given the vine as fuel for fires; I will act  
in the same way toward the inhabitants  
of Jerusalem.

## Ezekiel 15:7

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.

### I will set my face against them

Yahweh speaks of being opposed to them as if he were to set his face against them. Alternate translation: “I will be against them” or “I will oppose them” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set my face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set my face” refers to staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Though they come out from the fire, yet the fire will consume them

Yahweh speaks of the punishment that he will afflict upon the people as if it were a fire that burns them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the fire will consume them

Yahweh speaks of fire burning things as if the fire consumed them. Alternate translation: “the fire will destroy them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will
- my face
- Though they come out from
- so you will know
- will consume them
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For I will set my face against them.

Though they come out from the fire, yet the fire will consume them; so you will know that I am Yahweh, when I set my face against them.

## Ezekiel 15:8

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will make the land](#)
- [into an abandoned](#)
- [wasteland](#)
- [sin](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then [I will make the land into an abandoned wasteland](#) because they have committed [sin](#)—[this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.](#)"

## **Ezekiel 16**

### **Ezekiel 16 General Notes**

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

God compared Judah to an adulteress because she worshiped idols instead of God who had done so much to help her. Adultery is a common image used to describe the worship of idols by Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 16:1

### General Information:

In this chapter, Yahweh speaks about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful bride. He describes her growth from infancy to adulthood. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh



## Ezekiel 16:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), [inform Jerusalem](#) about her abominations,

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [inform](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

## Ezekiel 16:3

### Your beginning and your birth

These two phrases share similar meanings. Yahweh speaks of when people founded the city as if it were the city's birth. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### your father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite

The Amorites and Hittites were both pagan people groups who lived in the land before the people of Israel conquered it. Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem's father and mother belonging to these people groups to express that she was born into idolatry. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and declare, 'The Lord Yahweh says this to Jerusalem: Your beginning and your birth took place in the land of Canaan; your father was an Amorite, and your mother was a Hittite.

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Lord
- to Jerusalem
- of Canaan
- your father
- was an Amorite
- was a Hittite

## Ezekiel 16:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were an infant. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### your mother did not cut your navel

Here “navel” refers to the umbilical cord that is attached to the navel. Alternate translation: “you mother did not cut your umbilical cord” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [cut](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> On the day of your birth, your mother did not [cut](#) your navel, nor did she purify you in water or rub you down with salt, or wrap cloth around you.

## Ezekiel 16:5

### No eye had compassion for you

Here the word “eye” represents the person who sees. Alternate translation: “Nobody who saw you had compassion for you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### with loathing for your life

“because your parents hated you”

### you were thrown out into the open field

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “your parents threw you out into the open field” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- for your life

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> No eye had compassion for you to do any of these things for you, to be compassionate toward you. On the day that you were born, with loathing for your life, you were thrown out into the open field.

## Ezekiel 16:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were an infant. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### But I passed by you

Yahweh is walking near the newborn baby.

### I said to you in your blood

The implicit information can be supplied from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "I said to you as you were lying in your blood" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But I passed](#)
- [Live](#)
- [Live](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [But I passed](#) by you, and I saw you writhing in your own blood; so I said to you in your blood, "[Live!](#)" I said to you in your blood, "[Live!](#)" <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 16:7

### I made you grow like a plant in a field

Here Yahweh compares growing quickly with the way a plant grows quickly. (See: [Simile](#))

### You multiplied and became great

These two phrases share similar meanings. They both refer to her growing and becoming taller. Alternate translation: "You matured and grew taller" (See: [Doublet](#))

### you became the jewel of jewels

Here the woman, who represents Jerusalem, is spoken of as if she had become the finest of all jewels, that is, as if she had become the most beautiful of all women. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you became the jewel of jewels

Some modern versions translate "You became old enough to wear jewels."

### naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing. Alternate translation: "completely naked" (See: [Doublet](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> I made you grow like a plant in a field. You multiplied and became great, and you became the jewel of jewels. Your breasts became firm, and your hair grew thick, though you had been naked and bare.

## Ezekiel 16:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### See!

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### the time of love came for you

This is to say that Yahweh sees the young woman is old enough to be married.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I passed](#)
- [Then I swore](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [I passed](#) by you again, and I saw you. See! the time of love came for you, so I spread my robe over you and covered your nakedness. [Then I swore](#) to you and brought you into a covenant—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—and you became mine.

## Ezekiel 16:9

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So I washed you](#)
- [your blood](#)
- [and I anointed you](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [So I washed you](#) with water and rinsed [your blood](#) off you, and I anointed you with oil.



## Ezekiel 16:10

### embroidered clothes

“beautiful clothes.” To embroider is to sew a design into a piece of cloth.

#### ULT

**10** I dressed you in embroidered clothes and placed leather sandals on your feet. I wrapped you with fine linen and covered you with silk.

## Ezekiel 16:11

### I adorned you with jewelry

"I put jewelry on you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- your hands

#### ULT

**11** Next I adorned you with jewelry, and I put bracelets on **your hands**, and a chain around your neck.

## Ezekiel 16:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- crown
- your head

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I put a nose ring in your nostrils and earrings in your ears, and a beautiful crown on your head.

## Ezekiel 16:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### **you were adorned with gold and silver, and you were dressed in fine linen**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I adorned you with gold and silver, and dressed you in fine linen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with gold](#)
- [and silver](#)
- [you ate](#)
- [honey](#)
- [and oil](#)
- [became](#)

### ULT

**13** So you were adorned [with gold and silver](#), and you were dressed in fine linen, silk, and embroidered clothes; [you ate](#) fine flour, [honey, and oil](#), and you were very beautiful, and you [became](#) a queen.

## Ezekiel 16:14

### Your fame went out among the nations

“Many people in many nations knew who you were”

### it was perfect

“your beauty was perfect”

### Translation Words - ULT

- fame
- went out among
- the nations
- this is the Lord

#### ULT

**14** Your fame went out among the nations because of your beauty, for it was perfect in the majesty that I had given to you—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration.

## Ezekiel 16:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a young woman. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### you trusted in your own beauty

“you placed your confidence in your own beauty”

### acted like a prostitute

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem as if the city were an unfaithful wife who sleeps with other men in exchange for payment. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you poured out your acts of prostitution

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s immoral actions as if they were liquids and of committing those actions repeatedly as if it were pouring those liquids from a container. Alternate translation: “you repeatedly committed your acts of prostitution” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so that your beauty became his

This Hebrew phrase is translated in many different ways by various modern versions. For example, some Bibles read “so that you gave yourself to him” or “his it was”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your fame](#)

### ULT

**15** But you trusted in your own beauty, and you acted like a prostitute because of [your fame](#); you poured out your acts of prostitution on everyone who passed by, so that your beauty became his.

## Ezekiel 16:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**16** Then you took your clothes and with them you made high places for yourself decorated in various colors, and there you acted like a prostitute. This should not have happened. Nor should such a thing exist.

## Ezekiel 16:17

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### male figures

“statues of men” or “idols that look like men”

### you did with them as a prostitute would do

This could mean: (1) this is a polite way to say the young woman was sleeping with the male figures. Alternate translation: “you slept with them” or (2) this is a metaphor in which Yahweh speaks of her worshiping the figures as if she were sleeping with them. Alternate translation: “you worshiped them” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**17** You took the fine jewels of the gold and silver that I gave you, and you made for yourself male figures, and you did with them as a prostitute would do.



## Ezekiel 16:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- my oils

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> You took your embroidered garments and covered them, and you set **my oils** and perfumes before them.

## Ezekiel 16:19

### set before them

“placed as an offering in front of them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- My bread
- oil
- and honey
- for this is
- this is the Lord

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> My bread I gave you—made with fine flour, oil, and honey—you set before them for a fragrant aroma, for this is what happened—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

## Ezekiel 16:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### whom you bore for me

“who were my children”

### you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food

Here Yahweh speaks of something that the people of Israel had actually done. They sacrificed their children to pagan idols. In these ancient pagan sacrifices, the people believed that the gods would eat the food that they offered to them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you sacrificed them to the images so that those images could devour them as food” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Are your acts of prostitution a small matter?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the woman is acting as if her prostitution was not bad enough and so she decided to sacrifice her children as well. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You must think that your acts of prostitution are a small matter.” or “I do not think your acts of prostitution are a small matter.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your sons](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then you took [your sons](#) and daughters whom you bore for me, and you sacrificed them to the images to be devoured as food. Are your acts of prostitution a small matter?

## Ezekiel 16:21

### made them pass through the fire

Here Yahweh speaks of something that the people of Israel had actually done. They sacrificed their children to pagan idols. It is implicit that she put them into the fire in order to offer them as burnt offerings to her images. Alternate translation: "sacrificed them as burnt offerings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**21** You slaughtered my children to the idols and made them pass through the fire.

### Translation Words - ULT

- You slaughtered
- children

## Ezekiel 16:22

### naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 16:7](#). Alternate translation: “completely naked” (See: [Doublet](#))

#### ULT

**22** In all your abominations and your acts of prostitution you have not thought about the days of your youth, when you were naked and bare as you thrashed about in your blood.

## Ezekiel 16:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)
- [wickedness](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Woe! Woe to you!—[this is the Lord](#)  
Yahweh's declaration—therefore, in  
addition to all this [wickedness](#),

## Ezekiel 16:24

### **you built yourself a mound and made yourself a lofty shrine in every public place**

This could mean: (1) she could worship her idols or (2) she could practice her prostitution.

#### **ULT**

<sup>24</sup> you built yourself a mound and made yourself a lofty shrine in every public place.

## Ezekiel 16:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### at the head of every road

Yahweh speaks of the beginning of a road as if it were its head. Alternate translation: "at the beginning of every road" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [at the head](#)

### ULT

**25** You built your high place [at the head](#) of every road and made your beauty a disgrace, and you spread your legs to anyone who passed by, and you multiplied your acts of prostitution.



## Ezekiel 16:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- with the Egyptians
- your lustful
- you committed

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You have acted like a prostitute with the Egyptians, your lustful neighbors, and you committed many more acts of prostitution, provoking me to anger.

## Ezekiel 16:27

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### See!

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### I will strike you with my hand

Here “hand” represents power. Alternate translation: “I will use my power to strike you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### cut off your food

Yahweh speaks of stopping the supply of food as if it were cutting off the food. Alternate translation: “stop your food supply” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will hand your life over

Here “life” represents the person. Alternate translation: “I will hand you over” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the daughters of the Philistines

Here Yahweh speaks of the cities of Philistia as if they were the daughters of the Philistines. The cities represent the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the Philistine people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [your food](#)
- [life over](#)
- [of the Philistines](#)

### ULT

**27** See! I will strike you with [my hand](#) and cut off [your food](#). I will hand your [life over](#) to your enemies, the daughters of the [Philistines](#), who were ashamed of your obscene behavior.

## Ezekiel 16:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Assyrians
- the Assyrians

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> You have acted like a prostitute with the Assyrians because you could not be satisfied. You acted like a prostitute and still were not satisfied.

## Ezekiel 16:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- land
- of Chaldea

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> You performed many more acts of prostitution in the land of the merchants of Chaldea, and even this did not satisfy you.

## Ezekiel 16:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem and the people of Israel as his unfaithful wife.

### How sick is your heart ... that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute?

Yahweh asks the rhetorical question in order to rebuke Jerusalem. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your heart must be very sick ... that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless prostitute!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### How sick is your heart

Here the word "heart" represents the will and emotions. Yahweh speaks of her inability to control her desires as if her heart were sick. Alternate translation: "How weak-willed are you" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)
- [prostitute](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> How sick is your heart—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration—that you would do all these things, deeds of a shameless [prostitute](#)?

## Ezekiel 16:31

### built your mounds ... made your lofty shrines

This could mean: (1) she could worship her idols or (2) she could practice her prostitution. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 16:24](#).

### at the head of every street

Yahweh speaks of the beginning of a street as if it were its head. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 16:25](#). Alternate translation: "at the beginning of every street" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [at the head](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> You have built your mounds [at the head](#) of every street and made your lofty shrines in every public square. Yet you were not like a prostitute because you scoffed at taking payment.

## Ezekiel 16:32

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**32** You adulterous woman, you accept strangers instead of your husband.

### you accept strangers instead of your husband

This refers to accepting someone to sleep with her. Alternate translation: “you accept strangers into your bed instead of your husband” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Ezekiel 16:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prostitute
- to all your lovers

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> People give payment to every prostitute, but you give your wages to all your lovers and bribe them to come to you from all around for your acts of prostitution.



## Ezekiel 16:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to act as a prostitute

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> So there is a difference between you and other women. No one offers payment for you to act as a prostitute. You are the very opposite. You gave them payment and none was given to you.

## Ezekiel 16:35

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you prostitute](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Therefore, [you prostitute](#), listen to the word [of Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 16:36

### you have poured out your lust

Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem's lust as if it were liquid and of committing actions repeatedly to gratify that lust as if it were pouring that liquid from a container. Alternate translation: "you repeatedly committed actions to gratify your lust" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### poured out your lust

Some modern versions translate "poured your wealth out."

### you gave them your children's blood

This refers to killing children as a sacrifice to idols.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [with your lovers](#)
- [your children's](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Because you have poured out your lust and uncovered your nakedness through your acts of prostitution [with your lovers](#) and with all your detestable idols, and because you gave them [your children's](#) blood,

## Ezekiel 16:37

### behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### so they see all your nakedness

Stripping a person naked in front of others was an action intended to humiliate the person. The word “nakedness” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “so they can see you completely naked” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

**37** therefore, behold, I will gather all your [lovers](#) that you have met, all those whom [you loved](#) and all those whom you hated, and I will gather them against you on every side. I will uncover your nakedness to them so they see all your nakedness.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lovers](#)
- [you loved](#)

## Ezekiel 16:38

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### the shedding of blood

This phrase represents murder in any form. Alternate translation: “murder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will bring on you the bloodshed of my anger and passion

Here “bloodshed” represents murder in any form. This could mean: (1) Yahweh speaks of punishing her for murder as if he were bringing bloodshed upon her. Alternate translation: “In my anger and passion, I will punish you for committing murder” or (2) Yahweh speaks of putting her to death as if he were bringing bloodshed upon her. Alternate translation: “In my anger and passion, I will shed your blood” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [For I will](#)
- [punish you](#)
- [of blood](#)
- [on you the bloodshed](#)
- [of my anger](#)

#### ULT

**38** For I will punish you for adultery and the shedding of blood, and I will bring on you the bloodshed of my anger and passion.

## Ezekiel 16:39

### I will give you into their hands

Here “hands” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “I will place you in their control” or “I will allow them to have power over you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### throw down your vaulted chamber

Possible meanings are that they will destroy (1) the place where she worshiped her idols or (2) the place where she practiced her prostitution. See how you translated “vaulted chamber” in [Ezekiel 16:24](#).

### naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 16:7](#). Alternate translation: “completely naked” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [into their hands](#)

#### ULT

**39** I will give you [into their hands](#) so they will throw down your vaulted chamber and break down your high places and they will strip you of your clothes and take all of your jewelry. They will leave you naked and bare.

## Ezekiel 16:40

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. He speaks about enemy soldiers as her lovers. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a crowd](#)
- [with their swords](#)

### ULT

**40** Then they will bring up [a crowd](#) against you and stone you with stones, and they will cut you apart [with their swords](#).

## Ezekiel 16:41

### will perform many acts of punishment on you

The word “punishment” can be translated with a verbal phrase.  
Alternate translation: “will punish you in many different ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### in the sight of many women

“where many women can see” or “while many women watch”

### Translation Words - ULT

- will burn
- your houses

#### ULT

41 They will burn your houses and will perform many acts of punishment on you in the sight of many women, for I will put a stop to your prostitution, and you will no longer pay your lovers.



## Ezekiel 16:42

### I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you

The words “fury” and “anger” refer to the punishment that Yahweh inflicts because he is angry. The two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “I will stop punishing you because I will no longer be angry with you” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then I will calm](#)
- [my fury against you](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Then I will calm my fury against you; my anger will leave you, for I will be satisfied, and will no longer be angry.

## Ezekiel 16:43

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### call to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

### have made me shake with anger because of all these things

Here “shake” refers to a physical response that a person has when he is extremely angry. As Jerusalem was doing these things, she did not think about what Yahweh had done when she was young.

### behold!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your own head the punishment](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**43** Because you did not call to mind the days of your youth and have made me shake with anger because of all these things, therefore, behold! I myself will bring down on [your own head the punishment](#) for what you have done—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration. Have you not added prostitution to all your other detestable practices?

## Ezekiel 16:44

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Behold!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### ULT

**44** Behold! Everyone who speaks proverbs concerning you will say, “As the mother is, so also is her daughter.”

## Ezekiel 16:45

### who detested her husband

“who hated her husband”

### Your mother was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite

The Amorites and Hittites were both pagan people groups who lived in the land before the people of Israel conquered it. Yahweh speaks of Jerusalem’s father and mother belonging to these people groups to express that she was born into idolatry. See how you translated these phrases in [Ezekiel 16:3](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> You are the daughter of your mother, who detested her husband [and her children](#), and you are the sister of your sisters who detested [their husbands and their children](#). Your mother [was a Hittite, and your father was an Amorite](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and her children](#)
- [their husbands and their children](#)
- [was a Hittite](#)
- [and your father](#)
- [was an Amorite](#)

## Ezekiel 16:46

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Your older sister was Samaria ... your younger sister was the one living south of you, that is, Sodom

Samaria and Sodom were both cities that Yahweh had judged for their idolatry and wickedness. Yahweh speaks of these cities being Jerusalem's sisters to express that she belonged to a family that practiced idolatry and wickedness. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- was Samaria
- that is, Sodom

#### ULT

**46** Your older sister was Samaria and her daughters were the ones living in the north, while your younger sister was the one living south of you, that is, Sodom and her daughters.

## Ezekiel 16:47

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### You not only walked in their ways

The way a person lives is spoken of as if the person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “You not only acted like them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### copied their behavior and practices

Here the words “behavior” and “practices” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “copied the things that they did” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [walked in](#)

#### ULT

**47** You not only [walked in](#) their ways and copied their behavior and practices, but in all your ways you have been worse than they were.

## Ezekiel 16:48

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- live
- this is the Lord
- Sodom

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> As I live—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration—your sister Sodom and her daughters, have not done as much evil as you and your daughters have done.

## Ezekiel 16:49

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned about anything

Yahweh describes Sodom as a rich woman who has more than enough food and lives in security. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### She did not strengthen the hands of the poor and needy people

Here the word “hands” represents the people who work with their hands. The words “poor” and “needy” emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. Alternate translation: “She did not help the people who could not help themselves” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [about anything](#)
- [strengthen](#)
- [the hands](#)

### ULT

**49** Behold! This was [the sin](#) of your sister [Sodom](#) that she was arrogant in her leisure, careless and unconcerned [about anything](#). She did not [strengthen the hands](#) of the poor and needy people.



## Ezekiel 16:50

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> She was arrogant and committed disgusting actions before me, so I took them away just as you have seen.

## Ezekiel 16:51

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### **you have shown that your sisters were better than you**

Yahweh uses this phrase three times to emphasize that the wicked cities of Samaria and Sodom were more righteous than Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [commit](#)
- [your sins](#)

### ULT

**51** Neither did Samaria [commit](#) even half of [your sins](#); instead, you have done many more disgusting things than they did, and you have shown that your sisters were better than you because of all the disgusting things that you do!

## Ezekiel 16:52

### Especially you, show your own shame

Yahweh uses this phrase twice to emphasize how shamefully the people of Jerusalem have acted.

### show your own shame

“be ashamed” or “bear your disgrace”

### Translation Words - ULT

- sins you committed
- you, show your own shame

### ULT

<sup>52</sup> Especially you, show your own shame; in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you, because of the [sins you committed](#) in all those disgusting ways. Your sisters now seem better than you. Especially [you, show your own shame](#), for in this way you have shown that your sisters were better than you.

## Ezekiel 16:53

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [For I will](#)
- [restore](#)
- [fortunes](#)
- [fortunes \(2\)](#)
- [of Sodom](#)
- [of Samaria](#)

### ULT

**53** For I will restore their fortunes—the fortunes of Sodom and her daughters, and the fortunes of Samaria and her daughters; but your fortunes will be among them.

## Ezekiel 16:54

### you will show your shame

“you will be ashamed” or “you will bear your disgrace”

### you will be humiliated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will humiliate you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you will be a comfort to them

The noun “comfort” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “you will comfort Sodom and Samaria” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will show your shame](#)

#### ULT

<sup>54</sup> On account of these things [you will show your shame](#); you will be humiliated because of everything that you have done, and in this way you will be a comfort to them.

## Ezekiel 16:55

### **your sister Sodom and her daughters will be restored to their former condition**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will restore your sister Sodom and her daughters to their former condition" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Samaria and her daughters will be restored to their former estate**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will restore your sister Samaria and her daughters to their former estate" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **estate**

"condition"

### **you and your daughters will be restored to your former condition**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will restore you and your daughters to your former condition" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Sodom](#)
- [will be restored](#)
- [will be restored](#)
- [will be restored](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>55</sup> So your sister [Sodom](#) and her daughters [will be restored](#) to their former condition, and Samaria and her daughters [will be restored](#) to their former estate. Then you and your daughters [will be restored](#) to your former condition.

## Ezekiel 16:56

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Sodom your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth

Here the word "mouth" represents the person who speaks. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You did not even mention your sister Sodom" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sodom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>56</sup> [Sodom](#) your sister was not even mentioned by your mouth in the days when you were proud,

## Ezekiel 16:57

### before your wickedness was revealed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “before you revealed your wickedness” or “before I revealed your wickedness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you are an object of scorn

This refers to Jerusalem as something people talk badly about.

### the daughters of Edom and to all the daughters of the Philistines

Here Yahweh speaks of the cities of Edom and Philistia as if they were the daughters of Edom and of the Philistines. The cities represent the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the Edomite people and to all the Philistine people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### despise

hate very much

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your wickedness](#)
- [was revealed](#)
- [you are an object of scorn](#)
- [of the Philistines](#)

#### ULT

**57** before [your wickedness was revealed](#).  
But now [you are an object of scorn](#) to  
the daughters of Edom and to all the  
daughters [of the Philistines](#) around her.  
People all about despise you. <sup>[2]</sup>



## Ezekiel 16:58

### this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is Yahweh's](#)

#### ULT

**58** You will show your shame and your disgusting actions!—[this is Yahweh's](#) declaration!

## Ezekiel 16:59

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### despised your oath by breaking the covenant

Jerusalem broke her marriage covenant with Yahweh, thereby showing that she did not care about the oaths that she had made to him. Alternate translation: “despised your oath to me by breaking the covenant that you made with me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the covenant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>59</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I will deal with you as you deserve, you who have despised your oath by breaking [the covenant](#).

## Ezekiel 16:60

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were his unfaithful wife. The city represents the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### call to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

### made in the days of your youth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that I made with you when you were young” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my covenant](#)
- [covenant](#)

### ULT

**60** But I myself will call to mind [my covenant](#) with you made in the days of your youth, and I will establish an everlasting [covenant](#) with you.

## Ezekiel 16:61

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ashamed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>61</sup> Then you will call to mind your ways and be [ashamed](#) when you receive your older sisters and your younger sisters. I will give them to you as daughters, but not because of your covenant.

## Ezekiel 16:62

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my covenant with you](#)
- [know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**62** I myself will establish [my covenant with you](#), and you will [know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 16:63

### call everything to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember everything” (See: [Idiom](#))

### you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame

This means that Jerusalem will be too ashamed to speak.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**63** Because of these things, you will call everything to mind and be ashamed, so you will no longer open your mouth to speak because of your shame, when I have forgiven you for all that you have done—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

16:6 <sup>[1]</sup>.

16:57 <sup>[2]</sup>, some ancient copies and modern versions have , that is, Syria.

## **Ezekiel 17**

### **Ezekiel 17 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Breaking allegiance**

The king of Judah had vowed to obey Babylon but instead he followed Egypt. Therefore, God said he would not prosper. (See: [vow](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Judah is compared to a vine that grows one direction and then another. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 17:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel reports a message that God gives him.

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,



## Ezekiel 17:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), present a riddle and speak a parable to [the house of Israel](#).”

### present a riddle and speak a parable

“give them a puzzle to think about” or “tell this story as an illustration”

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 17:3

### long pinions, full of feathers

“the ends of its wings were long and full of feathers.” The word “pinion” means the outer end of the wings.

### that was multicolored

The eagle’s feathers were many different colors.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Lebanon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Say, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: A large eagle with large wings and long pinions, full of feathers, and that was multicolored went to [Lebanon](#) and took hold of the top of a cedar tree.

## Ezekiel 17:4

### It broke off the tips of the branches

“It broke off the highest part of the tree”

### took them

“took the top of the tree” or “took the branches”

### he planted it in a city of merchants

“he planted it in a city that had many merchants.” A merchant is a person who sells things.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the tips
- the land

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> It broke off the tips of the branches and took them to the land of Canaan; he planted it in a city of merchants.

## Ezekiel 17:5

### General Information:

This is a continuation of the parable about the eagle.

### He also took

The word “he” is the eagle in the parable.

### fertile soil

“good ground”

### He placed it beside a large body of water

“the eagle planted the seed in a place where there was a lot of water”

### planted it ... like a willow

Willow trees grow in places where there is a lot of water. If the eagle planted the seed like a willow, it means that he planted it in a place with a lot of water. Alternate translation: “and planted the seed like one would plant a willow tree by water” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [some seed](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [and planted it](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He also took [some seed of the land](#) and [planted it](#) in fertile soil. He placed it beside a large body of water like a willow.

## Ezekiel 17:6

### Then it sprouted

“Then the seed began to grow into a plant”

### a spreading vine low to the ground

“a vine that spreads out on the ground”

### Its branches turned toward him

The branches of the vine turned toward the eagle. This means that they began to grow upward towards the sky.

### its roots grew under it

This could mean: (1) “its roots grew under itself into the ground” or (2) “the roots of the vine grew under the eagle.”

### So it became a vine

“That is how the vine grew”

### produced branches and sent out shoots

“grew branches and spread its shoots”

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then it sprouted and became a spreading vine low to the ground. Its branches turned toward him, and its roots grew under it. So it became a vine and produced branches and sent out shoots.

## Ezekiel 17:7

### General Information:

The introductory “but” shows that a different eagle is being described other than the one before.

### another great eagle

“another large eagle”

### Behold!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### This vine turned its roots toward the eagle

Yahweh speaks of the vine as if it were able to behave like a person and intentionally turned its roots toward the other eagle to receive nourishment from it. Alternate translation: “The roots of the vine grew toward the eagle” (See: [Personification](#))

### from the place it had been planted so it would be watered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “from the place that the first eagle had planted it so that it would have water” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [vine](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But there was another great eagle with large wings and many feathers. Behold! This [vine](#) turned its roots toward the eagle, and it spread out its branches toward the eagle from the place it had been planted so it would be watered.

## Ezekiel 17:8

### It had been planted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The first eagle had planted the vine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [sprout fruit](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> It had been planted in [good](#) soil beside a large body of water so it would produce branches and [sprout fruit](#), to become a magnificent vine.'

## Ezekiel 17:9

### Will it prosper?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It will not prosper." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will it not be uprooted and stripped of its fruit so that it withers, and all its fresh growth will wither?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the vine will certainly be judged. The question can be translated as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will pull up its roots and pluck out its fruit so all of its growth of leaves will wither away." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### No strong arm or many people will be needed to pull it out

The phrase "strong arm" represents a strong person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There will be no need for a strong person or many people to pull it out" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Will it prosper](#)
- [of its fruit](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Say to the people, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: [Will it prosper](#)? Will it not be uprooted and stripped [of its fruit](#) so that it withers, and all its fresh growth will wither? No strong arm or many people will be needed to pull it out by its roots.'



## Ezekiel 17:10

### behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### will it grow?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question to emphasize the negative answer. The question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “It will not grow.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will it not wither when the eastern wind touches it?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that this will certainly happen. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “It will wither when the eastern wind touches it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### when the eastern wind touches it

“when the eastern wind blows on it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wind](#)

### ULT

**10** So behold! After it has been planted, will it grow? Will it not wither when the eastern [wind](#) touches it? It will completely wither away in the garden plot where it sprouted.”

## Ezekiel 17:11

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

11 Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 17:12

### the rebellious house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: “the rebellious people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Do you not know what these things mean?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to provide the answer. The question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “This is what these things mean.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### her king and her princes

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [know](#)
- [The king](#)
- [her king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [in Babylon](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [her princes](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> “Speak to the rebellious [house](#), ‘Do you not [know](#) what these things mean? Behold! [The king of Babylon](#) came [to Jerusalem](#) and took [her king](#) and [her princes](#) and brought them to him [in Babylon](#).’”

## Ezekiel 17:13

### brought him under an oath

“made him swear an oath”

### Translation Words - ULT

- descendant
- made a
- covenant
- under an oath
- of the land

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then he took a royal descendant, made a covenant with him, and brought him under an oath. He took away the powerful people of the land,

## Ezekiel 17:14

### so the kingdom might become lowly and not lift itself up

The kingdom being small and weak is spoken of as if it were lowly and being large and powerful as if it lifted itself up. Alternate translation: "so the kingdom might remain small and not become great" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the land will survive

Here the word "land" represents the kingdom of Judah and the people in it. Alternate translation: "the kingdom will continue to exist" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [so the kingdom](#)
- [covenant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [so the kingdom](#) might become lowly and not lift itself up. By keeping his [covenant](#) the land will survive.

## Ezekiel 17:15

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks about the king of Jerusalem rebelling against the king of Babylon.

### Will he succeed?

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "He will certainly not succeed." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will the one doing these things escape?

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This may be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The one doing these things will not escape." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### If he breaks the covenant, will he escape?

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the negative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "If he breaks the covenant, he will certainly not escape." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rebelled](#)
- [by sending his ambassadors](#)
- [to Egypt](#)
- [to acquire horses](#)
- [Will the one](#)
- [the covenant](#)

### ULT

**15** But the king of Jerusalem [rebelled](#) against him [by sending his ambassadors to Egypt to acquire horses](#) and an army. Will he succeed? [Will the one](#) doing these things escape? If he breaks [the covenant](#), will he escape?

## Ezekiel 17:16

### the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised

“the land of the king of Babylon who made him King of Judah, the king of Babylon whose oath he despised”

### Translation Words - ULT

- live
- this is the Lord
- the king
- the king
- whose covenant
- of Babylon

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> As I live!—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—he will surely die in the land of the king who made him king, the king whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he broke. He will die in the middle of Babylon.

## Ezekiel 17:17

### General Information:

Yahweh speaking about the king of Jerusalem.

### his mighty army and a great company of men

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize how large and strong Pharaoh's army is. (See: [Doublet](#))

### will not help him

Here the word "him" refers to the king of Judah.

### siege walls

this refers to a tower with ladders that can be placed next to a wall and allow soldiers to get over the wall and into the city.

### to cut off many lives

"to kill many people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to cut off](#)
- [lives](#)

### ULT

**17** Pharaoh with his mighty army and a great company of men will not help him in battle, when ramps are constructed and siege walls are built up [to cut off](#) many [lives](#).



## Ezekiel 17:18

### Behold, he reached out

“He did something even worse than that: he reached out”

### reached out with his hand to make a promise

This refers to taking hold of another person’s hand as a sign of friendship and agreement. Here it represents the covenant oath that he made with the king of Babylon. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the covenant](#)
- [reached out with his hand](#)
- [escape](#)

### ULT

**18** For the king despised his oath by breaking [the covenant](#). Behold, he [reached out with his hand](#) to make a promise and yet he did all these things. He will not [escape](#).

## Ezekiel 17:19

### was it not my oath that he despised and my covenant that he broke?

Yahweh asks this leading question to emphasize the affirmative answer. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "it was my oath that the king of Jerusalem despised and my covenant that he broke." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this:  
As I [live](#), was it not my oath that he despised [and my covenant](#) that he broke? So I will bring his punishment on [his head](#)!

### I will bring his punishment on his head

The idiom "bring ... on his head" means that he will experience this punishment. See how you translated this idiom in [Ezekiel 11:21](#). Alternate translation: "I will cause him to suffer his punishment" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [live](#)
- [and my covenant](#)
- [his head](#)

## Ezekiel 17:20

### I will spread my net out over him, and he will be caught in my hunting net

Yahweh speaks of enabling the enemy army to capture the king as if he were trapping the king in a net. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he will be caught in my hunting net

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will catch him in my hunting net" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to Babylon](#)
- [and execute judgment on him](#)
- [treason that he committed](#)
- [when he betrayed](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> I will spread my net out over him, and he will be caught in my hunting net. Then I will bring him [to Babylon and execute judgment on him](#) there for his [treason that he committed when he betrayed](#) me!

## Ezekiel 17:21

### All of his refugees ... armies will fall by the sword

The word “fall” is a euphemism for “die.” Here the word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people with swords. Alternate translation: “Soldiers will kill all his refugees ... armies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the ones who remain will be scattered in every direction

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the ones who remain alive will flee in every direction” or “the enemy soldiers will scatter in every directions the ones who remain alive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the sword](#)
- [direction](#)
- [Then you will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> All of his refugees in his armies will fall [by the sword](#), and the ones who remain will be scattered in every [direction](#). [Then you will know that](#) I am [Yahweh](#); I have declared this would happen.”

## Ezekiel 17:22

### General Information:

Yahweh resumes the parable that he had told in [Ezekiel 17:1](#) and speaks about Jerusalem as if it were a branch that he plants on the mountains of Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [away from](#)
- [a high](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this, 'So I myself will take away the highest part of the cedar tree, and I will plant it [away from](#) its tender branches. I will break it off, and I myself will plant it on [a high](#) mountain.'

## Ezekiel 17:23

### bear branches

“grow new branches”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Israel
- so it will bear
- a majestic

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> I will plant it on the mountains of Israel so it will bear branches and produce fruit, and it will become a majestic cedar so that every winged bird will live under it. They will nest in the shade of its branches.

## Ezekiel 17:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about Jerusalem as if the city were a branch that he plants on the mountains of Israel and of other nations as if they were other trees. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh

Yahweh speaks of trees as if they are people who can know about him. The trees represent the nations and the people who live in them. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### I bring down the high trees and I raise up the low trees

“I cut down the tall trees and I cause the little trees to grow”

### wither

when a plant dries up and dies.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**24** Then all the trees of the field [will know that I am Yahweh](#). I bring down the high trees and I raise up the low trees. I wither the watered tree and I cause the dried tree to bloom. [I am Yahweh](#), I have declared that this will happen; and I have done it.”

## **Ezekiel 18**

### **Ezekiel 18 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Inherited Guilt**

God does not punish children for the sins of their parents, but only punishes them for their own sins. Despite this, the parents' sins may still have consequences for their children. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))



## Ezekiel 18:1

### The word of Yahweh came to me again

The phrase “the word of Yahweh came” is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people.  
Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke to me again” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me again, saying,

## Ezekiel 18:2

### What do you mean, you who use this proverb... 'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt'?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to remind Ezekiel something he already knows. The question is a rebuke for the people who use the proverb. Alternate translation: "The people in the land of Israel have this proverb... 'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt'." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "What do you mean, you who use this proverb concerning the land of Israel and say, 'Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt'?"

### What do you mean, you who use this proverb

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### land of Israel

This refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are made blunt

This proverb means that children experience the consequences of their parents' actions. (See: [Proverbs](#))

### the children's teeth are made blunt

The idiom "teeth are made blunt" refers to the sour taste in one's mouth that is a result of eating unripe or sour fruit. Alternate translation: "the children get a sour taste in their mouths" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [Fathers](#)
- [eat](#)
- [and the children's](#)

## Ezekiel 18:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)
- [you](#)
- [in Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> As I live—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration—there will certainly no longer be any occasion for [you](#) to use this proverb [in Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 18:4

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### The soul who sins

Here the word “soul” represents the person. Alternate translation: “The person who sins” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the father](#)
- [the life of the son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Behold! Every life belongs to me—the life of [the father](#) as well as [the life of the son](#), they belong to me! The soul who sins is the one who will die!

## Ezekiel 18:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- who is righteous
- justice

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> What can be said about a man **who is righteous** and who carries out **justice** and righteousness—

## Ezekiel 18:6

### he does not eat upon the mountains

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has not participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. Alternate translation: “he does not eat meat sacrificed to idols on the mountains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### lift up his eyes to the idols

The idiom “lift up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. Alternate translation: “worship the idols” or “pray to the idols” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### approached a woman during her monthly period

It is implicit that he has not approached a woman in order to sleep with her. Alternate translation: “approached a woman to sleep with her during her monthly period” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- eat
- of the house of
- Israel
- her monthly period, is he a righteous man

#### ULT

6 if he does not eat upon the mountains or lift up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel, and he does not defile his neighbor's wife, nor approached a woman during her monthly period, is he a righteous man?

## Ezekiel 18:7

### gives back to the debtor what was put up as security for a loan

“returns to the debtor the item that the debtor gave him as security for the loan”

### Translation Words - ULT

- back
- his food

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> What can be said about a man who does not oppress anyone, and he gives back to the debtor what was put up as security for a loan, and he does not commit theft but gives his food to the hungry and he covers the naked with clothes, is he a righteous man?

## Ezekiel 18:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to describe the actions of the righteous man.

### interest

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

### establishes faithfulness between people

This means that he judges fairly the disputes that may arise between people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [What can be said about a man who does](#)
- [that](#)
- [he carries out justice](#)
- [and establishes faithfulness](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [What can be said about a man who does](#) not charge too much interest for the money he loans, and he does not take too much profit for what he sells? It is said of him [that he carries out justice and establishes faithfulness](#) between people.



## Ezekiel 18:9

### that man walks in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path in which the person walks. Alternate translation: “that man obeys my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [If that man walks](#)
- [and keeps](#)
- [my decrees](#)
- [to act faithfully](#)
- [this righteous man](#)
- [He will surely](#)
- [live](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [If that man walks](#) in my statutes [and keeps my decrees to act faithfully](#), then the promise for [this righteous man](#) is this: [He will surely live!](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.

## Ezekiel 18:10

### who sheds blood

This phrase represents murder in any form. Alternate translation: “who murders” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### any one of these things

This refers to the sinful actions that Yahweh had mentioned beginning in [Ezekiel 18:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [blood](#)
- [that were mentioned](#)

#### ULT

**10** But suppose that he has a violent [son](#) who sheds [blood](#) and does any one of these things [that were mentioned](#),<sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 18:11

### eats upon the mountains

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:5](#). Alternate translation: “eats meat sacrificed to idols upon the mountains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**11** (though his father has not done any of these things). He **eats** upon the mountains and he defiles his neighbor's wife, what can be said about him?

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eats](#)

## Ezekiel 18:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about the violent son.

### the poor and needy

The words “poor” and “needy” share similar meanings and emphasize that these are people who cannot help themselves. (See: [Doublet](#))

### he lifts up his eyes to the idols

The idiom “lifts up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:6](#). Alternate translation: “he worships the idols” or “he prays to the idols” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [return](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> This man oppresses the poor and needy, and he seizes and robs, and he does not [return](#) a pledge, and he lifts up his eyes to the idols and commits disgusting actions,

## Ezekiel 18:13

### interest

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “any interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

### should that man live? Surely he will not!

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to emphasize the negative answer. Alternate translation: “he will certainly not live!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### his blood will be on him

Here the word “blood” represents death. For blood to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that death. Alternate translation: “he will be responsible for his own death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [blood](#)
- [detestable things](#)

### ULT

**13** and he lends out money at too high interest and he makes too much profit on what he sells, should that man [live](#)? Surely he will not! He will certainly die and his [blood](#) will be on him because he has done all these [detestable things](#).

## Ezekiel 18:14

### behold!

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- the sins
- his father has committed

### ULT

**14** But behold! Suppose there is a man who bears a son, and his son sees all the sins that his father has committed, and though he sees them, he does not do those things.

## Ezekiel 18:15

### That son does not eat upon the mountains

People often worshiped and offered sacrifices to pagan gods on the mountains. It is implied that this person has not participated in these kinds of pagan rituals. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:6](#). Alternate translation: “That son does not eat meat sacrificed to idols upon the mountains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**15** That son does not [eat](#) upon the mountains, and he does not lift up his eyes to the idols [of the house of Israel](#), and he does not defile his neighbor’s wife, what can be said about him?

### he does not lift up his eyes to the idols

The idiom “lifted up his eyes” refers to looking toward something. With reference to idols, this gesture represents worshiping or praying to idols. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 18:6](#). Alternate translation: “he does not worship the idols” or “he does not pray to the idols” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eat](#)
- [of the house of](#)
- [Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 18:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak about the son who does not commit the same sins as his father.

### Translation Words - ULT

- his food

### ULT

**16** That son does not oppress anyone, or seize a pledge, or take stolen things, but instead gives his food to the hungry and covers up the naked with clothes.



## Ezekiel 18:17

### interest

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

### walks according to my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if his statutes were a path in which the person walks. Alternate translation: “obeys my statutes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [That son](#)
- [too much profit for a loan](#)
- [my decrees](#)
- [and walks according to](#)
- [for his father’s](#)
- [He will surely](#)
- [live](#)

### ULT

**17** [That son](#) does not oppress anyone or take interest that is too high or make [too much profit for a loan](#), but he carries out [my decrees and walks according to](#) my statutes; that son will not die [for his father’s sin](#): [He will surely live!](#)

## Ezekiel 18:18

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks about the son's father who has not obeyed God's law.

### extortion

to take something from someone else by using threats or force.

### robbed his brother

"robbed his fellow Israelite"

### behold, he

"pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: he"

### in his iniquity

"because of his iniquity"

### Translation Words - ULT

- His father
- his brother
- good

### ULT

**18** His father, since he oppressed others by extortion and robbed his brother, and did what is not good among his people—behold, he will die in his iniquity.

## Ezekiel 18:19

### Why does the son not bear the iniquity of his father?

Yahweh speaks of a person being responsible for or guilty of iniquity as if the iniquity were an object that the person carries. Alternate translation: "Why is the son not responsible for the iniquity of his father?" or "Why is the son not guilty of the iniquity of his father?" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the son](#)
- [of his father](#)
- [carries out justice](#)
- [and keeps](#)
- [He will surely](#)
- [live](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But you say, 'Why does [the son](#) not bear the iniquity [of his father](#)?' Because the son [carries out justice](#) and righteousness [and keeps](#) all my statutes; he does them. [He will surely live!](#)

## Ezekiel 18:20

### The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself

For righteousness to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that righteousness. Alternate translation: "The one who acts rightly will be responsible for his own righteousness" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the wickedness of the wicked will be on himself

For wickedness to be on a person is an idiom that means the person is responsible for that wickedness. Alternate translation: "the wicked person will be responsible for his own wickedness" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [A son will](#)
- [bear his son's](#)
- [father's](#)
- [a father will](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The one who sins, he is the one who will die. [A son will](#) not bear his [father's](#) iniquity, and [a father will](#) not bear his [son's](#) iniquity. The righteousness of the one who acts rightly will be on himself, and the wickedness of the wicked will be on himself.

## Ezekiel 18:21

### General Information:

Yahweh speaking of the wicked person who changes and does what is righteous.

### Translation Words - ULT

- turns away
- sins
- justice
- then he will certainly
- live

### ULT

**21** But if the wicked **turns away** from all his **sins** that he has done, and keeps all my statutes and performs **justice** and righteousness, **then he will certainly live** and not die.

## Ezekiel 18:22

### All the transgressions that he has committed will not be called to mind against him

The idiom “call to mind” means to remember. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will not remember all the transgressions that he has committed and will not hold them against him” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### by the righteousness that he practices

“because of the righteous things he has done”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [He will live](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> All the transgressions that he has committed will not be called to mind against him. [He will live](#) by the righteousness that he practices.

## Ezekiel 18:23

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks about his desire for wicked people.

### Do I greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked ... and not in his turning away from his way so that he may live?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question in order to emphasize the opposite. Alternate translation: “I do not greatly rejoice over the death of the wicked ... but I do greatly rejoice if he turns away from his way so that he may live.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### not in his turning away from his way

Yahweh speaks of a person’s lifestyle or behavior as if it were a way on which the person walks. The idiom “to turn away” from something means to stop doing that thing. Alternate translation: “not in his ceasing to live the way that he lives” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rejoice over](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [he may live](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Do I greatly [rejoice over](#) the death of the wicked—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—and not in his turning away from his way so that [he may live](#)?

## Ezekiel 18:24

### General Information:

Yahweh gives an example of a man who turns from righteousness to wickedness.

### then will he live?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the negative answer. Alternate translation: "then he will surely not live." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### All the righteousness that he had done will not be called to mind

The idiom "call to mind" means to remember. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not remember all the righteousness that he had done" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### treason

crime done against a country or against God, by someone who is expected to be loyal

### he will die in the sins

"he will die because of the sins"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But if the righteous person](#)
- [abominations](#)
- [the abominations](#)
- [be called to mind](#)
- [he betrays me in his treason](#)

### ULT

**24** [But if the righteous person](#) turns away from his righteousness and commits iniquity and practices [abominations](#) like all [the abominations](#) that the wicked person does, then will he live? All the righteousness that he had done will not [be called to mind](#) when [he betrays me in his treason](#). So he will die in the sins that he committed.



## Ezekiel 18:25

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But you say, ‘The way [of the Lord](#) is not fair!’ Listen, [house of Israel](#)! Are my ways unfair? Is it not your ways that are unfair?’

### Are my ways unfair?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the negative answer. Alternate translation: “My ways are not unfair.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Is it not your ways that are unfair?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the positive answer. Alternate translation: “It is your ways that are unfair.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 18:26

### dies because of them ... die in the iniquity that he has done

These phrases repeat the thought of a man dying because of his sin to express that it was his fault and the fault of no one else. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When the righteous man](#)
- [and dies because of them](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> [When the righteous man](#) turns away from his righteousness, and commits iniquity [and dies because of them](#), then he will die in the iniquity that he has done.

## Ezekiel 18:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- justice
- life
- will preserve his

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But when a wicked man turns away from his wickedness that he has done and performs justice and righteousness, then he will preserve his life.

## Ezekiel 18:28

### he has seen

Yahweh speaks of the person thinking about and understanding something as if the person were seeing it. Alternate translation: “he has considered” or “he has understood” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and turned away](#)
- [He will surely](#)
- [live](#)

### ULT

**28** For he has seen [and turned away](#) from all the transgressions that he had done. [He will surely live](#), and he will not die.

## Ezekiel 18:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to teach the people of Israel why his way is fair.

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### The way of the Lord is not fair ... How is my way not fair ... It is your ways that are not fair

Actions or behaviors are spoken of as if they were a way or path that a person travels. Alternate translation: “The Lord does not act fairly ... How do I not act fairly ... It is you who do not act fairly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But the house](#)
- [house \(2\)](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel \(2\)](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> [But the house of Israel](#) says, ‘The way [of the Lord](#) is not fair!’ How is my way not fair, [house of Israel](#)? It is your ways that are not fair.

## Ezekiel 18:30

### according to his ways

Yahweh speaks of a person's actions as if the person were walking along a path. Alternate translation: "according to his actions" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### turn away from all your transgressions so that they will not be stumbling blocks of iniquity against you

Yahweh speaks of "transgressions" causing people to rebel against him as if they were blocks over which the people stumble. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### stumbling blocks of iniquity against you

This could mean: (1) the stumbling blocks cause the person to commit more iniquity. Alternate translation: "stumbling blocks that cause you to commit more iniquity" or (2) The word "iniquity" is a metonym for the punishment that a person receives for his iniquity. Alternate translation: "stumbling blocks that lead to your punishment" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [and turn away](#)
- [of iniquity](#)

### ULT

**30** Therefore I will judge each man among you according to his ways, [house of Israel!](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration. [Repent and turn away](#) from all your transgressions so that they will not be stumbling blocks of [iniquity](#) against you.

## Ezekiel 18:31

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.

### Throw away from yourselves all of the transgressions that you have committed

Yahweh speaks of the people determining to stop committing transgressions as if the transgressions were objects, such as clothing, that they removed and threw away. Alternate translation: "Get rid of all of the transgressions that you have committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit

Here the word "heart" represents the will and emotions and the word "spirit" represents the thoughts and disposition. Yahweh speaks of the people having new emotions and thoughts as if they were making a new heart and spirit for themselves. Alternate translation: "get for yourselves new emotions and a new way of thinking" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Why should you die, house of Israel?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to comfort the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "There is no reason for you to die, house of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: "the Israelite people group" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Throw away from yourselves all of the transgressions that you have committed; make for yourselves a new [heart](#) and a new [spirit](#). Why should you die, [house of Israel](#)?

## Ezekiel 18:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [delight](#)
- [of the one who dies](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [so repent](#)
- [and live](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> For I have no [delight](#) in the death of [the one who dies](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration—[so repent and live!](#)"

18:10 <sup>[1]</sup> .



## **Ezekiel 19**

### **Ezekiel 19 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Judah destroyed**

The first king was taken as a captive to Egypt, the next was taken as a captive to Babylon. Now Judah is not prospering.

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

The kings of Judah are compared to man-eating lions. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 19:1

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to the people of Israel. He tells a story where the nation of Israel is a lioness and some of the past kings in the kingdom of Judah are her cubs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

1 “Now you, take up a lamentation against the leaders [of Israel](#)”

### take up a lamentation

This idiom means to sing a lamentation. Alternate translation: “sing a lamentation” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 19:2

### Who was your mother?

Yahweh asks this as a leading question in order to introduce the answer. Alternate translation: "This is who your mother is." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### lioness

a female lion

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> and say, 'Who was your mother? A lioness, she lived with a lion's son; in the midst of young lions, she nurtured her cubs.'

## Ezekiel 19:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and then he
- devoured men

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> She is the one who raised up one of her cubs to become a young lion, a lion who learned to tear apart his victims, and then he devoured men.

## Ezekiel 19:4

### He was caught in their trap

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They caught him in their trap" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the nations](#)
- [the land](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [Then the nations](#) heard about him. He was caught in their trap, and they brought him with hooks to [the land of Egypt](#).

## Ezekiel 19:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [her expectation](#)
- [was now gone](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then she saw that although she had waited for his return, [her expectation was now gone](#), so she took another of her cubs and raised him to become a young lion.

## Ezekiel 19:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- he
- devoured men

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> This young lion roamed about in the midst of lions. He was a young lion and learned to tear his victims; he devoured men.

## Ezekiel 19:7

### He seized their widows

“He seized the widows of the men whom he devoured”

### The land and its fullness were abandoned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People abandoned the land and its fullness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### its fullness

“everything in it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [He seized](#)
- [The land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [He seized](#) their widows and ruined their cities. [The land](#) and its fullness were abandoned because of the sound of his roaring. <sup>[1]</sup>



## Ezekiel 19:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to describe the nation of Israel as a lioness and the kings of the kingdom of Judah as her cubs. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### from the surrounding provinces

“from the provinces surrounding the land of Israel”

### He was caught in their trap

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They caught him in their trap” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [But the nations](#) came against him from the surrounding provinces; they spread their nets over him. He was caught in their trap.

## Ezekiel 19:9

### his voice would no longer be heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people would no longer hear his voice” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- of Israel
- of Babylon. They brought him

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> With hooks they put him in a cage and then they brought him to [the king](#) of Babylon. They brought him to the strongholds so that his voice would no longer be heard on the mountains [of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 19:10

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks of the nation of Israel as though it was the mother of the leaders of Israel. Here he begins to tell a story where she is a prosperous vine. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a vine planted in your blood

Possible meanings are that **blood** represents (1) the violence of the kings of Judah who had murdered people. Alternate translation: "a vine planted by means of violence" or (2) The plentiful wine of Judah which had become a symbol of prosperity. Alternate translation: "a vine planted in your prosperity" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Symbolic Language](#))

### ULT

**10** Your mother was like a vine planted in your blood beside the water. <sup>[2]</sup> it was fruitful and full of branches because of the abundance of water.

## Ezekiel 19:11

### strong branches that were used for rulers' scepters

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "branches strong enough that people used them for rulers' scepters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### its height was seen by the greatness of its foliage

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people could see how tall it was by the greatness of its foliage" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [It](#)
- [used for rulers' scepters](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [It](#) had strong branches that were [used for rulers' scepters](#), and its size was exalted above the branches, and its height was seen by the greatness of its foliage.

## Ezekiel 19:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell a story in which the nation of Israel is a vine. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the vine was uprooted in fury and thrown down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh uprooted the vine in fury and threw it down” or “people uprooted the vine in fury and threw it down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Its strong branches were broken off and withered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh broke off its strong branches and they withered” or “People broke off its strong branches and they withered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in fury](#)
- [and an eastern wind](#)
- [its fruit](#)
- [fire](#)
- [and...consumed them](#)

### ULT

**12** But the vine was uprooted [in fury](#) and thrown down to the earth, [and an eastern wind](#) dried out [its fruit](#). Its strong branches were broken off and withered and [fire consumed them](#).

## Ezekiel 19:13

### in a land of drought and thirst

The very dry land is spoken of as if it were thirsty. Alternate translation: "in a very dry land of drought" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness](#)
- [of drought](#)

### ULT

**13** So now it is planted [in the wilderness](#), in a land [of drought](#) and thirst.

## Ezekiel 19:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell a story in which the nation of Israel is a vine. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### no scepter to rule

The implicit information may be supplied from [Ezekiel 19:11](#). Alternate translation: “no branch strong enough for a ruler’s scepter” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### will be sung as a lamentation

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must sing it as a lamentation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [For fire](#)
- [went out](#)
- [and consumed](#)
- [its fruit](#)
- [no scepter](#)
- [to rule](#)

### ULT

**14** [For fire went out](#) from her large branches [and consumed its fruit](#). There is no strong branch on it, [no scepter to rule.](#) This is a lamentation and will be sung as a lamentation.”

19:7 <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient copies and many modern versions have .

19:10 <sup>[2]</sup>, some ancient copies and many modern versions have .

## **Ezekiel 20**

### **Ezekiel 20 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Rebels cannot ask for help**

The people of Israel have rebelled against God again and again. Now they cannot come to God for help in their troubles.



## Ezekiel 20:1

### It came about

This phrase is used to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

### in the seventh year

The implicit information may be supplied. Alternate translation: “in the seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the tenth day of the fifth month

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### before me

“in front of me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [to inquire of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about in the seventh year, on the tenth day of the fifth month, that elders of Israel came to inquire of Yahweh and sat before me.

## Ezekiel 20:2

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 20:3

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### As I live

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Have you come to inquire of me?

Yahweh asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that the elders should not be inquiring of him. Alternate translation: “You should not come to inquire of me.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the elders](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [live](#)
- [inquired of](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> “[Son of man](#), declare to [the elders of Israel](#) and say to them, ‘[The Lord Yahweh](#) says this: Have you come to inquire of me? As [I live](#), I will not be [inquired of](#) by you!—[this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration](#).’”

## Ezekiel 20:4

### Will you judge them? Will you judge, son of man?

Yahweh asks Ezekiel the same question twice in order to secure Ezekiel's commitment to pronounce the judgement. Alternate translation: "Are you ready to pronounce judgment on them, son of man?" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [know](#)
- [about their fathers](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Will you judge them? Will you judge, [son of man](#)? Let them [know about their fathers'](#) abominations.

## Ezekiel 20:5

### I ... raised my hand to swear an oath

Here “raised my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I ... solemnly swore an oath” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the house of Jacob

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Jacob over many years. Translate “the house of” as in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [my hand to swear an oath](#)
- [when I raised my hand to swear an oath](#)
- [of the house](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [made myself known](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Say to them, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: On the day that I chose [Israel](#) and raised [my hand to swear an oath](#) to the descendants [of the house of Jacob](#), and [made myself known](#) to them in the land of Egypt, [when I raised my hand to swear an oath](#) to them. I said, “[I am Yahweh your God](#)”—

## Ezekiel 20:6

### It was flowing with milk and honey

“It was a land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” Yahweh speaks of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. Alternate translation: “It was land that was excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### the most beautiful ornament among all the lands

The lands in which people live are spoken of as if they are jewelry or other things that are pleasant to look at. Alternate translation: “the most beautiful of all lands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [a land](#)
- [the lands](#)
- [and honey](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> on that day I raised [my hand](#) to swear an oath to them that I would bring them out of the land [of Egypt](#) into [a land](#) that I had carefully selected for them. It was flowing with milk [and honey](#); it was the most beautiful ornament among all [the lands](#).

## Ezekiel 20:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### to them

“to the descendants of the house of Jacob”

### the detestable things from before his eyes

Yahweh speaks of the people worshiping the detestable things as if they had placed those idols in front of their eyes. Alternate translation: “the detestable things that he worships” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the idols of Egypt

“throw away the idols of Egypt”

### Do not make yourselves unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Egypt](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> I said to them, “Let each man throw away the detestable things from before his eyes and the idols [of Egypt](#). Do not make yourselves unclean; I am [Yahweh your God](#).”

## Ezekiel 20:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### they rebelled against me

The word “they” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”

### were unwilling to listen to me

“would not obey me”

### the detestable things from before his eyes

Yahweh speaks of the people worshiping the detestable things as if they had placed those idols in front of their eyes. Alternate translation: “the detestable things that he worshiped” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to pour out my fury upon them

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. Alternate translation: “to act against them in my fury” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they rebelled against me](#)
- [forsake](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [my fury](#)
- [them to satisfy](#)
- [of the land](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But [they rebelled against me](#) and were unwilling to listen to me. Each man did not throw away the detestable things from before his eyes nor [forsake](#) the idols [of Egypt](#), so I determined to pour out [my fury](#) upon [them to satisfy](#) my wrath among them in the middle [of the land of Egypt](#).



## Ezekiel 20:9

### for my name's sake

Here the word "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "for the sake of my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in the eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "in the opinion" or "in the judgment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the nations

The word "nations" is a metonym for the people who live in the nations. Alternate translation: "the people who live in other nations" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they were staying

"they were living"

### I made myself known to them, in their eyes

Here the word "them" refers to the nations. The idiom "in their eyes" refers to being in a position where people can see. Alternate translation: "I revealed myself to them, in their presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

### bringing them

"bringing the people of Israel"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my name's](#)
- [of the nations](#)
- [I made myself known](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I acted for [my name's](#) sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes [of the nations](#) among whom they were staying. [I made myself known](#) to them, in their eyes, by bringing them out of the land [of Egypt](#).

## Ezekiel 20:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### I sent them

The word “them” refers to “the descendants of the house of Jacob.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So I sent them](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [So I sent them](#) out of the land of [Egypt](#) and brought them into the wilderness.

## Ezekiel 20:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- my decrees
- known
- a man

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then I gave them my statutes and made **my decrees known** to them, by which **a man** will live if he obeys them.

## Ezekiel 20:12

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my Sabbaths](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)
- [who makes them holy](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I also gave them [my Sabbaths](#) as a sign between myself and them, for them to know that [I am Yahweh who makes them holy](#).

## Ezekiel 20:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### They did not walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path along which a person walks. Alternate translation: "They did not obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I would pour out my fury upon them

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:8](#). Alternate translation: "I would act against them in my fury" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in order to end them

The euphemism "to end them" refers to killing them. Alternate translation: "in order to kill them" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [in order to end](#)
- [rebelled against](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [walk](#)
- [my decrees](#)
- [a man](#)
- [my Sabbaths](#)
- [my fury](#)

### ULT

**13** [But the house of Israel rebelled against me in the wilderness.](#) They did not [walk](#) in my statutes; instead, they rejected [my decrees](#), by which [a man](#) will live if he obeys them. They greatly profaned [my Sabbaths](#), so I said I would pour out [my fury](#) upon them [in the wilderness in order to end](#) them.

## Ezekiel 20:14

### I acted for my name's sake

Here the word "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). Alternate translation: "I acted for the sake of my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). Alternate translation: "so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in the eyes of the nations

Here the "nations" refer to the people who live in those places. The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). Alternate translation: "in the thoughts of the people in other nations" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### in whose sight I had brought them out of Egypt

"in whose presence I brought my people out of Egypt"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my name's](#)
- [of the nations](#)
- [brought them out of Egypt](#)

#### ULT

14 But I acted for [my name's](#) sake so it would not be profaned in the eyes [of the nations](#), in whose sight I had [brought them out of Egypt](#).

## Ezekiel 20:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### I myself also raised my hand to swear an oath

Here “raised my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:5](#). Alternate translation: “I myself also solemnly swore an oath” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### to them

“to the house of Israel”

### a land flowing with milk and honey

“a land where plenty of milk and honey flowed.” Yahweh speaks of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:6](#). Alternate translation: “a land that was excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### the most beautiful ornament among all the lands

The lands in which people live are spoken of as if they are jewelry or other things that are pleasant to look at. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:6](#). Alternate translation: “the most beautiful of all lands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [land](#)
- [the lands](#)
- [and honey](#)

### ULT

**15** So I myself also raised [my hand](#) to swear an oath to them [in the wilderness](#) not to bring them into the [land](#) that I had been going to give them, a land flowing with milk [and honey](#), which was the most beautiful ornament among all [the lands](#).

## Ezekiel 20:16

### did not walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of obeying his statutes as if they were a path along which a person walks. Alternate translation: "did not obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### their hearts walked after their idols

Here the word "heart" represents the person's thoughts and emotions. Yahweh speaks of being dedicated to idols as if a person's heart walked after them. Alternate translation: "they were dedicated to worshiping their idols" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [walk](#)
- [walked](#)
- [my Sabbaths](#)
- [their hearts](#)

#### ULT

**16** I swore this because they had rejected my decrees and did not [walk](#) in my statutes, and they profaned [my Sabbaths](#), since [their hearts walked](#) after their idols.



## Ezekiel 20:17

### my eye spared them

Here the word "eye" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I spared them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wilderness](#)

#### ULT

**17** But my eye spared them from their destruction and I did not annihilate them in the [wilderness](#).

## Ezekiel 20:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### Do not walk in the statutes of your fathers

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying statutes as if the statutes were paths along with a person walks. Alternate translation: "Do not obey the statutes of your parents" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**18** I said [to their children in the wilderness](#), "Do not [walk](#) in the statutes [of your fathers](#), or [keep](#) their [rules](#), or defile yourselves with their idols.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to their children](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [walk](#)
- [of your fathers](#)
- [keep](#)
- [rules](#)

## Ezekiel 20:19

### walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying statutes as if the statutes were paths along with a person walks. Alternate translation: "Do not obey the statutes of your parents ... obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### keep my decrees and obey them

To "keep" Yahweh's decrees is the same as to "obey them." (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [walk in](#)
- [keep](#)
- [my decrees](#)

#### ULT

**19** I am [Yahweh your God](#), [walk in](#) my statutes; [keep my decrees](#) and obey them.

## Ezekiel 20:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Keep
- my Sabbaths holy
- Yahweh
- your God

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Keep my Sabbaths holy so that they will be a sign between me and you, so that you will know that I am Yahweh your God.”

## Ezekiel 20:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### They did not walk in my statutes

Yahweh speaks of a person obeying his statutes as if the statutes were a path along which the person walks. Alternate translation: "They did not obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to pour out my fury upon them

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury by punishing them as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out on them. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:8](#). Alternate translation: "to act against them in my fury" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [rebelled against](#)
- [walk in](#)
- [keep](#)
- [my decrees](#)
- [a man](#)
- [my Sabbaths](#)
- [my fury](#)
- [them to satisfy](#)
- [the wilderness](#)

### ULT

**21** But their [sons](#) and daughters [rebelled against](#) me. They did not [walk in](#) my statutes or [keep my decrees](#), by which [a man](#) might live if he obeys them. They profaned [my Sabbaths](#), so I determined to pour out [my fury](#) upon [them to satisfy](#) my wrath against them in [the wilderness](#).

## Ezekiel 20:22

### I turned my hand away

Here the word “hand” represents Yahweh and turning his hand away means that he does not do what he was going to do. Alternate translation: “But I did not do that” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

### for my name’s sake

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. Alternate translation: “for the sake of my reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### so it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:9](#). Alternate translation: “so that the people would not profane it in the eyes of the nations” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in the eyes of the nations

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “in the thoughts of the people in other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But I turned](#)
- [my hand away](#)
- [my name’s](#)
- [of the nations](#)
- [brought out](#)

#### ULT

22 [But I turned my hand away](#) and acted for [my name’s](#) sake, so it would not be profaned in the eyes [of the nations](#) in whose sight I had [brought out](#) the Israelites.

## Ezekiel 20:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### I myself also lifted up my hand to swear

Here “lifted up my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I myself also solemnly swore” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### scatter them among the nations and disperse them among the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). Alternate translation: “cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations” (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [among the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> I myself also lifted up [my hand](#) to swear to them [in the wilderness](#), that I would scatter them [among the nations](#) and disperse them among the lands.

## Ezekiel 20:24

### Their eyes were longing after their fathers' idols

Here the word "eyes" represents the person who looks to the idols to worship them. Alternate translation: "They were longing after their fathers' idols" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [my decrees](#)
- [my Sabbaths](#)
- [their fathers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> I decided to do this since they had not obeyed [my decrees](#), and since they had rejected my statutes and profaned [my Sabbaths](#). Their eyes were longing after [their fathers'](#) idols.



## Ezekiel 20:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the elders of Israel.

### **Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live**

The words statutes in this phrase do not refer to God's law. God permitted them to live by human laws and judgments that were not good.

### **gave them**

The word "them" refers to the children of those whom Yahweh brought out of Egypt.

### Translation Words - ULT

- statutes
- and decrees
- good
- live

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then I also gave them statutes that were not good, and decrees by which they could not live.

## Ezekiel 20:26

### they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb

The phrase “firstborn of the womb” refers to the firstborn child of a woman. The phrase “made a sacrifice” can be translated with the verb “sacrifice.” Alternate translation: “they sacrificed every woman’s firstborn child” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [horror](#)
- [so they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> I declared them to be unclean through their gifts—they made a sacrifice of every firstborn of the womb and caused them to pass through the fire—that I might fill them with [horror so they will know](#) that I am [Yahweh!](#)

## Ezekiel 20:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- of man
- the house
- of Israel
- The Lord
- your fathers
- unfaithful

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Therefore, [son of man](#), speak to [the house of Israel](#) and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: In this also [your fathers](#) blasphemed me when they were [unfaithful](#) to me.'

## Ezekiel 20:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- into the land
- and
- their sacrifices
- they also

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> When I brought them into the land that I had sworn to give them, and then whenever they saw any high hill and leafy tree, they offered their sacrifices, they provoked me by their offerings, and there they also burned their fragrant incense and poured out their drink offerings.

## Ezekiel 20:29

### What is this high place where you bring offerings there?

Yahweh asks this question in order to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: "This is not a high place where you are to bring offerings!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then I said to them, "What is this high place where you bring offerings there?" [So the name is called](#) Bamah to this day.'

### the name is called Bamah

The name "Bamah" means "high place," a place for worshiping idols. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people have called that place Bamah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So the name](#)
- [is called](#)

## Ezekiel 20:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### Why do you make yourselves unclean with the ways of your fathers?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: "You should not make yourselves unclean by doing the things that your fathers did." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why do you make yourselves unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### So why do you act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: "You should not act like prostitutes, searching for disgusting things." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### why do you act like prostitutes

Yahweh speaks of the people being unfaithful to him as if they were acting like women who sleep with men to whom they are not married. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [of your fathers](#)
- [So why do you act like prostitutes](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Therefore say to [the house of Israel](#), 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Why do you make yourselves unclean with the ways [of your fathers](#)? [So why do you act like prostitutes](#), searching for disgusting things?'

## Ezekiel 20:31

### So why should I let you seek me, house of Israel?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: "I will not let you come close to me, house of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When you](#)
- [when you cause your sons](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [seek me](#)
- [to seek me](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [When you](#) offer up your gifts—[when you cause your sons](#) to pass through [the fire](#)—to this day you defile yourselves with all your idols. So why should I let you [seek me, house of Israel](#)? As I live—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration—I will not allow you [to seek me](#).

## Ezekiel 20:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- your mind
- in the other lands

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> The thought that is forming in your mind will never happen. You say, "Let us be like the other nations, like the clans in the other lands who worship wood and stone."



## Ezekiel 20:33

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### with a mighty hand, a raised arm

The words “hand” and “arm” both represent power. Alternate translation: “with very great power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

### fury that will be poured out on you

Yahweh speaks of expressing his fury as if the fury were a liquid that he pours out on the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fury that I will pour out on you” or “I will express my fury towards you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)
- [reign over](#)
- [you](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**33** As I live—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—I will certainly [reign over you](#) with a mighty [hand](#), a raised arm, and fury that will be poured out on you.

## Ezekiel 20:34

### among whom you have been scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “among whom I have scattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will bring you out
- other peoples
- the countries
- mighty
- hand

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> I will bring you out from the other peoples and will gather you out of the countries among whom you have been scattered. I will do this with a mighty hand and with fury poured out.

## Ezekiel 20:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- face
- of
- the peoples
- I will judge you

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Then I will bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I will judge you face to face.

## Ezekiel 20:36

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- your fathers
- in the wilderness
- land
- of Egypt
- this is the Lord

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> As I judged [your fathers in the wilderness](#) of the [land of Egypt](#), so also I will judge you—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.

## Ezekiel 20:37

### I will cause you to pass under my rod

This refers to the practice of a shepherd counting and inspecting his sheep as the sheep walked under his staff. This could mean: (1) Yahweh will count his people whom he gathers from the nations to ensure that they are all present. Alternate translation: "I will count you carefully as a shepherd counts his sheep" or (2) Yahweh will

inspect each person as they pass under his staff in order to separate the faithful from the unfaithful. Alternate translation: "I will inspect you carefully as a shepherd inspects his sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**37** I will cause you to [pass](#) under [my rod](#), and I will make you obey the requirements [of the covenant](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [pass](#)
- [my rod](#)
- [of the covenant](#)

## Ezekiel 20:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- out
- Then you will know
- of Israel
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> I will purge from among you the rebels and those who revolt against me. I will send them out from the land where they are staying as foreigners, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

## Ezekiel 20:39

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### to listen to me

“to obey me” or “to pay attention to me”

### profane my holy name

Here the word “name” represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “dishonor me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [should go to](#)
- [Worship them](#)
- [my holy](#)
- [name](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> So to you, [house of Israel](#), [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Each of you [should go to](#) his own idols. [Worship them](#) if you will refuse to listen to me, but you must no longer profane [my holy name](#) with your gifts and your idols.

## Ezekiel 20:40

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### to require your offerings

“to require you to bring your offerings”

### the firstfruits of your tribute

Yahweh speaks of the best things among all that they give to him as if they were “firstfruits.” Alternate translation: “the best of your contributions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your holy things

“the offerings that you set aside to give to me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my holy](#)
- [your holy things](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [house](#)
- [will worship me](#)
- [require](#)
- [offerings](#)
- [also the firstfruits](#)

### ULT

**40** For on [my holy](#) mountain, on the mountain peak [of Israel](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—all of the [house of Israel will worship me](#) there in the land. I will be pleased to [require](#) your [offerings](#) there, and [also the firstfruits](#) of your tribute with all [your holy things](#).



## Ezekiel 20:41

### I will accept you like fragrant incense

Yahweh speaks of his people worshiping him as they should as if the people themselves were the incense offering. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### bring you out from the peoples and gather you out of the countries

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will bring his people back from all of the nations to which he had scattered them. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 20:34](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

### where you have been scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where I have scattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the peoples](#)
- [the countries](#)
- [I will show myself](#)
- [for the nations](#)

#### ULT

41 I will accept you like fragrant incense when I bring you out from [the peoples](#) and gather you out of [the countries](#) where you have been scattered. [I will show myself](#) as holy among you [for the nations](#) to see.

## Ezekiel 20:42

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### I have lifted up my hand to swear

Here “lifted up my hand” is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: “I have solemnly sworn” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Israel
- the land
- my hand
- to your fathers
- know that
- I am Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Then, when I bring you to the land of Israel, to the land that I have lifted up my hand to swear to give to your fathers, you will know that I am Yahweh.

## Ezekiel 20:43

### you will call to mind

This idiom means to remember. Alternate translation: "you will remember" (See: [Idiom](#))

### you defiled yourselves

A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were defiled. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will despise yourselves in your own eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "you will hate yourselves" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your evil deeds](#)

#### ULT

**43** There you will call to mind your conduct and all of your deeds by which you defiled yourselves, and you will despise yourselves in your own eyes for all [your evil deeds](#) that you have done.

## Ezekiel 20:44

### because of my name's sake

Here the word "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. Alternate translation: "because of my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my name's sake](#)
- [your evil](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**44** [So you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#) when I do this to you because of [my name's sake](#), and not because of [your evil](#) deeds, and not because of your corrupt deeds, [house of Israel—this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration."

## Ezekiel 20:45

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 20:46

### set your face toward the southern lands

This is a command to stare at the southern lands as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). Alternate translation: “Stare at the southern lands” or “Stare at the southern lands so that they will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) toward the southern lands, and speak against the south; [prophesy](#) against the forest of the Negev.

### set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” represents staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [prophesy](#)

## Ezekiel 20:47

### The fiery flame will not be quenched

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The fiery flame will not go out” or “No one will be able to quench the fiery flame” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### every face from the south to the north will be burned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the fire will burn every face from the south to the north” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### every face from the south to the north

Here the word “face” represents the person. By mentioning the opposite directions, Yahweh refers to everyone who lives in the north, in the south, and everywhere in between. Alternate translation: “every person who lives in that area” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Negev](#)
- [Yahweh's](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [a fire](#)
- [will devour](#)
- [every face](#)

### ULT

**47** Say to the forest [of the Negev](#), ‘This is [Yahweh's](#) declaration—the [Lord Yahweh](#) says this: See, I will set [a fire](#) among you. It [will devour](#) every fresh tree and every dried tree among you. The fiery flame will not be quenched; [every face](#) from the south to the north will be burned.

## Ezekiel 20:48

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the forest of the Negev.

### all flesh will see

Here the word “flesh” represents all humans. The idiom to “see” means to understand. Alternate translation: “all people will understand” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### it will not be quenched

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “it will not go out” or “no one will quench it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**48** Then all [flesh](#) will see that I am [Yahweh](#) when I light the fire, and it will not be quenched.’”



## Ezekiel 20:49

### Alas

a word that expresses distress or grief

### Is he not a mere teller of parables?

The people use this question to insult Ezekiel and dismiss what he is telling them. Alternate translation: "He is merely telling parables" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> Then I said, "Alas! [Lord](#) Yahweh, they are saying of me, 'Is he not a mere teller of parables?'"

## **Ezekiel 21**

### **Ezekiel 21 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Refusing to learn**

Judah has refused to learn from their punishment, so God is about to destroy the nation in war.

## Ezekiel 21:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 21:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity or “Mortal person” or “Human.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#).

### ULT

2 “**Son of man**, set **your face** toward **Jerusalem**, and speak against **the sanctuaries**; **prophesy** against the land of Israel.

### set your face toward Jerusalem

This is a command to stare at Jerusalem as a symbol of punishing the people there. Alternate translation: “stare at Jerusalem” or “stare at Jerusalem so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set your face toward Jerusalem

Jerusalem was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming it. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#) Alternate translation: “Turn toward Jerusalem and stare” or “stare toward Jerusalem so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the sanctuaries](#)
- [prophesy](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 21:3

### I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you

This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. Alternate translation: "I am opposed to you, and it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath to kill both the righteous and the wicked people among you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the righteous person and the wicked person

"righteous people and wicked people." This refers to multiple people, not just one righteous person and one wicked person.

### sheath

something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it

### cut off

This is a euphemism that means to kill. Alternate translation: "kill" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I will draw](#)
- [my sword](#)
- [and cut off](#)
- [both the righteous person](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Say to the land of Israel, 'Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you! I will draw my sword from its sheath and cut off both the righteous person and the wicked person from you!

## Ezekiel 21:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the land of Israel.

### cut off

This is a euphemism that means to kill. Alternate translation: “kill” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### the righteous ... the wicked

This refers to righteous and wicked people. Alternate translation: “those who are righteous ... those who are wicked” or “the righteous people ... the wicked people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### from you

“among you”

### my sword will go out from its sheath against

This speaks of Yahweh causing these people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. Alternate translation: “it will be as though I pull my sword from its sheath and strike” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### all flesh

Here “flesh” is a metonym for “people.” Alternate translation: “all people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### from the south to the north

This is a merism that refers to the area to the north, and to the south, and all places in between. Alternate translation: “in every direction” or “everywhere” (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to cut off](#)
- [both the righteous](#)
- [my sword](#)
- [will go out](#)
- [flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> In order for me [to cut off both the righteous](#) and the wicked from you, [my sword will go out](#) from its sheath against all [flesh](#) from the south to the north.

## Ezekiel 21:5

### that I, Yahweh, have drawn my sword from its sheath

This speaks of Yahweh causing people to die as if he actually killed them with his own sword. Alternate translation: “it is as though I, Yahweh, have struck people with my sword” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then all [flesh will know](#) that I, [Yahweh](#), [have drawn my sword](#) from its sheath. It will no longer [hold back!](#)

### It will no longer hold back

This speaks of Yahweh not holding back his sword from attacking people as if his sword were a person that was no longer holding itself back from attacking. Alternate translation: “and I will not put it back in its sheath again” or “I will not hold back from attacking people” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [will know](#)
- [have drawn](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my sword](#)
- [hold back](#)

## Ezekiel 21:6

### General Information:

Yahweh is speaking to Ezekiel.

### groan as your loins break

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to groan as a sign to accompany his message. He tells him to groan deeply as if his abdomen was in great pain. “groan deeply as if your loins were in great pain” or “groan deeply with great sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

### In bitterness groan

“With great grief” or “With great sorrow”

### before their eyes

Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [groan](#)
- [groan](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> As for you, [son of man](#), [groan](#) as your loins break! In bitterness [groan](#) before their eyes!



## Ezekiel 21:7

### the news that is coming

This speaks of the “news” as if it were a person that was soon coming to them. Alternate translation: “the news that they will soon hear” (See: [Personification](#))

### for every heart will faint away

This speaks of people becoming afraid, as if their hearts were fainting. Also, this speaks of the people fainting as a result of fear. Alternate translation: “for everyone will become fearful” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### will falter

“will be weak”

### Every spirit will grow faint

This speaks of people becoming fearful in their spirits as if their spirits were about to faint. Alternate translation: “Everyone will be fearful in their inner being” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### every knee will flow like water

“every knee will be as weak as water.” This is a euphemism for people being so afraid that they lose their bladder control and urinate on themselves. Alternate translation: “every leg will be wet with urine” or “everyone will lose control of their urine” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they](#)
- [groaning](#)
- [heart](#)
- [hand](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then it will happen that [they](#) will ask you, ‘For what reason are you [groaning](#)?’ Then you will say, ‘Because of the news that is coming, for every [heart](#) will faint away, and every [hand](#) will falter! Every [spirit](#) will grow faint, and every knee will flow like water. Behold! It is coming and it will be like this!—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.’”

## Ezekiel 21:8

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

8 Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 21:9

### A sword! A sword! It will be sharpened and polished!

This passage describes the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for an enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. This metaphor begins here and continues through [Ezekiel 21:17](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> “Son of man, prophesy and say, ‘The Lord says this: “Say: A sword! A sword! It will be sharpened and polished!”

### It will be sharpened and polished

This phrase indicates that the sword is ready for someone to use it. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is sharp and polished” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### polished

Someone made the sword smooth, shiny, and clean by rubbing it with a rough material.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- The Lord
- A sword
- Say...A sword

## Ezekiel 21:10

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### It will be sharpened ... It will be polished in order to

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will sharpen it ... I will polish it so that it will" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in order to be like lightning

This means that the sword will be so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. Alternate translation: "so that it flashes like lightning" or "so that light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning" (See: [Simile](#))

### Should we rejoice in my son's scepter?

This rhetorical question emphasizes that the people of Israel will not celebrate their king's power, because it cannot resist the "sword." Alternate translation: "The people of Judah will not celebrate about their king's scepter." or "we should not celebrate the power of our king's scepter." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Should we

The word "we" refers to Ezekiel and the people of Israel. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### in my son's scepter

Here Yahweh refers to the king of Judah as his son. The king's scepter represents his rule as king. It is important to maintain the image of the king's scepter here, as the words "every such rod" refer to the scepter. Alternate translation: "in the king's scepter" or "in the power that the king's scepter represents" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### The coming sword hates every such rod

Here the "sword" is personified as coming to attack the people. This speaks of the king not being able to resist the "sword", as if the "sword" were hating the king's scepter. Alternate translation: "the sword will overpower his scepter like that of any other ruler" or "for the king will not be able to resist when the sword is brought against him" (See: [Personification](#))

### such rod

This phrase is used to mock the king's scepter by calling it a "rod." Alternate translation: "such scepter" (See: [Irony](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [my son's](#)
- [scepter](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> It will be sharpened in order to engage in great slaughter! It will be polished in order to be like lightning! Should we rejoice in [my son's scepter](#)? The coming sword hates every such rod!

## Ezekiel 21:11

### the sword will be given to be polished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will polish the sword" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### then to be grasped by the hand

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "then the right person will hold it in his hand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### it is to be given into the hand of the one who kills

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it is ready for the killer to use" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The sword](#)
- [into the hand](#)
- [who kills](#)

#### ULT

11 So the sword will be given to be polished, and then to be grasped by the hand! [The sword](#) is sharpened and it is polished and it is to be given [into the hand](#) of the one [who kills!](#)""

## Ezekiel 21:12

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### that sword has come against my people! It is against all

This speaks of Yahweh's sword attacking his people as if the sword itself were the attacker. Alternate translation: "I will use my sword to kill my people! I will bring it against all" (See: [Personification](#))

### They are thrown against the sword with my people

This speaks of the leaders of Israel being killed with a sword as if they are thrown against the sword. Alternate translation: "They are killed with the sword along with my people" or "The sword will kill them along with my people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### slap your thigh

In Ezekiel's culture, slapping one's thigh was a sign of grief. Some other translation use the gesture of beating one's breast which is a sign of grief in many cultures. Alternate translation: "beat your chests" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [people](#)
- [people](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the sword](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Call for help and lament, [son of man](#)!

For that sword has come against my [people](#)! It is against all the leaders of [Israel](#). They are thrown against [the sword](#) with my [people](#). Therefore, slap your thigh!

## Ezekiel 21:13

### the scepter

Here the king of Judah is represented by his scepter. Alternate translation: “the king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### does not last

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “cannot resist” or “is destroyed” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the scepter](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**13** For there is a trial, but what if [the scepter](#) does not last?—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.

## Ezekiel 21:14

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### hit your two hands together

This means for him to clap his hands as a sign of his grief. Alternate translation: “clap your hands to show that you are very sad” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### even a third time

This is an idiom that means multiple times. Alternate translation: “again and again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))

### A sword for the ones to be slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is a sword for slaughtering people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### It is a sword for the many to be slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is a sword for slaughtering many people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### piercing them everywhere

“attacking them from every side.” Some Bibles translate this as “which enters into their rooms.” This means no matter where they hide, the sword will kill them.

### piercing them

The word “them” refers to the people of Jerusalem and of the land of Israel.

## Translation Words - ULT

- son
- of man
- your two hands together
- for
- a sword
- for the sword
- A sword

## ULT

**14** Now you, [son of man](#), prophesy and hit [your two hands together, for the sword](#) will attack even a third time! [A sword](#) for the ones to be slaughtered! It is [a sword for](#) the many to be slaughtered, piercing them everywhere!



## Ezekiel 21:15

Yahweh continues to describe the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the enemy army that Yahweh will use to attack Jerusalem. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to melt their hearts

This speaks of causing the people to be so terrified that it is as if their hearts were melting. Alternate translation: “to fill them with terror” or “to cause them to be terrified” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to multiply their fallen

Here “fallen” refers to the people killed in battle. This means there will be a greater number of people killed. Alternate translation: “to kill many people among them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### set the sword for slaughter

Here the sword of Yahweh represents men with swords that are to attack Jerusalem. Also, the word “slaughter” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “placed soldiers armed with swords at their gates, ready to slaughter the people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### their gates

The word “their” refers to the people of Jerusalem.

### It is made like lightning

This compares how the sword is well polished and how it reflects light to appear like lightning. Alternate translation: “My sword is polished and flashes like lightning” or “It is polished and reflects light as being like lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

### it is grasped for slaughter

The sword of Yahweh represents the men with swords that are to attack Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “released to slaughter the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [their hearts](#)
- [sword for slaughter](#)
- [at...their gates](#)

## ULT

<sup>15</sup> In order to melt [their hearts](#) and to multiply their fallen, I have set the [sword for slaughter](#) at all [their gates](#). Ah! It is made like lightning, it is grasped for slaughter.

## Ezekiel 21:16

### You, sword! Strike to the right!...Go wherever your face is turned.

Here Yahweh speaks to those who will attack his people as if they could hear him and as if they were a sword that they would use in the attack. He does this to emphasize that he is in control of what is happening during the attack. The phrase “wherever your face is turned” is an idiom for “wherever you desire to go.” Alternate translation: “I tell those attacking with swords, ‘Strike to the right!...Attack in every direction.’” (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> You, sword! Strike to the right! Strike to the left! Go wherever [your face](#) is turned.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your face](#)

## Ezekiel 21:17

### hit my two hands together

“clap my hands.” Here clapping hands is a sign of triumph. Alternate translation: “clap my hands in triumph” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my two hands](#)
- [together](#)
- [will bring](#)
- [my fury](#)
- [I, Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**17** For I will also hit [my two hands together](#), and then I [will bring my fury](#) to rest! [I, Yahweh](#), declare it!”

## Ezekiel 21:18

### The word of Yahweh came to me again

The phrase “the word of Yahweh came” is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 18:1](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke to me again” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**18** The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me again, saying,

## Ezekiel 21:19

### the sword of the king of Babylon

The word “sword” is a metonym for soldiers who kill people using swords. Alternate translation: “the soldiers of the king of Babylon” or “the Babylonian army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a signpost will mark one of them as leading to a city

This is a sign posted where the road divides into two roads. Alternate translation: “a sign will be posted where the road divides into two roads” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**19** “Now you, [son of man](#), assign two roads [for the sword of the king of Babylon](#) to come. The two roads [will start](#) in the same land, [and](#) a signpost will mark one [of them as](#) leading to a city.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [for the sword](#)
- [of the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [will start](#)
- [and](#)
- [of them as](#)

## Ezekiel 21:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Rabbah
- Mark the other to lead
- the army
- to Judah
- the city of Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Mark one road for the Babylonian army to come to Rabbah, the city of the Ammonites. Mark the other to lead the army to Judah and the city of Jerusalem, which is fortified.

## Ezekiel 21:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message.

### at the crossroads, at the junction

Both of these phrases refer to the place where the two roads meet.  
Alternate translation: "at the crossroads" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### He will shake some arrows and ask direction from some idols and he will examine a liver

These are divination practices.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [will stop](#)
- [from](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For [the king of Babylon will stop](#) at the crossroads, at the junction, in order to practice divination. He will shake some arrows and ask direction [from](#) some idols and he will examine a liver.

## Ezekiel 21:22

### In his right hand will be an omen about Jerusalem

This means the he will hold one of the articles of his divination that was read as an omen against Jerusalem in his right hand. Alternate translation: "In his right hand will be an article of divination with an omen against Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### battering rams

A battering ram was a cut tree or large log with a sharpened end or an end covered in metal. It was held by several men who would pound the end against a wall.

### to build a ramp

These were large dirt ramps that the Babylonian soldiers built so that they could get onto the walls of Jerusalem.

### siege towers

These were wooden towers that the Babylonian soldiers built around Jerusalem to enable them to shoot arrows over the walls of Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [about](#)
- [the gates](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> In his right hand will be an omen [about](#) Jerusalem, to set battering rams against it, to open his mouth to order the slaughter, to sound a war cry, to set battering rams against [the gates](#), to build a ramp, and to erect siege towers.



## Ezekiel 21:23

### in the eyes of the ones in Jerusalem

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "in the thoughts of the people in Jerusalem" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [those who had sworn](#)
- [an oath to the Babylonians](#)
- [of violating](#)

### ULT

**23** It will seem to be a useless omen in the eyes of the ones in Jerusalem, [those who had sworn an oath to the Babylonians!](#) But the king will accuse them [of violating](#) their treaty in order to besiege them!

## Ezekiel 21:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Jerusalem.

### Because you have made your guilt to be remembered

“Because you remind me of your iniquity”

### you will be taken in hand

This can be stated in active form. The “enemy’s hand” represents the enemy’s control. Alternate translation: “your enemy will take you in his hand” or “your enemies will capture you and take you into captivity” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [you have made your guilt to be](#)
- [your sins will be](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Because [you have made your guilt to be](#) remembered, making your transgressions to be revealed, so that in all your actions [your sins will be](#) seen—because you have done this you will be taken in hand.

## Ezekiel 21:25

### General Information:

Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Israel.

### whose day of punishment has come

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "whom Yahweh will now punish" (See: [Idiom](#))

### whose time of committing iniquity has ended

"at the time when Yahweh ends iniquity"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [of committing iniquity](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> As for you, profane and wicked ruler [of Israel](#), whose day of punishment has come, and whose time [of committing iniquity](#) has ended,

## Ezekiel 21:26

### the turban

“the king’s turban.” A turban is a beautiful piece of cloth that kings wore wrapped on their heads as a symbol of their authority.

### the lowly ... the exalted

This refers to people with low status and people who are exalted.

Alternate translation: “those who are lowly ... those who are exalted” or “those with low status ... those with high status” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### ULT

**26** [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this to you: Remove the turban [and take off](#) the crown! Things will no longer be the same! Exalt the lowly and humble the exalted!

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [and take off](#)

## Ezekiel 21:27

### It will not be restored

Here the crown represents the position of king. The kingship will not be restored until the Messiah comes. Alternate translation: "There will no longer be a king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the one comes who is assigned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one comes who I assign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [assigned to](#)

#### ULT

27 A ruin! A ruin! I will make it a ruin! It will not be restored until the one comes who is [assigned to](#) execute judgment.

## Ezekiel 21:28

### concerning their coming disgrace

The word “disgrace” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “about how he will disgrace them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### A sword, a sword is drawn! It is sharpened for the slaughter

This refers to the sword of Yahweh which is a metaphor for the soldiers that Yahweh uses to kill a large number of people who have been disobedient to him. Alternate translation: “Swords! My soldiers have drawn their swords! They are sharpened for the slaughter” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### is drawn

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “is out of its sheath”

### It is sharpened for the slaughter in order to devour

This speaks of the soldiers killing people as if they were animals devouring their prey. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is sharp in order to slaughter and to kill people”

### so it will be like lightning

This means that the sword is so shiny that light reflects off of it easily and brightly. Alternate translation: “and light reflects off of it as brightly as lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [the people](#)
- [of man](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [their coming disgrace](#)
- [a sword](#)
- [A sword](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> So you, [son of man](#), prophesy and say, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this to [the people](#) of Ammon concerning [their coming disgrace](#): [A sword, a sword](#) is drawn! It is sharpened for the slaughter in order to devour, so it will be like lightning!’

## Ezekiel 21:29

### empty visions for you ... with lies for you

“empty visions for you Ammonites ... with lies for you Ammonites.”  
The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon. In the original Biblical language, the word “your” is feminine singular and refers to the nation of Ammon. Nations were often thought of as a woman. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### empty visions

This speaks of visions being false and meaningless as if they were empty containers. Alternate translation: “visions that are not true” or “false visions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the wicked

This refers to wicked people. Alternate translation: “those who are wicked” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### who are about to be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who are about to die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### whose day of punishment has come and whose time of iniquity is about to end

The phrases “day of” and “time of” are idioms. Alternate translation: “for the time has come for them to be punished and for their iniquity to end” or “for the time has come for me to punish them and for them to no longer be able to commit wickedness” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of iniquity](#)

#### ULT

**29** While prophets see empty visions for you, while they perform rituals to come up with lies for you, this sword will lie on the necks of the wicked who are about to be killed, whose day of punishment has come and whose time of iniquity is about to end.

## Ezekiel 21:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.

### Return the sword to its sheath

“Later the sword will be put back in its sheath.” This speaks of the soldiers withdrawing from attacking Jerusalem, by saying that Yahweh’s sword is put back in its sheath. Alternate translation: “But later the soldiers will return their swords to their sheaths, for the time of slaughter will be over” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### sheath

This is something that holds and covers a sword when no one is using it. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:3](#).

### In the place of your creation

The word “creation” may be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “In the place that I created you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Return](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [Return](#) the sword to its sheath. In the place of your creation, in the land of your origin, I will judge you!



## Ezekiel 21:31

### I will pour out my indignation on you

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the Babylonians because of his indignation against them as if his indignation were a liquid that he poured out of a container upon them. Alternate translation: "I will punish you because of indignation against you" or "Out of my anger I will punish you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> I will pour out my indignation on you!  
I will fan [the fire](#) of my rage against you  
and put you [into the hand](#) of cruel men,  
craftsmen of destruction!

### I will fan the fire of my rage against you

This compares Yahweh's rage to a consuming fire. Alternate translation: "I will bring my rage upon you like a blazing fire" or "I will punish you in my fierce anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the hand of cruel men

The "hand" of the men refers to their control. Alternate translation: "the control of cruel men" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### craftsmen of destruction

"men who cause great destruction"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the fire](#)
- [into the hand](#)

## Ezekiel 21:32

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Ammon.

### You will become fuel for the fire

“The fire will burn up your bodies”

### Your blood will be in the midst of the land

“Your blood will soak into the ground of your land”

### You will not be remembered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one will remember you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Your blood](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**32** You will become fuel for the fire! [Your blood](#) will be in the midst [of the land](#). You will not be remembered, for I, [Yahweh](#) have declared this!”

## **Ezekiel 22**

### **Ezekiel 22 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Continuous evil**

Murder, idolatry and all sorts of evil have been done in Jerusalem; so God will destroy the city and scatter the people among the nations. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

## Ezekiel 22:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 22:2

### Now you, son of man, will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood?

This rhetorical question functions as a command. AT. "Son of man, go and judge. Go and judge the city of blood." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> "Now you, [son of man](#), will you judge? Will you judge the city of blood? Make her [know](#) all her abominations.

### son of man

"son of a human being" or "son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: "mortal person" or "human"

### the city of blood

The word "blood" is a metonym for murder. Alternate translation: "the city where many people murder their neighbors" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### her

The word "her" refers to Jerusalem. Cities were often thought of as a woman. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) and [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [know](#)

## Ezekiel 22:3

### her ... herself

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem. Cities were often thought of as a woman. This continues through verse 32. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) and [Personification](#))

### This is a city that pours ... her midst

Here the “city” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “The people who live in this city pour ... its midst” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### that pours out blood in her midst

The word “blood” is a metonym for murder. Alternate translation: “where many people murder their neighbors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so that her time may come

This refers to the time when Yahweh will destroy them. Alternate translation: “so that the time of her destruction may come” or “so that the time may come for her to be destroyed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [blood](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You must say, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: This is a city that pours out [blood](#) in her midst so that her time may come; a city that makes idols to make herself unclean.

## Ezekiel 22:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak through Ezekiel to the people of Jerusalem.

### by the blood that you have poured out

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. Alternate translation: "because you murdered innocent people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### unclean

A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You have drawn your days to a close, and the end of your years has come

The images of days being brought to a close and years coming to an end are both idioms representing ending by death or by destruction. By saying that Jerusalem has brought her days to a close, Yahweh implies that Jerusalem would soon be destroyed because of the people's sin. Alternate translation: "Because of these things you have done, you are approaching the end of your time" or "You are bringing your existence to an end" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) )

### have drawn your days to a close

"have brought your days to an end" or "have ended your life"

### I will make you a reproach to the nations and a laughingstock to all the lands

This can be reworded so that the nouns "reproach" and "laughingstock" are expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: "I will make the nations reproach you and all the lands ridicule you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### a reproach

someone whom people disapprove of or rebuke

### a laughingstock

a person whom people ridicule or mock

### to all the lands

This generalization refers to the places who are familiar with Jerusalem and represents the people who live in these places. Alternate translation: "of the people of every nearby land" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You have become guilty by the blood that you have poured out, and you have become unclean by the idols that you have made. You have drawn your days to a close, and the end of your years has come. Therefore I will make you a [reproach](#) to the [nations](#) and a laughingstock to all [the lands](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- a reproach
- nations
- the lands



## Ezekiel 22:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Both those who are near and those who are far away from you will mock you—you unclean city—with the reputation known everywhere as being full of confusion.

## Ezekiel 22:6

### General Information:

Yahweh speaking about the ruler of Israel in Jerusalem.

### Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### each one by his own power, have come

“have each used their authority to come to you.”

### come to you

Yahweh speaks to the city of Jerusalem itself as if it were a woman who could hear him speak. Alternate translation: “come to Jerusalem” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

### to pour out blood

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. Alternate translation: “to murder people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [blood](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Behold! The rulers [of Israel](#), each one by his own power, have come to you to pour out [blood](#).

## Ezekiel 22:7

### They have dishonored fathers

“The rules of Israel have dishonored their fathers”

### within you ... in your midst ... within you

Yahweh speaks to the city of Jerusalem itself as if it were a woman who could hear him speak. Alternate translation: “within Jerusalem ... in the midst of Jerusalem ... within Jerusalem.” The words “you” and “your” refer to Jerusalem.

### performed oppression on

“oppressed”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fathers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They have dishonored [fathers](#) and mothers within you, and they have performed oppression on the foreigners in your midst. They have mistreated the orphans and the widows within you.

## Ezekiel 22:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- my holy things
- my Sabbaths

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You have despised my holy things and have profaned my Sabbaths.

## Ezekiel 22:9

### they eat on the mountains

Here “the mountains” refer to the altars on the mountains that are dedicated to idols. They men eat meat that has been sacrificed to the idols in order to be have the blessing of false gods. Alternate translation: “they eat the meat that has been sacrificed to idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### perform wickedness in your midst

“do evil things among you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- they eat

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Slanderous men have come within you in order to pour out blood, and they eat on the mountains. They perform wickedness in your midst.

## Ezekiel 22:10

### General Information:

God continues to speak through Ezekiel about the terrible things that the people of Jerusalem have done. He speaks to the people of Jerusalem as if they were the city itself, and of the city of Jerusalem as if it were a woman. The word “you” is always feminine singular. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**10** Within you men uncover [the nakedness of their father](#). Within you they have violated unclean women during their menstrual period.

### Within you

In all instances of this phrase, the writer refers to the people of Jerusalem as if they were the city itself, and of the city of Jerusalem as if it were a woman. Alternate translation: “within this city” or “among you people of Jerusalem” (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### men uncover the nakedness of their father

This means that a son sleeps with his father’s wife. Alternate translation: “there are men who sleep with their father’s wife” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### they have violated unclean women during their menstrual period

These are all ways to express that the men have had slept with women they should not have and how sinful their actions are. Alternate translation: “They have raped unclean women during their menstrual period” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. Women were considered to be unclean during their menstrual period. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the nakedness](#)
- [of their father](#)

## Ezekiel 22:11

**commit abominations with their neighbors' wives ... make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean ... abuse their own sisters**

These are all ways to express that the men have had slept with women they should not have and how sinful their actions are. Alternate translation: "commit abominations by sleeping with their neighbors' wives ... make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean by sleeping with them ... rape their own sisters" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of their own fathers](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Men who commit abominations with their neighbors' wives, and men who make their own daughters-in-law shamefully unclean; men who abuse their own sisters—daughters [of their own fathers](#)—all these are done within you.

## Ezekiel 22:12

### to pour out blood

This speaks of murdering people as pouring out blood. Alternate translation: “to murder people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### interest

This word refers to the money paid by a person to use borrowed money. However, some modern versions interpret “interest” in this passage as “too much interest.”

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> These men take bribes within you in order to pour out **blood** and you have taken interest and gained too much profit, and you have damaged your neighbors through oppression, and you have forgotten me—**this is the Lord** Yahweh’s declaration.

### you have damaged your neighbors through oppression

This means that they have oppressed their neighbors by charging them too much interest. Alternate translation: “you have oppressed your neighbors and made them poor” or “you have made your neighbors poor by charging too much interest” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### you have forgotten me

Refusing to obey Yahweh is like forgetting that he exists. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)



## Ezekiel 22:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Jerusalem by speaking directly to the city of Jerusalem as if it were a woman. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### With my hand I have struck

“I have shaken my fist against” or “I have clapped my hands against.” This is a symbolic action that shows anger and disapproval. Alternate translation: “I have shown my anger and disapproval against” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the bloodshed that is done in the midst of you

“the murder that people commit in you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [With my hand](#)
- [bloodshed](#)

### ULT

**13** See! [With my hand](#) I have struck the dishonest gain that you have made, and the [bloodshed](#) that is done in the midst of you.

## Ezekiel 22:14

### Will your heart stand, will your hands be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you?

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question to emphasize how hurt they will be when he punishes them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your heart will not stand and your hands will not be strong on the days when I myself will deal with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Will [your heart](#) stand, [will your hands be strong](#) on the days when I myself will deal with you? [I, Yahweh](#), am declaring this, and I will do it.

### Will your heart stand

Here the whole person is referred to by his "heart" to emphasize his emotions and will. Here the idea of "standing" is an idiom that means to be courageous. Alternate translation: "Will you stand" or "Will you be courageous" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

### will your hands be strong

Here the whole person is referred to by his "hands." Alternate translation: "will you be strong" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your heart](#)
- [will your hands](#)
- [be strong](#)
- [I, Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 22:15

### So I will scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). Alternate translation: "So I will cause them to separate from each other and live in different nations"(See: [Parallelism](#))

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> So I will scatter you [among the nations](#) and disperse you through the lands. In this way, I will purge your uncleanness from you.

### purge

remove something unwanted

### uncleanness

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the nations

Here the "nations" refer to the people who live in those places. Alternate translation: "the people in other nations" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [among the nations](#)

## Ezekiel 22:16

### So you will become unclean in the eyes of the nations

Here the “nations” refer to the people who live in those places. The “eyes” represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “So the nations will consider you unclean” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will become unclean](#)
- [of the nations](#)
- [Then you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> So you [will become unclean](#) in the eyes [of the nations](#). [Then you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).<sup>” [1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 22:17

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**17** Next the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 22:18

### the house of Israel has

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites have” or “the Israelite people group has” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### has become dross to me

Dross is the impurities that are left over after silver or gold has been purified in a furnace. Here Yahweh speaks of the people being worthless to him as if they were dross. Alternate translation: “has become as worthless to me as dross” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### All of them are the leftovers of bronze and tin ... like the dross of silver in your furnace

Yahweh continues to speak about how the people have become worthless to him as if they were dross. Alternate translation: “All of them are as worthless as the leftover of bronze and tin, and iron and lead that remain after you melt silver in the furnace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the leftovers of bronze](#)
- [of silver](#)

#### ULT

**18** “[Son of man](#), [the house of Israel](#) has become dross to me. All of them are [the leftovers of bronze](#) and tin, and iron and lead in the midst of you. They will be like the dross [of silver](#) in your furnace.

## Ezekiel 22:19

### behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- of Jerusalem

### ULT

**19** Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, 'Because all of you have become like dross, therefore, behold! I am about to gather you into the midst [of Jerusalem](#).

## Ezekiel 22:20

### General Information:

God continues to describe his punishment of the people of Israel in Jerusalem as if they were metals that he was melting and purifying in a furnace. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will gather you in my anger and my wrath

The phrases with “anger” and “wrath” are used together to emphasize that he was extremely angry. Alternate translation: “Because of my great anger and wrath, I will gather you” or “I will be furiously angry with you, and I will gather you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

**20** As men gather [silver](#), bronze, iron, lead and tin and put it inside a furnace to melt it, and they blow [the fire](#) on it in order to melt it, so I will gather you in my anger and my wrath, and I will put you there and melt you.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [the fire](#)



## Ezekiel 22:21

### I will gather you and blow on you the fire of my wrath

This is the image of a person gathering the metals in the furnace and blowing the fire to make it hotter. Yahweh speaks of the greatness of his wrath as if it were a fire that he was blowing to make it hotter.

Alternate translation: "I will gather you, and my wrath will be like a fire that I will blow on you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> I will gather you and blow on you [the fire](#) of my wrath, and you will be melted in the midst of it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the fire](#)

## Ezekiel 22:22

### you will be melted in it

The word "it" refers to Jerusalem.

### have poured out my wrath on you

God speaks of punishing the people as if his wrath were a liquid that he would pour on them. Alternate translation: "have punished you in my anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> As [silver](#) is melted in a furnace, you will be melted in it, [and you will know that](#) I, [Yahweh](#), have poured out [my wrath](#) on you!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [and you will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my wrath](#)

## Ezekiel 22:23

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Jerusalem.

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 22:24

### You are a land that has not been cleansed

This can be stated in active form. The word “land” here refers to Israel and to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “You are a land and a people that is unclean” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> “[Son of man](#), say to her, ‘You are a [land](#) that has not [been cleansed](#). There is no rain on the day of wrath!’”

### not been cleansed

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### There is no rain on the day of wrath

Rain is used as an example of God’s blessing. Alternate translation: “There is no blessing on the day of wrath” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [a land](#)
- [been cleansed](#)

## Ezekiel 22:25

### There is a conspiracy of her prophets in her midst

The word “her” refers to Israel. Alternate translation: “The prophets within Israel plot conspiracies”

### conspiracy

a secret plan made by two or more people to do something harmful or illegal

### like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. They consume life and take precious wealth

This compares the prophets of Israel to lions who attack and kill their victims. Alternate translation: “They kill people for they are like roaring lions who attack and kill their prey. They take peoples’ precious wealth” (See: [Simile](#))

### they make many widows within her

The word “her” refers to Israel. They “make many widows” by killing married men. Alternate translation: “they make many women into widows by killing their husbands” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of her prophets](#)
- [They consume](#)
- [life](#)
- [precious](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> There is a conspiracy [of her prophets](#) in her midst, like a roaring lion tearing apart a victim. [They consume life](#) and take [precious](#) wealth; they make many widows within her! <sup>[2]</sup>

## Ezekiel 22:26

### do violence to my law

“disobey my laws”

### the unclean and the clean

This refers to unclean and clean things. Something that God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. Alternate translation: “things that are unclean and things that are clean” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Her priests do violence to my law, and they profane my holy things. They do not distinguish between holy things and profane things, and do not teach the difference between the unclean and the clean. They hide their eyes from my Sabbaths so that I am profaned in their midst.

### They hide their eyes from my Sabbaths

This speaks of the people ignoring and not observing the Sabbath and if they were hiding their eyes from the Sabbath” Alternate translation: “They ignore my Sabbaths” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so that I am profaned in their midst

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and profane me among themselves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Her priests
- to my law
- and they profane
- I am profaned
- my holy things
- holy things
- teach the difference
- my Sabbaths

## Ezekiel 22:27

### her

This pronoun refers to Jerusalem.

### Her princes within her are like wolves tearing apart their victims

This compares Israel's princes to wolves who attack and kill their victims. (See: [Simile](#))

### They pour out blood and destroy life

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the violence that the princes practice. Alternate translation: "They murder people" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Her princes](#)
- [blood](#)
- [and destroy](#)
- [life](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [Her princes](#) within her are like wolves tearing apart their victims. They pour out [blood and destroy life](#), to make a profit dishonestly.

## Ezekiel 22:28

### Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash

This speaks of the prophets trying to hide these sins as if they were something that they could paint over with whitewash. Alternate translation: "It is like her prophets have painted over their sins with whitewash" or "Their prophets try to hide these evil things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### whitewash

This is a solution that is painted on things to make them white that is similar to white paint.

### predict falsehoods to them

"predict lies for the princes." The word "them" refers to the princes.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [when Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Her prophets have painted them over with whitewash; they see false visions and predict falsehoods to them. They say "The Lord Yahweh says this" when Yahweh has not spoken.



## Ezekiel 22:29

### have oppressed ... and plundered

The understood words may be supplied. Alternate translation: “have oppressed people ... and plundered others” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### extortion

This refers to when someone threatens or hurts another person in order to make them give him money.

### the poor and needy

This refers to poor and needy people. Alternate translation: “those who are poor and needy” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The people](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [justice](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> [The people of the land](#) have oppressed through extortion and plundered through robbery, and they mistreat the poor and needy, and oppress the foreigner without [justice](#).

## Ezekiel 22:30

### General Information:

Yahweh compares the leaders of Jerusalem to a wall and himself to an invading army. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a man from them who would build up a wall

This speaks of a man who would take responsibility to pray for the people and to lead them to repentance as if that man were to build a wall to protect the people from Yahweh. Alternate translation: "a man from among them who would act like he built a wall" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### stand before me in its breach

Its "breach" refers to a gap in the wall. This speaks of the man defending the people before Yahweh as if he were a warrior standing in the breach to defend the city. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for the land so I would not destroy it

Here the "land" represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "for the people so that I would not destroy them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So I searched](#)
- [for the land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [So I searched](#) for a man from them who would build up a wall and who would stand before me in its breach [for the land](#) so I would not destroy it, but I found no one.

## Ezekiel 22:31

### pour out my indignation upon them

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as if his indignation were a liquid that he poured out on them. Alternate translation: “I will punish the people because of my indignation for them” or “I will punish the people because of my anger against them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### indignation

anger of a person who has suffered injustice

### I will finish them with the fire of my indignation

This speaks of how harsh Yahweh’s judgement is by comparing it to a fire. Here destroying the people is referred to as “finishing” them. Alternate translation: “I will destroy them with my wrath which is as intense as a blazing fire” or “I will destroy them with my wrath” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will finish them](#)
- [with the fire](#)
- [on their own heads](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**31** So I will pour out my indignation upon them. [I will finish them with the fire](#) of my indignation and set their way [on their own heads—this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

22:16 <sup>[1]</sup> , some ancient copies have .

22:25 <sup>[2]</sup> , some ancient copies have .

## **Ezekiel 23**

### **Ezekiel 23 General Notes**

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Israel and Judah have been unfaithful to God by worshiping idols. They are compared to two unfaithful wives who have repeatedly committed adultery. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 23:1

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks of how the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria have been unfaithful to him in a metaphor in which he refers to them as two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word of [Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 23:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), there were two women, daughters of the same mother.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)

## Ezekiel 23:3

### Their breasts were squeezed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Men squeezed their breasts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### their virgin nipples were fondled there

This phrase means basically the same thing as the previous phrase and emphasizes the immoral behavior of the two young women. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there men fondled their virgin nipples" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### fondled

to be touched lovingly or softly

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in Egypt](#)
- [They acted as prostitutes](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They acted as prostitutes [in Egypt](#) in the time of their youth. [They acted as prostitutes](#) there. Their breasts were squeezed and their virgin nipples were fondled there.

## Ezekiel 23:4

### they became mine

This means that he married them and they became his wives. Alternate translation: “they became my wives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Their names mean this: Oholah means Samaria, and Oholibah means Jerusalem

“Oholah represents Samaria, and Oholibah represents Jerusalem.” In this metaphor Samaria is spoken of as if it were Oholah and Jerusalem is spoken of as if it were Oholibah. This speaks of how these cities were unfaithful to Yahweh as if they were unfaithful wives. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Oholah

This is the name of a woman that means “her tent.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Oholibah

This is the name of a woman that means “my tent is in her.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Their names were Oholah—the older sister—and Oholibah—her younger sister. Then they became mine and bore [sons](#) and daughters. Their names mean this: Oholah means [Samaria](#), and Oholibah means [Jerusalem](#).



## Ezekiel 23:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### when she was mine

This refers to when she was his wife. Alternate translation: “while she was still my wife” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### who were dominant

“who ruled over her”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [her lovers](#)
- [Assyrians](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But Oholah acted as a prostitute even when she was mine; she lusted for [her lovers](#), for the [Assyrians](#) who were dominant,

## Ezekiel 23:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the governor
- horses

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> the governor who wore blue, and for his officials, who were strong and handsome, all of them men riding on horses.

## Ezekiel 23:7

### all the best of Assyria's men

This identifies who the word “them” refers to.

### she made herself unclean with everyone she lusted for—and with all their idols

This implies that she slept with all of these men and worshiped the idols they worshiped. Alternate translation: “she made herself unclean by sleeping with everyone she lusted for and by worshiping all their idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria's](#)
- [men](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So she gave herself as a prostitute to them, to all the best of [Assyria's men](#), and she made herself unclean with everyone she lusted for—and with all their idols.

## Ezekiel 23:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **poured out their lust upon her**

This speaks of lust as if it were a large amount of water that they were pouring out on her. Alternate translation: "to act lustfully toward her" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [left](#)
- [in Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For she had not [left](#) her prostitute behavior behind [in Egypt](#), when they had lain with her when she had been a young girl, when they caressed her virgin bosom and poured out their lust upon her.

## Ezekiel 23:9

### I gave her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians

The word “hand” refers to power or control. The two phrases have the same meaning and the second phrase explains that “her lovers” were “the Assyrians.” Alternate translation: “I gave her over to her lovers, the Assyrians” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [into the hand](#)
- [into the hand](#)
- [of her lovers](#)
- [of the Assyrians](#)
- [of the Assyrians](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore I gave her [into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians](#) for whom she lusted.

## Ezekiel 23:10

### they executed judgment on her

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “they talked about her disgrace” or “she had a bad reputation among them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [uncovered](#)
- [her sons](#)
- [killed](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [notorious among](#)

### ULT

**10** They [uncovered](#) her nakedness, took [her sons](#) and daughters, [killed](#) her with [the sword](#), and she became [notorious among](#) other women, so they executed judgment on her.

## Ezekiel 23:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Oholibah

This is the name of a woman that means “my tent is in her.” See how you translated this name in [Ezekiel 23:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

**11** Her sister Oholibah saw this, but she lusted even more passionately and acted like a prostitute even more than her sister.

## Ezekiel 23:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- for the Assyrians
- the governors
- who
- horses

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> She lusted for the Assyrians, the governors and the dominating officials who dressed impressively, who were men riding horses. All of them were strong, handsome men.



## Ezekiel 23:13

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### It was the same for both sisters

This refers to how they had both made themselves unclean. Alternate translation: “Both sisters became unclean through their acts of prostitution” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**13** I saw that she had made herself unclean. It was the same for both sisters.

## Ezekiel 23:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Chaldeans](#)

### ULT

**14** Then she increased her prostitution even more. She saw men carved on walls, figures of [Chaldeans](#) painted in red,

## Ezekiel 23:15

### turbans

hats made out of long cloth and wrapped around the top of a man's head

### had the appearance of officers of chariot troops, the likeness of sons

The abstract nouns "likeness" and "appearance" can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: "appeared the way officers of chariot troops do, and they looked like sons" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### chariot troops

soldiers who drive chariots and who run ahead of and beside them

### sons of Babylonia

"Babylonians"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on their heads](#)
- [of sons](#)
- [of Babylonia](#)
- [land](#)
- [is Chaldea](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> wearing belts around their waists, with flowing turbans [on their heads](#). All of them had the appearance of officers of chariot troops, the likeness [of sons of Babylonia](#), whose native [land is Chaldea](#).

## Ezekiel 23:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [messengers](#)
- [in Chaldea](#)

### ULT

**16** As soon as her eyes saw them, she lusted for them, so she sent out [messengers](#) to them [in Chaldea](#).

## Ezekiel 23:17

### her bed of lust

This refers to her bed where she slept with men and acted lustfully. Alternate translation: "her bed where she acted lustfully" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### they made her unclean with their promiscuousness

This means that they slept with the woman. Alternate translation: "they slept with her and made her unclean" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so she turned herself away from them

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "so she rejected them" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the Babylonians](#)
- [was](#)
- [from them in disgust](#)

### ULT

17 [Then the Babylonians](#) came to her and to her bed of lust, and they made her unclean with their promiscuousness. By what she had done she [was](#) made unclean, so she turned herself away [from them in disgust](#).

## Ezekiel 23:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [her](#)
- [from](#)

### ULT

**18** When she displayed her acts of prostitution and uncovered her nakedness, I turned away from [her](#), just as I had turned away in disgust [from](#) her sister.

## Ezekiel 23:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a prostitute
- of Egypt

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then she increased her prostitution as she remembered the days of her youth, when she was a prostitute in the land of Egypt.

## Ezekiel 23:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### whose private parts were like those of donkeys

This compares the size of the mens' private parts to those of a donkey to show how wicked Oholibah's desires were. This is an exaggeration as they could not be as large as those of a donkey. Alternate translation: "whose private parts were very long, like those of a donkey" (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### whose reproductive emissions were like those of horses

This compares the volume of the mens' emissions to those of a horse to show how wicked Oholibah's desires were. This is an exaggeration as they could not be like those of a horse. Alternate translation: "whose reproductive emissions were huge, like those of a horse" (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [private parts were like those of](#)
- [and whose reproductive](#)
- [donkeys](#)
- [horses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So she lusted for her lovers, whose [private parts were like those of donkeys](#), and whose reproductive emissions were like those of [horses](#).



## Ezekiel 23:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- This is how
- when the Egyptians

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> This is how you committed shameful acts of your youth, when the Egyptians fondled your nipples and squeezed your young breasts.

## Ezekiel 23:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Behold!

“Listen!” The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### I will bring them against you from every side

“I will cause them to attack you from all directions”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [I will turn](#)
- [lovers](#)
- [from](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Therefore, Oholibah, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! [I will turn](#) your [lovers](#) against you. Those [from](#) whom you turned away, I will bring them against you from every side:’

## Ezekiel 23:23

### the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the Assyrians with them

This does not refer to all of the people who live in these places, but rather to soldiers from there. Alternate translation: “soldiers from Babylon and all of Chaldea, Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the soldiers of Assyria with them” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Pekod, Shoa, and Koa

These are the names places in Babylonia. These places represent the soldiers from these places. Alternate translation: “those from Pekod, Shoa, and Koa” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### strong, handsome men, governors and commanders ... all of them riding on horses

This is the description of the men of Assyria that Oholah had slept with who are now turning against her. This is similar to the description given in [Ezekiel 23:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Babylonians](#)
- [and all](#)
- [the Assyrians](#)
- [the Chaldeans](#)
- [the Assyrians](#)
- [governors](#)
- [and men of reputation](#)
- [horses](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> [the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans](#), Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all [the Assyrians](#) with them, strong, handsome men, [governors](#) and commanders, all of them are officers [and men of reputation](#), all of them riding on [horses](#).

## Ezekiel 23:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### will come against you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “will attack you” (See: [Idiom](#))

### with weapons

The Hebrew word translated here as “weapons” is rare. Many modern versions translate it in this way, but some versions leave this phrase out.

### They will set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you all around

These defensive items are used to refer to various types of soldiers. Alternate translation: “Soldiers will attack you on all sides carrying large shields, small shields, and wearing helmets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [punish you](#)
- [with their actions](#)

### ULT

**24** They will come against you with weapons, and with chariots and wagons, and with a great crowd of [people](#). They will set large shields, small shields, and helmets against you all around. I will give them the opportunity to [punish you](#), and they will punish you [with their actions](#).

## Ezekiel 23:25

### For I will set my jealous anger on you, and they will deal with you in fury

Here Yahweh speaks of causing the armies to attack them because he is angry with them as if his anger were something that he was placing upon them. Alternate translation: "Because I am very jealous for you, I will cause them to act furiously towards you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### They will cut off your noses and your ears

This describes the punishment in Babylon for married women who slept with men that are not their husbands. Alternate translation: "They will punish you as an adulteress, by cutting off your noses and your ears" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### your survivors will fall by the sword

The word "fall" is a euphemism for "die." The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who kill with swords. Alternate translation: "men will kill your survivors with their swords" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### your survivors will be devoured by fire

This speaks of the survivors being burned by fire as if the fire were an animal attacking and eating them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "your survivors will be burned by fire" or "fire will burn your survivors" (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [they will deal with you in fury](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [your sons](#)
- [will be devoured](#)
- [by fire](#)

## ULT

<sup>25</sup> For I will set my jealous anger on you, and [they will deal with you in fury](#). They will cut off your noses and your ears, and your survivors will fall [by the sword](#). They will take away [your sons](#) and your daughters, and your survivors [will be devoured by fire](#).

## Ezekiel 23:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They will strip you of your clothes and take away all of your jewelry.

## Ezekiel 23:27

### from the land of Egypt

This refers to her prostitution as beginning in Egypt. Alternate translation: “which you began in the land of Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You will not lift up your eyes toward them with longing

This is a way to refer to a person turning their head to look at something. Here looking represents desire. Alternate translation: “You will not look toward them with longing” or “You will not desire these things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will think of Egypt no longer

Here “Egypt” represents the shameful things that she did in Egypt. Alternate translation: “you will think about the things you did in Egypt no longer” or “you will not think about what you did in Egypt any more” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Egypt](#)

#### ULT

27 So I will remove your shameful behavior from you and your acts of prostitution from the land of Egypt. You will not lift up your eyes toward them with longing, and you will think of Egypt no longer.’

## Ezekiel 23:28

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Behold

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

### give you into the hand of the ones you hate ... into the hand of the ones from whom you had turned away

These two phrases have the same meaning. It means that they will be captured by the men they used to prostitute themselves to. Alternate translation: “allow you to be captured by those you hate and had turned away from” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### into the hand

Here the word “hand” refers to control. Alternate translation: “into the control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [into the hand](#)
- [back into the hand](#)
- [from](#)

### ULT

**28** For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! I will give you [into the hand](#) of the ones you hate, [back into the hand](#) of the ones [from](#) whom you had turned away.’



## Ezekiel 23:29

### naked and bare

These two words mean the same thing and emphasize that she will be completely uncovered. (See: [Doublet](#))

### your nakedness will be uncovered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will reveal your nakedness" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> They will deal with you hatefully; they will take all your possessions and abandon you naked and bare, and your nakedness will be uncovered just as when you engaged in promiscuity and prostitutions.

## Ezekiel 23:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### These things will be done to you in your acting

“These things will be done to you because you have acted.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “These things will happen to you because you have acted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### acting like a prostitute, lusting after nations

Ezekiel speaks of Oholibah, who represents Judah ([Ezekiel 23:4](#)), as if she were a prostitute sleeping with the men of many nations for money. He wants the people of Judah to understand that Yahweh to punish them because they were worshiping the idols of other nations so they could get those nations' wealth and power. Alternate translation: “acting like a prostitute, lusting after men of other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### became unclean with their idols

She became unclean by worshiping the idols. Alternate translation: “became unclean by worshiping their idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in your acting like a prostitute](#)
- [nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> These things will be done to you [in your acting like a prostitute](#), lusting after [nations](#) by which you became unclean with their idols.

## Ezekiel 23:31

### so I will put her cup of punishment into your hand

This refers to Oholibah's punishment that she will receive as if it were a cup of wine. Alternate translation: "so I will cause you to be punished in the same way as your sister" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You have walked in](#)
- [into your hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [You have walked in](#) the way of your sister, so I will put her cup of punishment [into your hand.](#)'

## Ezekiel 23:32

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. This metaphor continues through [Ezekiel 23:34](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You will drink your sister's cup

Here Yahweh speaks of punishment as if it were a cup of wine the woman drank. Alternate translation: "You will drink the same cup of punishment as your sister" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### your sister's cup that is

Here the "cup" represents what is in the cup. Alternate translation: "from your sister's cup that is" or "all that is in your sister's cup, and her cup is" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a laughingstock ... a subject for derision

Both of these phrases refer to a person who is laughed at and criticized because of their foolish behavior. Derision is mocking or ridiculing something or someone. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### this cup contains a great amount

This sentence does not say what is in the cup because it is understood by reading [Ezekiel 23:31](#). Alternate translation: "this cup contains a great amount of punishment" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this, 'You will drink your sister's cup that is deep and large. You will become a laughingstock and a subject for derision—this cup contains a great amount.'

## Ezekiel 23:33

### General Information:

Yahweh continues his metaphor in which he speaks of the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### You will be filled with drunkenness and sorrow

This speaks of being very drunk and full of sorrow as if drunkenness and sorrow were things that filled her body. Alternate translation: "You will become very drunk and very sad" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the cup of horror and devastation

"the cup that causes horror and devastation." The words "horror" and "devastation" share similar meanings here and emphasize how terrible her punishment will be. Alternate translation: "for what is in that cup causes horror and devastation" (See: [Doublet](#))

### the cup of your sister Samaria

Oholibah's sister Oholah represents Samaria. Samaria is called by its name but still referred to as a sister. The cup is a symbol for the punishment that she received. Alternate translation: "for this is the same cup of punishment that your sister, who represents Samaria, drank" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and devastation](#)
- [Samaria](#)

#### ULT

**33** You will be filled with drunkenness and sorrow, the cup of horror [and devastation](#); the cup of your sister [Samaria](#).

## Ezekiel 23:34

### tear your breasts

“cut your breasts”

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> You will drink it and drain it empty; then you will shatter it and tear your breasts with the pieces. For I have declared it—this is [the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.’

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 23:35

### thrown me away behind your back

Yahweh speaks of Oholibah rejecting him as if he were an object that she had thrown behind her back and forgotten. Alternate translation: "rejected me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Therefore, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, 'Because you have forgotten me and thrown me away behind your back, so also you will bear the consequences of your shameful behavior and acts of sexual immorality.'

## Ezekiel 23:36

### Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah?

Yahweh uses this rhetorical question as a command for Ezekiel. This question can be written as a statement. The cities of Jerusalem and Samaria are represented by Oholah and Oholibah. Alternate translation: "Son of man, you will judge Oholah and Oholibah!" or "Son of man, judge the people of those two cities represented by Oholah and Oholibah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, will you judge Oholah and Oholibah? So present to them their disgusting actions,

### Son of man

"Son of a human being" or "Son of humanity." God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)



## Ezekiel 23:37

### there is blood on their hands

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “they have murdered people” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on their hands](#)
- [sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> since they have committed adultery, and since there is blood [on their hands](#). They have committed adultery with their idols, and they have even caused their [sons](#) to pass through the fire, as food for their idols.

## Ezekiel 23:38

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks about how the people of Jerusalem and Samaria have been unfaithful to him.

### unclean

A person or thing God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 23:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### on the same day they defile my Sabbaths

The phrase “same day” refers to the previous phrase “make my sanctuary unclean.” Alternate translation: “on the same day on which they make my sanctuary unclean, they defile my Sabbaths” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [They make my sanctuary](#)
- [my Sabbaths](#)

### ULT

**38** Then they continue to do this to me: [They make my sanctuary](#) unclean, and on the same day they defile [my Sabbaths](#).

## Ezekiel 23:39

### behold!

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

### in the middle of my house

This refers to the house in general. The reference to the “middle” emphasizes that what was done happened openly in the temple and defiled the whole place. Alternate translation: “in my own house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> For when they had slaughtered [their children](#) for their idols, then they came to [my sanctuary](#) on the same day to [defile it!](#) So behold! This is what they have done in the middle [of my house](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their children](#)
- [my sanctuary](#)
- [to defile it](#)
- [of my house](#)

## Ezekiel 23:40

### General Information:

Yahweh again refers to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### ULT

**40** You sent out for men who came from far away, to whom [messengers](#) had been sent—now behold. They indeed came, those for whom you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry.

### you bathed, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry

These are things done by a woman to make her appear more beautiful to a man.

### you bathed

Here the word “you” switches to singular and refers to only one sister, but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [messengers](#)

## Ezekiel 23:41

### you sat

Here the word “you” switches to singular and refers to only one sister, but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### my incense and my oil

These are items used in worship to Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and my oil](#)

### ULT

**41** There you sat on a beautiful bed and at a table arranged before it where you placed my incense [and my oil](#).

## Ezekiel 23:42

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to refer to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### So the sound of a noisy crowd was around her

The sound of the crowd is used to refer to the crowd of people.  
Alternate translation: "So there was a noisy crowd around her" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### was around her ... on their hands

"was around her ... on her and her sister's hands." This verse begins by referring to one of the sisters but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here. In the second part of the verse it switches back to referring to both sisters with the word "their."

### Sabeans were brought

This can be stated in active form. The word "Sabeans" refers to people from Sheba. Alternate translation: "Sabeans had come" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### they put bracelets

The word "they" refers to the men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [kinds of](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [crowns](#)
- [on their heads](#)

### ULT

**42** So the sound of a noisy crowd was around her; including all [kinds of men](#), even Sabeans were brought in from the wilderness, and they put bracelets on [their hands](#) and beautiful [crowns on their heads](#).

## Ezekiel 23:43

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to refer to the cities of Jerusalem and Samaria as if they were two prostitutes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### her who was worn out ... with her, and she with them

This refers to one of the sisters but the situation is probably the same for both sisters. If one sister must be specified in your language, refer to Oholibah here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will be sexually immoral](#)

#### ULT

**43** Then I said of her who was worn out by adultery, 'Now they [will be sexually immoral](#) with her, and she with them.'

## Ezekiel 23:44

### They went in to her, as men go in to a prostitute

They had sexual relations with her in the same way that men have sexual relations with a prostitute.

### They went in to her

“They went in to where she was” or “They went to her”

### In this way they went in to Oholah and Oholibah

“This is how they had sexual relations with Oholah and Oholibah”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a prostitute

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> They went in to her, as men go in to a prostitute. In this way they went in to Oholah and Oholibah, immoral women.



## Ezekiel 23:45

### pass judgment

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "condemn" (See: [Idiom](#))

### who shed blood ... blood is on their hands

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "who murder people ... murderers" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But righteous](#)
- [and punish](#)
- [and they will punish them](#)
- [blood](#)
- [on their hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> [But righteous](#) men will pass judgment [and punish](#) them as adulteresses, [and they will punish them](#) with the sentence for those who shed [blood](#), because they are adulteresses and blood is [on their hands](#).

## Ezekiel 23:46

### raise up a company

The phrase “raise up” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “gather a large group of people” (See: [Idiom](#))

### against them and give them

“against Jerusalem and Samaria and give them”

### give them up

Yahweh gives up the responsibility to take care of them and allows them to suffer.

### to be terrorized and plundered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for the company to terrorize and plunder them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [So the Lord](#)
- [company](#)

### ULT

**46** [So the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I will raise up a [company](#) against them and give them up to be terrorized and plundered.

## Ezekiel 23:47

### cut them down

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "kill them" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [company](#)
- [with their swords](#)
- [They will kill](#)
- [their sons](#)
- [and burn down](#)
- [their houses](#)

### ULT

**47** Then that [company](#) will stone them with stones and cut them down [with their swords](#). [They will kill their sons](#) and daughters [and burn down their houses](#).

## Ezekiel 23:48

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the land

#### ULT

<sup>48</sup> For I will remove shameful behavior from **the land** and discipline all the women so they will no longer act like prostitutes.

## Ezekiel 23:49

### So they will set your

“So the company will set your.” The word “they” refers to the “company” of people from [Ezekiel 23:47](#).

### set your shameful behavior against you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “cause you to accept responsibility for your shameful behavior” or “punish you for your shameful behavior” (See: [Idiom](#))

### bear the guilt of your sins with your idols

“accept responsibility for the guilt of your sins with your idols.” This implies that they will be punished for their sins. Alternate translation: “receive the punishment for sinning by worshiping your idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will know that](#)
- [the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> So they will set your shameful behavior against you. You will bear the guilt of your sins with your idols, and in this way [you will know that](#) I am [the Lord](#) Yahweh.”

## **Ezekiel 24**

### **Ezekiel 24 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Too many sins to be forgiven**

The people of Jerusalem cannot be cleaned from their sin. (See: [clean, wash](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

Jerusalem is compared to a pot, so rusted that it cannot be cleaned from its rust. They have been completely rotted by their sin. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 24:1

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### in the ninth year

“in year 9.” This refers to how long they had been in exile under King Jehoiachin. Alternate translation: “in the ninth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month

“the tenth day of the tenth month” or “the 10th day of the 10th month.” This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word of Yahweh came to me in the ninth year, in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month, saying,

## Ezekiel 24:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “**Son of man**, write for yourself **the name** of this day, this exact day, for this exact day **the king of Babylon** has besieged **Jerusalem**.”

### the king of Babylon has besieged

The army of Babylon is referred to by its leader. Alternate translation: “the army of the king of Babylon has besieged” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the name](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)



## Ezekiel 24:3

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### this rebellious house

This is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:5](#). Alternate translation: "this rebellious people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [The Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So speak a proverb against this rebellious [house](#), a parable. Say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Place the cooking pot. Place it and pour water into it.'

## Ezekiel 24:4

### Gather pieces of food

Here “food” refers specifically to meat. Alternate translation: “Place pieces of meat” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Gather](#)
- [good](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [Gather](#) pieces of food within it, every [good](#) piece—the thigh and shoulder—and fill it with the best bones.

## Ezekiel 24:5

### the best of the flock

Here the “flock” refers to sheep, not birds.

### pile up the bones under it

Some cultures add bones to a fire because they burn longer than wood. This refers to the bones that remained after the best bones were placed in the pot. Alternate translation: “place the rest of the bones under the pot to fuel the fire” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Take the best of [the flock](#) and pile up the bones under it. Bring it to a boil and cook the bones in it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the flock](#)

## Ezekiel 24:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### the city of blood

Here “blood” is a reference to “murder.” Alternate translation: “the city of murderers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a cooking pot

Yahweh continues to compare Jerusalem to a cooking pot. Alternate translation: “it is like a cooking pot” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### rust

the red material that forms on metal. Rust eats away at metal and eventually destroys it

### Take piece after piece

Yahweh does not give this command to a specific person. This is a general command given to an unspecified person within this metaphor.

### but do not cast lots for it

Casting lots was a way of choosing which pieces of meat to take out, but because Yahweh wants to take out all of the pieces of meat, there is no need to cast lots.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [come out of it](#)
- [Take](#)
- [lots](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Woe to the city of blood, a cooking pot that has rust in it and that rust will not [come out of it](#). [Take](#) piece after piece from it, but do not cast [lots](#) for it.

## Ezekiel 24:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### For her blood is in the midst of her

This means that the blood from those who were murdered in Jerusalem is still there. Alternate translation: “For the blood of those who were murdered among her is still there” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### her

The word “her” refers to Jerusalem, which is represented by the cooking pot.

### She has set it on the smooth rock; she has not poured it out on the ground to cover it with dust

This personifies Jerusalem as a person who murdered the people and chose where to put their blood. Alternate translation: “They were murdered on the smooth rocks; not on the dirt where the dust would hide their blood” or “Their blood fell on the smooth rocks; it did not fall on the ground where the dust would cover it” (See: [Personification](#))

### has set it on the smooth rock

“has put the blood on bare rocks”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [her blood](#)
- [on the ground](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For [her blood](#) is in the midst of her. She has set it on the smooth rock; she has not poured it out [on the ground](#) to cover it with dust,

## Ezekiel 24:8

### so it brings fury up to exact vengeance

Here Yahweh is speaking about himself taking revenge on those who murdered the people in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “in order that I could see it and then be angry and get revenge” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> so it brings [fury](#) up to exact vengeance. I placed [her blood](#) on the smooth rock so it could not be covered.

### so it could not be covered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that no one could cover it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fury](#)
- [her blood](#)

## Ezekiel 24:9

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### the city of blood

Here “blood” is a reference to “murder.” Alternate translation: “the city of murderers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will also enlarge the pile of wood

It is implied that the pile of wood is under the cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. “I will make the pile of wood on the fire under you even bigger” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [enlarge](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this:  
Woe to the city of blood. I will also [enlarge](#) the pile of wood.

## Ezekiel 24:10

### kindle the fire

“light the fire”

### let the bones be charred

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “burn the bones” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the fire](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Stack up the wood and kindle [the fire](#).  
Cook the meat well and mix in the  
spices and let the bones be charred.



## Ezekiel 24:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### scorch

to burn the surface of something

### so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to melt the uncleanness within it and to consume its corrosion” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### uncleanness

A person whom God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### corrosion

rust

### consumed

burned away

### Translation Words - ULT

- [its bronze](#)

### ULT

**11** Then set the pot on its coals empty, in order to heat and scorch [its bronze](#), so its uncleanness within it will be melted, its corrosion consumed.'

## Ezekiel 24:12

### She has become weary

Here the word “she” refers to the cooking pot. This is the cooking pot that is metaphorical for Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “Jerusalem has become tired” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### toil

difficult labor

### but her corrosion has not gone out of her by the fire

The phrase “has not gone out of her” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “but the fire did not burn away her corrosion” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [out](#)
- [by the fire](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> She has become weary because of toil, but her corrosion has not gone [out](#) of her [by the fire](#).

## Ezekiel 24:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through [Ezekiel 24:14](#). (See: [Parables](#))

### until I have satisfied my fury upon you.

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people in his anger as if it were his “fury” that were punishing them. Alternate translation: “until I am finished punishing you and am no longer furious with you” or “until I have punished you and I am longer angry with you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I tried to cleanse you](#)
- [be cleansed](#)
- [be cleansed anymore](#)
- [I have satisfied](#)
- [my fury](#)

### ULT

**13** Your shameful behavior is in your uncleanness. Because [I tried to cleanse you](#) but still you would not [be cleansed](#) from your uncleanness, you will not [be cleansed anymore](#) until [I have satisfied my fury](#) upon you.

## Ezekiel 24:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling a parable to Ezekiel about a cooking pot that represents Jerusalem. This parable continues through the end of this verse. (See: [Parables](#))

### **nor will I rest from it**

“nor will I rest from punishing you.” The word “it” refers to Yahweh punishing the people.

### **this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I, Yahweh](#)
- [will I...from it](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**14** [I, Yahweh](#), have declared it, and I will do it. I will not relent nor [will I rest from it](#). As your ways were, and as your activities, they will judge you!—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

## Ezekiel 24:15

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**15** Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 24:16

### the desire of your eyes from

This refers to Ezekiel's wife. Yahweh refers to Ezekiel by the part of his body he uses to see his wife. Alternate translation: "your wife, whom you love very much, from" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### with a plague

"by a disease"

### you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Ezekiel is not to cry about his wife dying. Alternate translation: "you must not mourn nor weep" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)

#### ULT

16 "[Son of man](#)! Behold, I am taking the desire of your eyes from you with a plague, but you must not mourn nor weep, and your tears must not flow.

## Ezekiel 24:17

### the dead

This refers to his dead wife. Alternate translation: “your dead wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### turban

a head covering made of a long cloth wrapped around the head

### sandals

a simple shoe held onto the foot with straps around the ankles

### do not veil your facial hair

In Israel, men would shave their beards to express sorrow, then cover their faces until their facial hair grew back. Yahweh told Ezekiel not to cover his facial hair in order to show that he had not shaved his face to express his sorrow. Alternate translation: “do not mourn by veiling your facial hair” or “do not mourn by shaving and covering your beard” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eat](#)
- [the bread](#)

### ULT

**17** You must groan silently. Do not conduct a funeral for the dead. Tie your turban on you and place your sandals on your feet, but do not veil your facial hair or [eat the bread](#) of men who mourn for having lost their wives.”

## Ezekiel 24:18

### In the morning

“The next morning”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- died
- been commanded to do

### ULT

**18** So I spoke to the people in the morning, and my wife died in the evening. In the morning I did what I had been commanded to do.



## Ezekiel 24:19

### General Information:

The people of Israel question Ezekiel, and Ezekiel tells them what Yahweh has said to them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- The people

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The people asked me, "Will you not tell us what these things mean, the things that you are doing?"

## Ezekiel 24:20

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So I said to them, “The word of [Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 24:21

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### I will desecrate my sanctuary—the pride of ... of your soul, and your sons

“I will desecrate my sanctuary which is the pride ... of your soul. Your sons”

### the pride of your power

This describes the temple as the building that the people are proud of. This speaks of it as being their “pride” instead of the source of their pride. Alternate translation: “the building that you are proud of” or “the source of your strong pride” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the delight of your eyes

Here Yahweh refers to the people by their “eyes.” Alternate translation: “the building that you delight to look at” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the yearning of your soul

Here Yahweh refers to the people by their “soul” to emphasize their inner feelings. Alternate translation: “the building that you truly love” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### your sons and your daughters ... will fall by the sword

This refers to their enemies by their swords. Alternate translation: “your sons and daughters ... will be killed in war” or “your enemies will kill your sons and your daughters ... with their swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [my sanctuary](#)
- [your soul](#)
- [and your sons](#)
- [you left behind](#)
- [by the sword](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> ‘Say [to the house of Israel, the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Behold! I will desecrate [my sanctuary](#)—the pride of your power, the delight of your eyes, and the yearning of [your soul, and your sons](#) and your daughters whom [you left behind](#) will fall [by the sword](#).

## Ezekiel 24:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- eat
- the bread

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then you will do exactly as I have done: you will not veil your facial hair, nor eat the bread of mourning men!

## Ezekiel 24:23

### you will melt away

Here “melt away” is a metaphor for wasting away and dying.  
Alternate translation: “you will become very thin and slowly die”  
(See: [Metaphor](#))

### in your iniquities

This implies that God will not forgive the sins of these people. Alternate translation: “and I will not forgive your sins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### groan

This is the sound a person makes who wants help, but who has too much pain or sorrow to speak.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your heads](#)
- [brother](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Instead, your turbans will be on [your heads](#), and your sandals on your feet; you will not mourn nor weep, for you will melt away in your iniquities, and each man will groan for his [brother](#).

## Ezekiel 24:24

### So Ezekiel will be a sign for you

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 12:6](#). Alternate translation: “So Ezekiel will be a warning for you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So Ezekiel](#)
- [Then you will know](#)
- [am the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [So Ezekiel](#) will be a sign for you, as everything that he has done you will do when this comes. [Then you will know](#) that I [am the Lord](#) Yahweh!”

## Ezekiel 24:25

### that I capture their temple

Here Yahweh speaks of destroying the temple as if it were someone that he was capturing. Alternate translation: “that I destroy their temple”

### which is their joy, their pride

The abstract nouns “joy” and “pride” can be translated as noun phrases. Alternate translation: “which is what they are joyful about and what they are proud of” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

25 “But you, [son of man](#), on the day that I capture their temple, which is their joy, their pride, and what they see and [desire](#)—and when I take away [their sons](#) and daughters—

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [sons](#)
- [of man](#)
- [desire](#)
- [their](#)

## Ezekiel 24:26

### refugee

someone who has been forced to leave his country because of war or another disaster

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> on that day, a refugee will come to you to give you the news!



## Ezekiel 24:27

### your mouth will be opened up

This can be stated in active form. Ezekiel being given understanding and the ability to speak is represented by his mouth being opened. Alternate translation: “I will open your mouth” or “you will know what to say” or “I will cause you to know what to say” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

**27** On that day your mouth will be opened up to that refugee and you will speak—you will no longer be silent. You will be a sign for them **so that they will know** that I am Yahweh.”

### you will speak—you will no longer be silent

Both of these phrases mean that Ezekiel will speak. In the second phrase it is stated in negative form to emphasize that he will speak. (See: [Litotes](#))

### You will be a sign for them

Here the word “sign” refers to something that communicates a special warning to those who see it. Yahweh speaks of Ezekiel and his actions as being this warning. See how you translated this metaphor in [Ezekiel 12:6](#). Alternate translation: “You will be a warning for them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [so that they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## **Ezekiel 25**

### **Ezekiel 25 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

### **Prophecy against other nations**

This chapter includes prophecies against some Gentile nations. Ammon, Moab, Edom and Philistia will all be destroyed. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Ezekiel 25:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 25:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) against the [people](#) of Ammon and [prophecy](#) against them.

### set your face against the people of Ammon

This is a command to stare at the people of Ammon as a symbol of punishing them. Alternate translation: “stare at the people of Ammon” or “stare at the people of Ammon so that they will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### set your face against the people of Ammon

Ammon was far away, so Ezekiel could not see the people there, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming the people. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). Alternate translation: “Turn toward the people of Ammon and stare” or “stare toward Ammon so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the people of Ammon

“the descendants of Ammon” or “those who live in the land of Ammon”

### prophecy against them

“prophecy about the bad things that will happen to them.” This means to prophecy about the horrible things that will happen to the people of Ammon. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [the people](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [and prophecy](#)

## Ezekiel 25:3

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel what to say to the people of Ammon.

### Hear the word of the Lord Yahweh

“Listen to this message from the Lord Yahweh”

### you said, “Aha!”

“you cheered.” The word “Aha” is a sound people make when they are happy about something. In this case the people were happy because bad things happened to Israel and Judah.

### over my sanctuary when it was profaned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “against my sanctuary when the enemy army profaned it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### against the land ... against the house

“over the land ... over the house”

### the house of Judah

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [the Lord \(2\)](#)
- [over my sanctuary](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [against](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [when they went](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Say to [the people](#) of Ammon, ‘Hear the word [of the Lord](#) Yahweh. This is what [the Lord](#) Yahweh says: Because you said, “Aha!” [over my sanctuary](#) when it was profaned, and against the land [of Israel](#) when it was desolate, and [against the house of Judah when they went](#) into exile,

## Ezekiel 25:4

### behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### I am giving you to a people in the east as their possession

This speaks of the enemy army conquering the land of Ammon and taking possession of the land and everything in it as if the enemy were taking the people of Ammon as their possession. It is not implied here that the enemy took the people of Ammon as slaves. Alternate translation: “I will cause an army from a land that is east of you to come and conquer you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> therefore, behold, I am giving you [to a people](#) in the east as their possession. They will set up camp [against](#) you and set up their tents among you. [They will eat your fruit](#) and they will drink your milk.

### They will set up camp against you and set up their tents among you

“They will set up tents and live in your country”

### They will eat your fruit and they will drink your milk

It may be helpful to specify the source of the fruit and milk. Alternate translation: “They will eat the fruit from your trees and drink the milk from your cattle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to a people](#)
- [against](#)
- [They will eat](#)
- [your fruit](#)

## Ezekiel 25:5

### the people of Ammon a field for flocks

Here the phrase “the people of Ammon” refers to the land that belonged to the people of Ammon. Also, the understood information at the beginning of this phrase may be supplied. Alternate translation: “I will make the rest of the land of Ammon a field for flocks” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> I will make [Rabbah](#) a pasture for [camels](#) and [the people](#) of Ammon a field for [flocks](#). Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Rabbah](#)
- [camels](#)
- [the people](#)
- [flocks](#)
- [Then you will know that](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 25:6

### You have clapped your hands and stamped your feet

These actions are ways to show strong emotions. In this case the people are cheering and showing their contempt against Israel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### all the contempt within you against the land of Israel

Here the phrase “the land of Israel” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “all of the hatred you feel towards the people who live in Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [your hands](#)
- [your](#)
- [and rejoiced](#)
- [the...of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: You have clapped [your hands](#) and stamped [your feet](#), [and rejoiced](#) with all the contempt within you against the land of [Israel](#).



## Ezekiel 25:7

### behold

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what i am about to tell you”

### I will strike you with my hand

“I will hit you with my powerful hand.” Here Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were literally hitting them with his hand. Alternate translation: “I will punish you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### give you as plunder to the nations

The word “you” refers to the people of Ammon but is also a metonym for their land and their possessions. Alternate translation: “I will allow enemies to defeat you and take you, your land, and your possessions as plunder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will cut you off from the peoples ... make you perish from among the countries

These phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will completely destroy the people of Ammon so that they are no longer a nation. Alternate translation: “I will completely destroy you so that you are no longer a nation” (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [nations](#)
- [I will cut you off](#)
- [the peoples](#)
- [make you perish](#)
- [among the countries](#)
- [and you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, behold! I will strike you with [my hand](#) and give you as plunder to the [nations](#). [I will cut you off](#) from the [peoples](#) and [make you perish](#) from [among the countries](#)! I will destroy you, [and you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).'

## Ezekiel 25:8

### Moab and Seir

These places refer to the people who live in them. Alternate translation: “the people of Moab and Seir” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Behold! The house of Judah is like

“Look at the house of Judah. It is like”

### The house of Judah is

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “The Judah people group are” or “The people of Judah are” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [The house](#)
- [of Judah is like](#)
- [other nation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘Because [Moab](#) and Seir say, “Behold! [The house of Judah is like](#) every [other nation](#).”’

## Ezekiel 25:9

### behold! I will open

“look! I will open” or “listen! I will open” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you! I will open”

### starting at his cities

Here the city of Moab is spoken of with the masculine pronoun “his.” Alternate translation: “starting at its cities” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, behold! I will open the slopes of [Moab](#), starting at his cities on the border—the splendor [of](#) Beth Jeshimoth, Baal Meon, and Kiriathaim—

## Ezekiel 25:10

### to the people of the east who have been against the people of Ammon

“I will send the same army from the people in the east who attacked Ammon”

### I will give them up as a possession

Here Yahweh speaks of allowing the armies from the east to conquer Ammon as if Ammon were a possession that he was giving them. Alternate translation: “I will allow the armies to conquer them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered among the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that the nations will not remember the people of Ammon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to the people](#)
- [who have been](#)
- [the people](#)
- [among the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [to the people](#) of the east [who have been](#) against [the people](#) of Ammon. I will give them up as a possession so that the people of Ammon will not be remembered [among the nations](#).

## Ezekiel 25:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- know
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> So I will perform judgments against Moab, and they will know that I am Yahweh.'

## Ezekiel 25:12

### Edom has taken

Here “Edom” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “The people of Edom have taken” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the house of Judah

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the descendants of Judah over many years. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Judah people group” or “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘Edom has taken vengeance against [the house of Judah](#) and has committed wrong in doing so.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Judah](#)

## Ezekiel 25:13

### I will strike Edom with my hand

Here Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were literally hitting them with his hand. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 25:7](#). Alternate translation: "I will punish Edom" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will make them ... from Teman to Dedan

"I will make all of Edom ... from Teman to Dedan." These are two cities at opposite ends of Edom. This means that Yahweh will destroy all of Edom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### They will fall by the sword

The word "fall" represents being killed and the word "sword" refers to their enemies who will kill them in battle. Alternate translation: "Their enemies will kill them with their swords" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [with my hand](#)
- [destroy](#)
- [every person](#)
- [and animal](#)
- [by the sword](#)

#### ULT

**13** Therefore, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this:  
I will strike Edom [with my hand](#) and  
[destroy every person and animal](#) there.  
I will make them a ruined, abandoned  
place, from Teman to Dedan. They will  
fall [by the sword](#).

## Ezekiel 25:14

### I will lay my vengeance upon Edom by the hand of my people Israel

Here the “hand” of Israel is a metonym for Israel’s army. Yahweh speaks of taking revenge on the people of Edom as if his vengeance were like a sheet that he covered them with. The abstract noun “vengeance” can be translated with the verb “to punish.” Alternate translation: “I will use my people Israel to punish the people of Edom” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> I will lay my vengeance upon Edom [by the hand of my people Israel](#), and they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury, and [they will know](#) my vengeance—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.’

### they will do to Edom according to my anger and my fury

“they will show Edom my anger and fury” or “they will punish Edom according to my anger and fury against the people of Edom”

### my anger and my fury

The word “fury” means basically the same thing as and intensifies the word “anger.” Alternate translation: “my furious anger” or “my extreme anger” (See: [Doublet](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the hand](#)
- [of my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [they will know](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)



## Ezekiel 25:15

### The Philistines have taken vengeance with malice and from within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again

The phrase “from within themselves” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “The Philistines hate Judah and have tried to take revenge against it by their own strength again and again” (See: [Idiom](#))

### to destroy Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “to destroy the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [The Philistines](#)
- [and from](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘[The Philistines](#) have taken vengeance with malice [and from](#) within themselves they tried to destroy Judah again and again.’

## Ezekiel 25:16

### Behold

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows.  
Alternate translation: "Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### I will reach out with my hand against the Philistines

Here Yahweh's power is represented by his "hand." Alternate translation: "I will turn my powerful hand against the Philistines" or "I will turn my great power against the Philistines" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will cut off

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I will destroy" or "I will get rid of" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Kerethites

people who lived in the city of Kereth in Philistia (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [my hand against](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [I will cut](#)
- [the Kerethites](#)
- [and destroy](#)
- [the remnant](#)

### ULT

**16** So this is what [the Lord](#) Yahweh says: Behold! I will reach out with [my hand](#) against the [Philistines](#), and I will cut off the [Kerethites](#) and [destroy the remnant](#) who are along the seacoast.

## Ezekiel 25:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- with furious
- so they will know
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For I will take great vengeance against them with furious acts of punishment, so they will know that I am Yahweh, when I take my vengeance on them.”

## Ezekiel 26

### Ezekiel 26 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section of prophecy against Tyre. The Babylonians will destroy Tyre. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Ezekiel 26:1

### in the eleventh year

“in year 11.” This means the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So it was in the eleventh year, on the first day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### on the first day of the month

“on day 1 of the month.” It is uncertain which month of the Hebrew calendar Ezekiel meant. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 26:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### Tyre has said against Jerusalem

Here the city names “Tyre” and “Jerusalem” represent the people of those cities. Alternate translation: “the people of Tyre have said against the people of Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Aha!

The word “Aha” is a sound people make when they discover something. Alternate translation: “Yes!” or “This is great!” (See: [Exclamations](#))

### The gates of the people are broken

The people of Tyre use these words to refer to Jerusalem as if it were a city gate through which traders from the surrounding nations pass. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Armies have broken down the gates of the people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### She has turned to me

Here the word “she” refers to the word “gates” which have “turned” on their hinges to open to Tyre. This phrase means that Tyre has now replaced Jerusalem as the city through which the traders from many nations pass. Alternate translation: “The gateway has opened to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### I will be filled up

Here to be “filled up” represents being prosperous. Alternate translation: “I will become prosperous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### she is ruined

“Jerusalem is ruined”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [gates of](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), because [Tyre](#) has said against [Jerusalem](#), ‘Aha! The [gates of the people](#) are broken! She has turned to me; I will be filled up because she is ruined.’

## Ezekiel 26:3

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### **I will raise up many nations against you like the sea raises its waves**

Here the word “nations” refers to their armies. Alternate translation: “I will gather armies from many nations that will beat against you like the waves in the raging sea” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [nations against you](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! I am against you, [Tyre](#), and I will raise up many [nations against you](#) like the sea raises its waves.’

## Ezekiel 26:4

### I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock

Yahweh speaks of how he will cause Tyre to be completely destroyed.  
Alternate translation: "I will cause the armies to completely destroy the city, and they will leave nothing there" (See: [Simile](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They will destroy the walls of [Tyre](#) and tear down her towers. I will sweep her dust away and make her like a bare rock.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Tyre](#)



## Ezekiel 26:5

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### She will become

The city of Tyre is spoken of here as if it were a woman. Alternate translation: “Tyre will become” or “It will become” (See: [Personification](#))

### a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea

Part of Tyre was an island. This expression is a metonym for the results of Tyre’s destruction. Alternate translation: “an empty island used for drying fishing nets” or “a deserted island where people dry out their fishing nets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### she will become plunder for the nations

“Plunder” means things that people steal or take by force. Here Tyre becoming plunder represents its wealth being carried off by other nations. Alternate translation: “the armies of the nations will take away every valuable thing from Tyre” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [for the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> She will become a place for nets to dry out in the midst of the sea, since I have declared it—this is [the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—and she will become plunder [for the nations](#).

## Ezekiel 26:6

### Her daughters who are in the fields will be slaughtered by the swords

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The enemy armies will slaughter with swords her daughters who are in the fields” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Her daughters who are in the fields **will be slaughtered by the swords, and they will know** that I am Yahweh.’

### Her daughters who are in the fields

This could mean: (1) “Her daughters” were the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields or (2) “Her daughters” is a metonym for nearby towns and villages on the mainland that supported the main city of Tyre. Alternate translation: “Her daughter communities who are on the mainland” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will be slaughtered
- by the swords
- and they will know
- Yahweh

## Ezekiel 26:7

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings

The phrase “king of kings” was a title, meaning that he was the greatest of kings, the king that other kings obeyed. Alternate translation: “Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the greatest king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a great many people

This emphasizes the great size of Nebuchadnezzar’s army.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- of kings
- king
- of Babylon
- Tyre
- with horses
- people

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For this is what Yahweh says: Behold, from the north I am bringing Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings, against Tyre, with horses and chariots, and with horsemen and a great many people.

## Ezekiel 26:8

### He will kill

Here the word “He” refers to Nebuchadnezzar and is a metonym for his army. Alternate translation: “His army will kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### your daughters in the field

This could mean: (1) “your daughters” refers to the young women of Tyre who were working in the fields or (2) “your daughters” is a metonym for nearby towns and villages on the mainland that supported the main city of Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 26:6](#). Alternate translation: “your daughter communities who are on the mainland” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**8** He will kill your daughters in the field. He will set up a siege work and build a ramp against your walls and raise up shields against you.

### Translation Words - ULT

- He will kill
- He will kill

## Ezekiel 26:9

### General Information:

The words “he” and “his” in these verses refer to Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, and represent the soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar’s army doing these actions. The word “your” refers to the city of Tyre. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He will place his battering rams to hit against your walls, [and his tools](#) will tear down your towers.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### He will place his battering rams to hit against your walls, and his tools will tear down your towers

Although the battering rams and tools are spoken of as acting against the walls and towers of Tyre, they would have been used by the soldiers in Nebuchadnezzar’s army against the walls and towers. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### battering rams

“Battering rams” are large trees or poles that many men in an army would pick up and hit against a wall or door so they could break it down and get inside. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:2](#).

### tools

Weapons or instruments made of iron used to tear down the towers

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and his tools](#)

## Ezekiel 26:10

**When he enters your gates, he will enter as men come into a city whose walls have been broken down**

Here Yahweh uses a simile to describe how Nebuchadnezzar's army will enter into the city of Tyre. (See: [Simile](#))

**whose walls have been broken down**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after breaking down its walls" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [His horses](#)
- [will shake](#)
- [your gates](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [His horses](#) will be so many that their dust will cover you. Your walls [will shake](#) with the sound of horsemen, wagons, and chariots. When he enters [your gates](#), he will enter as men come into a city whose walls have been broken down.

## Ezekiel 26:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...horses
- He will kill
- your people
- with the sword

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> The hooves of his horses will trample all of your streets. He will kill your people with the sword and your mighty stone pillars will fall to the ground.

## Ezekiel 26:12

### General Information:

The word “They” in these verses refers to the soldiers in the armies of Nebuchadnezzar. The words “your” and “you” refer to the city of Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They will plunder **your riches** and loot your merchandise. They will tear down your walls and destroy your luxurious **homes**. Your stones, your timber, and the rubble they will throw into the waters.

### They will plunder your riches and loot your merchandise

The phrases “plunder your riches” and “loot your merchandise” mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### luxurious

expensive and comfortable

### Your stones, your timber, and the rubble

These refer to what is left after the walls and homes are torn down.

### into the waters

“into the sea”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your riches](#)
- [homes](#)



## Ezekiel 26:13

### The sound of your harps will be heard no more

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one will hear the sound of your harps anymore” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> I will stop the noise of your songs.  
The sound of your harps will be heard no more.

## Ezekiel 26:14

### I will make you a bare rock

This metaphor describes the results after Yahweh completely destroys Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 26:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will become a place where nets are spread out to dry

This metaphor also describes the results after Yahweh destroys Tyre. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 26:5](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will become a place where nets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will make you a place where nets” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Yahweh](#)
- [this is the Lord Yahweh's](#)

#### ULT

**14** I will make you a bare rock, you will become a place where nets are spread out to dry. You will never be built again, for I, [Lord Yahweh](#) have spoken—[this is the Lord Yahweh's](#) declaration.

## Ezekiel 26:15

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Will not the islands quake ... in your midst?

This question expects a positive answer and emphasizes the results of Tyre's destruction. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The islands will quake ... in your midst." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will not the islands quake

Here "the islands" represents the people living on the islands. Alternate translation: "Will not the people of the islands quake with fear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [quake](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this to Tyre, 'Will not the islands [quake](#) with the sound of your downfall, and with the groans of the wounded when the terrible slaughter is in your midst?

## Ezekiel 26:16

### princes of the sea

“princes of the coastlands”

### They will clothe themselves with trembling

This metaphor represents the princes trembling enough to seem like it was their clothing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### be appalled because of you

“be unable to speak because what has happened to you is so bad”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from their thrones](#)
- [their robes](#)
- [the ground](#)

#### ULT

**16** Then all the princes of the sea will step down [from their thrones](#) and remove [their robes](#) and cast off their embroidered garments. They will clothe themselves with trembling, they will sit on [the ground](#) and tremble every moment, and they will be appalled because of you.

## Ezekiel 26:17

### General Information:

In these verses, “They” refers to the “princes of the sea” in the previous verse, and “you” refers to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### lift up

“sing”

### How you, who were inhabited by sailors, have been destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “How your enemies have destroyed you—you who were inhabited by sailors” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### spread a terror about themselves upon everyone who lived near them

The abstract noun “terror” can be translated using the adjective “terrified.” Alternate translation: “caused all the people around them to be terrified” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [destroyed](#)
- [so strong](#)

### ULT

**17** They will lift up a lament for you and say to you, How you, who were inhabited by sailors, have been [destroyed](#). The famous city that was [so strong](#)—it is now gone from the sea. The ones living in her once spread a terror about themselves upon everyone who lived near them.

## Ezekiel 26:18

**Now the coasts tremble on the day of your downfall. The islands in the sea are terrified, because you are no longer in your place**

These two lines are similar in meaning and emphasize the response of the surrounding people to the destruction of Tyre. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now the coasts tremble on the day of your downfall. The islands in the sea are terrified, because you are no longer in your place.'

### Now the coasts tremble

Here “the coasts” represents the people living there. Alternate translation: “Now the people of the coastlands tremble” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### The islands in the sea are terrified

Here “the islands in the sea” represents the people living there. Alternate translation: “The people of the islands are terrified” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you are no longer in your place

The destruction of Tyre is spoken of as if it was a person who had died. Alternate translation: “you have departed” or “you exist no more” (See: [Personification](#))

## Ezekiel 26:19

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### When I make you

The word “you” here refers to the city of Tyre. In the original language “you” here is feminine singular.

### ULT

**19** For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: When I make you a desolate city, like the other cities that are not inhabited, when I raise up the deeps against you, and when the great waters cover you,

### When I make you a desolate city, like the other cities that are not inhabited

Here Tyre is compared to other cities that no longer had people living in them. (See: [Simile](#))

### the deeps

Here “the deeps” means the deep waters of the sea. Alternate translation: “the deep waters” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 26:20

**then I will bring you down to the people of ancient times, like the others who have gone down into the pit; for I will make you live in the lowest realms of the earth as in ruins of ancient times**

What Yahweh would do to Tyre is compared to people going to the grave and cities falling into ruin. (See: [Personification](#) and [Simile](#))

### the pit

This refers to the grave. Because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### stand in the land of the living

This represents being restored to the city's former existence. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [of the living](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> then I will bring you down to [the people](#) of ancient times, like the others who have gone down into the pit; for I will make you live in the lowest realms of the earth as in ruins of ancient times. Because of this you will not come back and stand in the land [of the living](#).<sup>[1]</sup>



## Ezekiel 26:21

### I will place disaster on you

The abstract noun “disaster” can be translated using the adjective “terrible” or the verb “destroy.” Alternate translation: “I will bring you to a terrible end” or “I will destroy you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then you will be sought, but you will never](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**21** I will place disaster on you, and you will be no more forever. [Then you will be sought, but you will never](#) be found ever again—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

26:20 <sup>[1]</sup> is supplied by an ancient version. The Hebrew has , which does not seem to fit the context here.

## Ezekiel 27

### Ezekiel 27 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Tyre continues in this chapter. Tyre has become wealthy from trade as far as Spain, but Tyre will be destroyed. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Metaphor

Tyre is compared to a ship built with the very best materials. Despite its strength and power, Yahweh will destroy it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 27:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Again the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 27:2

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “Now you, [son of man](#), begin a lamentation concerning [Tyre](#),

### begin a lamentation

The abstract noun “lamentation” can be translated using the verb “lament.” Alternate translation: “begin to lament” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [Tyre](#)

## Ezekiel 27:3

### say to Tyre

Here the word “Tyre” represents the people living in Tyre. Alternate translation: “say to the people of Tyre” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### who lives within the gates of the sea

“who lives at the gates of the sea” or “who lives at the entry to the sea”

### Tyre, you have said

Here the word “Tyre” represents the people living in Tyre. Alternate translation: “People of Tyre, you have said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I am perfect in beauty

The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful.” Alternate translation: “I am perfectly beautiful” or “I am entirely beautiful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [peoples](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [Tyre](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and say to Tyre, who lives within the gates of the sea, merchants of [peoples](#) to many islands, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this to you: [Tyre](#), you have said, ‘I am perfect in beauty.’

## Ezekiel 27:4

### General Information:

“Your” and “you” in these verses refer to Tyre. The city of Tyre is described here and in the following verses as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Your borders

“Your boundaries”

### heart of the seas

“middle of the seas”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [are in the heart](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Your borders [are in the heart](#) of the seas; your builders have perfected your beauty.

## Ezekiel 27:5

### planks

long, flat pieces of wood; thick boards

### a mast

a large pole on a ship that holds up the sails of the ship

### Translation Words - ULT

- a cedar
- from Lebanon

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> They have made all your planks with cypress from Senir; they took a cedar from Lebanon to make a mast for you.

## Ezekiel 27:6

### General Information:

“They” in these verses refers to the builders of Tyre. “Your” refers to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

6 They made your oars from the oaks of [Bashan](#); they made your decks out of cypress wood from Cyprus, and they overlaid them with ivory.

### oars

long pieces of wood with flat blades at one end that people use to make a boat move

### decks

the parts of the boat that people can walk on

### overlaid them

“covered them”

### ivory

a white, beautiful, and hard material that is made from the long teeth of some animals

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Bashan](#)



## Ezekiel 27:7

### sails

large pieces of cloth that move a ship when the wind blows on them

### Your sails were made from colorful linen from Egypt that served as your banner

The sails of the ship are compared to the banners or flags of Tyre.  
(See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- from Egypt
- and purple

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Your sails were made from colorful linen [from Egypt](#) that served as your banner; the colors of blue [and purple](#) from the coasts of Elishah are used for the awning on your boat.

## Ezekiel 27:8

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a beautiful ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Those who were living in Sidon and Arvad were your rowers; the [sages of Tyre](#) were within you; they were your pilots.

### Arvad

This is the name of a small island off the coast of Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### sages of Tyre

“wise men of Tyre”

### pilots

A pilot is a person who controls where a ship goes by steering the ship.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sages](#)
- [of Tyre](#)

## Ezekiel 27:9

### Byblos

This is the name of a city on the Syrian coast. Other versions call it by the name "Gebal." (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Textual Variants](#))

### filled your seams

"repaired your cracks" or "repaired your leaks"

### sailors

A sailor is one of the team of workers on a ship.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Highly experienced](#)
- [filled](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [Highly experienced](#) craftsmen from Byblos [filled](#) your seams; all the ships of the sea and their sailors among you were carrying your merchandise for trade.

## Ezekiel 27:10

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Persia, Lydia ... Libya

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### your men of war

“men who fought in your wars” or “serving as your warriors”

### your splendor

The abstract noun “splendor” can be translated using the adjective “splendid.” Alternate translation: “how splendid you were” or “how majestic you were” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Persia](#)
- [hung](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [Persia](#), Lydia, and Libya were in your army, your men of war. they [hung](#) shield and helmet within you; they showed your splendor.

## Ezekiel 27:11

### Arvad ... Helek ... Gammad

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### They completed your beauty

The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful.” Alternate translation: “They finished making you beautiful” or “They made you perfectly beautiful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The men](#)
- [hung up](#)

### ULT

**11** [The men](#) of Arvad and Helek in your army were on your walls surrounding you, and the people of Gammad were in your towers. They [hung up](#) their shields on your walls all around you! They completed your beauty.

## Ezekiel 27:12

### General Information:

The word “your” in these verses refers to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Silver, iron, tin, and lead

metals that were used during that time period

### your wares

“the things you offered for sale”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Tarshish
- to sell: Silver

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Tarshish was a trading partner with you because of your abundant wealth of goods to sell: Silver, iron, tin, and lead. They bought and sold your wares!

## Ezekiel 27:13

### Javan

This is the name of a coastal region also known as Ionia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### They handled your merchandise

“They traded for your merchandise”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Javan](#)
- [slaves](#)
- [and in items made](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

**13** [Javan](#), Tubal, and Meshech—they traded [slaves and in items made](#) of [bronze](#). They handled your merchandise.

## Ezekiel 27:14

### General Information:

The word “your” in these verses refers to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Beth Togarmah

the name of a place (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### stallions

adult male horses

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Beth](#)
- [provided horses](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [Beth](#) Togarmah [provided horses](#), stallions, and mules as your merchandise.



## Ezekiel 27:15

### Rhodes

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Merchandise was in your hand

Having things in the hands here is probably a metaphor for carrying those things or having them in their possession. Alternate translation: "You owned things that you sold to them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### horn

This refers to the tusks or elongated teeth of certain animals.

### ebony

a dark brown to black hardwood that is very dense or heavy

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The men](#)
- [was in your hand](#)
- [they sent back](#)

### ULT

**15** [The men](#) of Rhodes were your traders on many coasts. Merchandise [was in your hand](#); [they sent back](#) horn, ivory, and ebony as tribute!

## Ezekiel 27:16

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Aram was a dealer

Here “Aram” refers to the people of Aram. Alternate translation: “The people of Aram were dealers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### dealer

“trader”

### emeralds

An emerald is a type of green precious stone.

### purple

Here purple cloth or yarn is referred to by just its color. Alternate translation: “purple cloth” or “purple yarn” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### pearls

beautiful beads of hard white material that come from creatures in the sea

### rubies

A ruby is a type of red precious stone.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [purple, colored](#)

### ULT

**16** Aram was a dealer in your many products; they provided emeralds, [purple, colored](#) cloth, fine fabric, pearls, and rubies as your merchandise.

## Ezekiel 27:17

### Judah and the land of Israel were trading with you

Here “Judah and the land of Israel” refers to the people of those places. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah and Israel were trading with you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Minnith

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### cakes

The meaning of the Hebrew word translated here as “cakes” is uncertain. Other versions may translate it as another type of food.

### balsam

a sweet-smelling gum or resin that comes from a tree

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [and the land](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [honey](#)
- [oil](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> [Judah and the land of Israel](#) were trading with you. They provided wheat from Minnith, cakes, [honey](#), [oil](#), and balsam as your merchandise.

## Ezekiel 27:18

### Helbon ... Zahar

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### enormous wealth

“abundant wealth” or “great wealth”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and of the wine](#)

### ULT

**18** Damascus was a trader of all your products, of all your enormous wealth, [and of the wine](#) of Helbon and the wool of Zahar.

## Ezekiel 27:19

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Dan ... Javan ... Izal

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Dan and Javan

This is a metonym for the people of Dan and Javan. Alternate translation: “The people of Dan and Javan” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### wrought iron

a form of iron that can be shaped with a hammer

### cinnamon

This is a type of spice that comes from the bark of a tree. “Cassia” is another name for this spice. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### calamus

a type of grass that people used as perfume and for medicine (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and Javan](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Dan [and Javan](#) from Izal provided you with merchandise of wrought iron, cinnamon, and calamus. This became merchandise for you.

## Ezekiel 27:20

### Dedan was

This is a metonym for the people of Dedan. Alternate translation: "The people of Dedan were" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### saddle blankets

A saddle blanket is a piece of cloth that people place on a horse beneath a saddle or seat.

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Dedan was your dealer in fine saddle blankets.

## Ezekiel 27:21

### Arabia ... Kedar

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Arabia

This is a metonym for the people of Arabia. Alternate translation: “The people of Arabia” or “The Arabians” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Kedar
- and

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Arabia and all the chiefs of Kedar were traders with you; they provided you with lambs, rams and goats.

## Ezekiel 27:22

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Sheba ... Raamah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### precious gems

“valuable stones”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the best of](#)
- [gold](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The traders of Sheba and Raamah came to sell you [the best of](#) every spice and in all kinds of precious gems; they traded [gold](#) for your merchandise.



## Ezekiel 27:23

### Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad

This refers to the people from these places. Alternate translation: “The people of Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with the people of Sheba, Ashur, and Kilmad” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Haran, Kanneh, and Eden were traders with you, along with Sheba, [Ashur](#), and Kilmad.

### Haran ... Kanneh ... Eden ... Sheba ... Ashur ... Kilmad

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ashur](#)

## Ezekiel 27:24

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### These were your dealers

“They traded with you”

### ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors

“purple robes with many different colors”

### blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth

“blankets with many colors that had designs and were of high quality”

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> These were your dealers in ornate robes of violet cloths with woven colors, and in blankets of multicolored, embroidered, and well-woven cloth in your marketplaces.

## Ezekiel 27:25

### The ships of Tarshish were the transporters of your merchandise

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The ships of Tarshish carried your merchandise” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo

Tyre’s abundance is spoken of as if it was a ship that was full of cargo. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### heart of the seas

“middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Tarshish](#)
- [in the heart](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The ships [of Tarshish](#) were the transporters of your merchandise! So you were filled up, heavily laden with cargo [in the heart](#) of the seas!

## Ezekiel 27:26

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre. The city of Tyre is described here and in the following verses as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre.

### Your rowers

“The people that row you”

### vast seas

“great waters”

### the eastern wind

“the strong wind from the east”

### middle of them

“heart of the seas” or “middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wind](#)
- [in the middle](#)

### ULT

**26** Your rowers have brought you into vast seas; the eastern [wind](#) has broken you [in the middle](#) of them.

## Ezekiel 27:27

### sailors

men who sail boats

### depths of the sea

“heart of the seas” or “middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

### on the day of your destruction

The abstract noun “destruction” can be translated using the verb “destroy.” Alternate translation: “at the time you are destroyed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and ship](#)
- [and all your crew](#)
- [the depths](#)

### ULT

**27** Your wealth, merchandise, and trade goods; your sailors and pilots, [and ship](#) builders; your traders of merchandise and all the men of war who are in you, [and all your crew](#)—they will sink into [the depths](#) of the sea on the day of your destruction.

## Ezekiel 27:28

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Cities at the sea [will tremble](#) at the sound of your pilots' cry;

### Cities at the sea will tremble

Here “Cities at the sea” represents the people in those cities. Alternate translation: “The people of the cities by the sea will tremble” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will tremble](#)

## Ezekiel 27:29

### All those who handle oars

“All the rowers”

### Translation Words - ULT

- stand
- on the land

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> All those who handle oars will come down from their ships; mariners and all the pilots on the sea will stand on the land.

## Ezekiel 27:30

### wail bitterly

“cry out sadly”

**they will cast dust up on their heads. They will roll about in ashes**

These are expressions of grieving and mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then they will make you listen to [their voice and will wail](#) bitterly; they will cast dust up on [their heads](#). They will roll about in ashes.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their voice](#)
- [and will wail](#)
- [their heads](#)



## Ezekiel 27:31

### General Information:

The word “they” in these verses refer to the people mentioned in verses 28 and 29. The words “you” and “your” refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> They will shave [their](#) heads bald for you and bind themselves with [sackcloth](#), and they will weep bitterly over you and they will cry out.

### They will shave their heads bald for you and bind themselves with sackcloth

These are expressions of grieving and mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### bald

having no hair on the head

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their](#)
- [sackcloth](#)

## Ezekiel 27:32

### They will lift up their wails of lamentation

The abstract noun “lamentation” can be translated using the verb “lament.” Alternate translation: “They will cry out and lament” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### sing dirges

“sing funeral songs”

### Who is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea?

This question expects a negative answer and emphasizes Tyre being different from all other cities. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: “No other city is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### who has now been brought to silence

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “who its enemies have now silenced” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> They will lift up their wails of lamentation for you and sing dirges over you, Who is like Tyre, who has now been brought to silence in the middle of the sea?

## Ezekiel 27:33

### When your merchandise went ashore

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "When people brought your merchandise ashore" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ashore

"onto the land"

### you enriched the kings of the earth

"you made the kings of the earth rich"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [peoples](#)
- [the kings](#)
- [of the earth](#)

#### ULT

**33** When your merchandise went ashore from the sea, it satisfied many [peoples](#); you enriched [the kings of the earth](#) with your great wealth and merchandise!

## Ezekiel 27:34

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Tyre.

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Tyre. The city of Tyre continues to be described as if it were a wrecked ship. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters, your merchandise and all your [crew](#) sank!

### when you were shattered by the seas, by deep waters

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “when the seas, the deep waters, shattered you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### shattered

To “shatter” is to break up into pieces.

### crew

team of workers

### Translation Words - ULT

- [crew](#)

**Ezekiel 27:35****were appalled at you**

“were shocked and terrified by what happened to you”

**their kings shuddered in horror**

The abstract noun “horror” can be translated using the adverb “fearfully.” Alternate translation: “their kings shuddered fearfully” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**shuddered**

“shook, trembled with fear”

**Their faces trembled**

Here “faces” represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “They appear to be trembling” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [in horror](#)
- [Their faces](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> All the inhabitants of the coasts were appalled at you, and their kings shuddered [in horror](#)! [Their faces](#) trembled!

## Ezekiel 27:36

### hiss at you

Hissing was making a whistling sound through the teeth. It may have been out of dismay, grief, or surprise. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### you have become a horror

The abstract noun “horror” can be translated using the adjective “dreadful.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you have become dreadful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> The merchants [of the people](#) hiss at you; you have become a horror, and you will be no more forever.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the people](#)

## Ezekiel 28

### Ezekiel 28 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Tyre concludes in this chapter. Tyre will be destroyed because of its pride and unfair business practices. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Ezekiel 28:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,



## Ezekiel 28:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### Your heart is arrogant

Here “heart” represents the will or thoughts of the ruler of Tyre. Alternate translation: “You are arrogant” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### arrogant

falsely believing oneself to be importantbelieving oneself to be important

### I will sit in the seat of the gods

“I will sit on the throne of the gods.” Here sitting in the seat of the gods represents claiming to be in the same exalted position as if he were one of the gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### heart of the seas

“middle of the seas.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:4](#).

### you make your heart like the heart of a god

Here “heart” represents the mind or thinking. A god thinks of himself as better than people. Alternate translation: “you think that you have the mind of a god” or “you have allowed yourself to think that you are better than other people” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [are a man](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [Your heart](#)
- [in the heart](#)
- [your heart like](#)
- [a god](#)
- [the gods](#)

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), say to the ruler of [Tyre](#), ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [Your heart](#) is arrogant! You have said, “I am [a god](#)! I will sit in the seat of [the gods in the heart](#) of the seas!” Even though you [are a man](#) and not a god, you make [your heart like](#) the heart of a god;

## Ezekiel 28:3

### you think that you are wiser than Daniel

Here the ruler of Tyre compares himself to Daniel the prophet in how wise he thought he was. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you are wiser

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> you think that you are wiser than Daniel, and that no secret amazes you!

## Ezekiel 28:4

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the ruler of Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You have made yourself **wealthy with** wisdom and skill, **and obtained gold and silver** in your treasuries!

### You have made yourself wealthy with wisdom and skill

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “skill” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “skillful.” Alternate translation: “You have become wealthy by your own wisdom and skill” or “You have become wealthy by being wise and skillful” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### obtained gold and silver

“stored up gold and silver”

### treasuries

places to store valuable objects and keep them safe

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wealthy with](#)
- [and obtained gold](#)
- [and silver](#)

## Ezekiel 28:5

**By great wisdom and by your trading, you have multiplied your wealth, so your heart is arrogant because of your wealth**

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “wealth” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “wealthy.” Alternate translation: “By being very wise and by your trading, you have become more and more wealthy, so your heart is arrogant because of how wealthy you are” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**your heart is arrogant**

Here “heart” represents the will or thoughts of the ruler of Tyre. Alternate translation: “you are arrogant” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you have multiplied your wealth](#)
- [so your heart](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> By great wisdom and by your trading, [you have multiplied your wealth](#), so [your heart](#) is arrogant because of your wealth.

## Ezekiel 28:6

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the ruler of Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre.

### you have made your heart like the heart of a god

Here “heart” represents the mind or thinking. A god thinks of himself as better than people. See how you translated the similar phrase in [Ezekiel 28:2](#). (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [like the heart](#)
- [of a god](#)

#### ULT

6 Therefore, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this:  
Because you have made your heart [like the heart of a god](#),

## Ezekiel 28:7

### the beauty of your wisdom

The abstract nouns “beauty” and “wisdom” can be translated using the adjective “beautiful” and the adverb “wisely.” Alternate translation: “the beautiful things that you have so wisely made” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### profane your splendor

The abstract noun “splendor” can be translated using the adjective “splendid.” Alternate translation: “profane how splendid you are” or “defile how majestic you are” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nations](#)
- [They will bring their swords](#)
- [and they will profane](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> I will therefore bring foreigners against you, terrifying men from other [nations](#). [They will bring their swords](#) against the beauty of your wisdom, [and they will profane](#) your splendor.

## Ezekiel 28:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the ruler of Tyre. The word “They” refers to foreign armies. The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

### down to the pit

Here “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Alternate translation: “down to the grave” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in the heart of the seas

“in the middle of the seas”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and you will die](#)
- [in the heart](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They will send you down to the pit, [and you will die](#) the death of those who die [in the heart](#) of the seas.

## Ezekiel 28:9

### Will you truly say, “I am a god” to the face of one who kills you?

This question expects a negative answer to emphasize the irony when one who claims to be a god is destroyed by men. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You will not say ‘I am a god’ to the face of one who kills you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Will you truly say, “I am a [god](#)” to the face of [one who kills you](#)? You are a [man](#) and not God, and you will be in [the hand](#) of the one who pierces you.

### to the face of

Here the face represents being in the presence of another person. Alternate translation: “in the presence of” or “before” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### in the hand of

Here being in the hand of someone represents being under their control. Alternate translation: “under the control of” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a god](#)
- [one who kills you](#)
- [a man](#)
- [the hand](#)



## Ezekiel 28:10

### by the hand of foreigners

Here “hand” is a metonym for the actions of the foreigners’ army.  
Alternate translation: “by an army of foreigners” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

#### ULT

**10** You will die the death of [the uncircumcised by the hand](#) of foreigners, for I have declared it—this is [the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the uncircumcised](#)
- [by the hand](#)
- [the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 28:11

### The word of Yahweh came again to me, saying,

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came again to” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated similar words in [Ezekiel 18:1](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to me a second time. He said,” or “Yahweh spoke this second message to me:” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> The word of Yahweh came again to me, saying,

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 28:12

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### lift up

“sing”

### You were the model of perfection

The abstract nouns “model” and “perfection” can be translated using the words “completely” and “perfect.” Alternate translation: “You were completely perfect” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### full of wisdom and perfect in beauty

The abstract nouns “wisdom” and “beauty” can be translated using the adjectives “wise” and “beautiful.” Alternate translation: “fully wise and perfectly beautiful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Tyre](#)
- [The Lord](#)

### ULT

**12** “[Son of man](#), lift up a lament for [the king of Tyre](#) and say to him, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.

## Ezekiel 28:13

### Every precious stone covered you

“You wore every kind of precious stone”

### **ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl**

These are all precious stones of different colors. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### **settings and mountings**

pieces of metal that hold the precious stones

### **It was on the day you were created that they were prepared**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I prepared them on the day that I created you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **prepared**

“made ready”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [of God](#)
- [gold](#)

#### **ULT**

**13** You were in Eden, the garden of God. Every precious stone covered you: ruby, topaz, emerald, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and beryl. Your settings and mountings were made from gold. It was on the day you were created that they were prepared.

## Ezekiel 28:14

### General Information:

The word “you” in these verses refers to the king of Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

### cherub

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:9](#).

### the fiery stones

“the stones of fire.” This could mean: (1) a metaphor for the colorful and bright stones mentioned in [Ezekiel 28:13](#) or (2) other fiery stones on the “holy mountain of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the holy](#)
- [of God](#)
- [as the cherub](#)
- [the midst of the fiery](#)
- [where you walked about](#)

### ULT

**14** I placed you [on the holy](#) mountain of [God as the cherub](#) I anointed to guard mankind. You were in [the midst of the fiery](#) stones [where you walked about](#).

## Ezekiel 28:15

**from the day you were created until injustice was found within you**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “since the day that I created you until I found injustice within you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> You had integrity in your ways from the day you were created until injustice was found within you.

## Ezekiel 28:16

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

### great trade

“large volume of trade”

### you were filled with violence

Yahweh speaks of the king of Tyre as if he were a container that was filled up with violence. The king is a synecdoche for himself and his people. The abstract noun “violence” can be translated using the adjective “violent.” Alternate translation: “you and your people became completely violent” or “you and your people were completely violent” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### guardian cherub

“guarding cherub”

### the fiery stones

“the stones of fire.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 28:14](#). This could mean: (1) a metaphor for the colorful and bright stones mentioned in [Ezekiel 28:13](#) or (2) other fiery stones on the “holy mountain of God.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and so you sinned](#)
- [So I threw you out of the](#)
- [of God](#)
- [as one who was defiled, and I destroyed](#)
- [cherub](#)
- [the fiery](#)

### ULT

**16** Through your great trade you were filled with violence, [and so you sinned](#). [So I threw you out of the](#) mountain of God, [as one who was defiled](#), and I [destroyed](#) you, guardian [cherub](#), and drove you from among [the fiery](#) stones.

## Ezekiel 28:17

### Your heart was arrogant

Here the “heart” represents the whole person, emphasizing the person’s thoughts. Alternate translation: “You were arrogant” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### arrogant

falsely believing oneself to be important believing oneself to be important

### Your heart was arrogant with your beauty; you ruined your wisdom because of your splendor

The abstract nouns “beauty,” “wisdom” and “splendor” can be translated using the adjectives “beautiful,” “wise” and “splendid.” Alternate translation: “Your heart was arrogant because you were beautiful; you became unwise because you were so splendid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### before kings

“in front of kings “

### so they may see you

“so they may look at you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Your heart](#)
- [earth](#)
- [kings](#)

#### ULT

17 [Your heart](#) was arrogant with your beauty; you ruined your wisdom because of your splendor. I have sent you down to the [earth](#). I have placed you before [kings](#) so they may see you.



## Ezekiel 28:18

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to the king of Tyre.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the king of Tyre.

### it will consume you

“it will devour you.” The fire is spoken of here as if it was eating him up. Alternate translation: “it will burn you up” (See: [Idiom](#))

### turn you into ashes

This idiom means burning up until only ashes are left. Alternate translation: “burn you up to ashes” or “burn you up completely” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of your many sins](#)
- [your holy places](#)
- [fire](#)
- [come out from you](#)
- [will consume you](#)
- [the earth](#)

### ULT

**18** Because [of your many sins](#) and your dishonest trade, you have defiled [your holy places](#). So I have made [fire come out from you](#); it [will consume you](#). I will turn you into ashes on [the earth](#) in the sight of all who look at you.

## Ezekiel 28:19

### shudder

shake or tremble with fear

### you will be no more forever

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:36](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the ones who knew you](#)
- [among the peoples](#)
- [will shudder](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> All [the ones who knew you among the peoples will shudder](#) at you; they will be horrified, and you will be no more forever.”

## Ezekiel 28:20

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 28:21

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

21 “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) against Sidon [and prophesy](#) against her.”

### set your face against Sidon

Sidon was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but staring in that direction would be a symbol of harming the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). Alternate translation: “Turn toward Sidon and stare” or “stare toward Sidon so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### prophesy against

“prophesy about the bad things that will happen to.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 4:7](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [and prophesy](#)

## Ezekiel 28:22

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### I will be glorified in your midst

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will reveal my glory among you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### when I execute justice within you

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated using the verb “judge.” Alternate translation: “when I judge you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I will be shown to be holy in you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will use you to show you that I am holy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [so your people will know that](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)
- [I will be shown to be holy](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Say, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Sidon! For I will be glorified in your midst [so your people will know that I am Yahweh](#) when I execute justice within you. [I will be shown to be holy](#) in you.’

## Ezekiel 28:23

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in these verses refer to Sidon.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Sidon.

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> I will send out a plague in you and blood in your streets, and the slain **will fall** in your midst. When **the sword** comes against you from all around, **then you will know** that I am **Yahweh**.

### blood in your streets

Here “blood” refers to the blood of the people of Sidon and represents those whom their enemies would kill. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the slain will fall

Here “the slain” means the people of Sidon whom their enemies would kill. Alternate translation: “the slain people will fall” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### When the sword comes against you

Here “sword” is a metonym for an attacking enemy army. Alternate translation: “When enemy armies attack you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will fall](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [then you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 28:24

### pricking briars and painful thorns for the house of Israel from all those around her who despise her people

Here the briars and thorns represent what would cause suffering and pain. Alternate translation: “people anywhere around the house of Israel who wound them like briars, hurt them like thorns, and despise them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel’s descendants. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [they will know](#)
- [am the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then there will no longer be pricking briars and painful thorns [for the house of Israel](#) from all those around her who despise her people, so [they will know](#) that I [am the Lord](#) Yahweh!’

## Ezekiel 28:25

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel’s descendants. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### among whom they were scattered

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “among whom I scattered them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### so the nations may see

“in such a way as the nations will see it”

### my servant Jacob

Here “Jacob” represents the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “the descendants of my servant Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the peoples](#)
- [when I am set apart](#)
- [so the nations may see](#)
- [to my servant](#)
- [Jacob](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘When I gather [the house of Israel](#) from [the peoples](#) among whom they were scattered, and [when I am set apart](#) among them, [so the nations may see](#), then they will make their homes in the land I will give [to my servant Jacob](#).’



**Ezekiel 28:26****within her**

“in the land”

**when I execute justice on all**

The abstract noun “justice” can be translated using the verb “judge.”  
Alternate translation: “when I judge all” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [houses](#)
- [vineyards](#)
- [they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their God](#)

**ULT**

**26** Then they will live securely within her and build [houses](#), plant [vineyards](#), and live securely when I execute justice on all the ones who now despise them from all around; so [they will know](#) that I am [Yahweh their God!](#)”

## Ezekiel 29

### Ezekiel 29 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a prophecy against Egypt and its king, Pharaoh. Because Egypt did not fulfill its promise of protecting Judah, it will be conquered by Babylon. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

## Ezekiel 29:1

### In the tenth year

It can be stated clearly that this was the tenth year of Jehoiachin's exile. Alternate translation: "In the tenth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the tenth year, in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### in the tenth month on the twelfth day of the month

"on the twelfth day of the tenth month." This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twelfth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 29:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) against Pharaoh, [the king of Egypt](#); [prophesy](#) against him and against all [of Egypt](#).”

### set your face against Pharaoh

This is a command to stare at Pharaoh as a symbol of punishing him and his people. Pharaoh was far away, so Ezekiel could not see him, but staring in his direction would be a symbol of harming him and his people. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). Alternate translation: “turn toward Pharaoh and stare” or “stare toward Pharaoh so that he and his people will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### prophesy against him and against all of Egypt

“tell the terrible things that will happen to him and everyone in Egypt”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [prophesy](#)

## Ezekiel 29:3

### the great sea monster

“the huge creature that lives in the water.” Yahweh calls Pharaoh a monster that lives in the water. The monster is probably a crocodile. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [king](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Declare and say, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Pharaoh, [king of Egypt](#). You, the great sea monster that lurks in the midst of the river, that says, “My river is my own. I have made it for myself.”

## Ezekiel 29:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh, speaking of him as though he were a monster in the water and the people of Egypt were fish. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

### hooks

sharp and bent pieces of metal or wood that people use to catch fish and other animals in the water

### scales

hard pieces of skin that are on fish, crocodiles, and other animals

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For I will place hooks in your jaw, and the fish of your Nile will cling to your scales; I will lift you up from the middle of your river along with all the fish of the river that cling to your scales.

## Ezekiel 29:5

### you will not be gathered nor lifted up

This can be stated in active form. The implication is that they would die in the wilderness. Alternate translation: “no one will gather you or pick you up” or “no one will gather your bodies and bury you” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from](#)
- [be gathered](#)
- [of the earth](#)
- [of the heavens](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> I will throw you down into the wilderness, you and all the fish [from](#) your river. You will fall on the open field; you will not [be gathered](#) nor lifted up. I will give you as food to the living things [of the earth](#) and to the birds [of the heavens](#).

## Ezekiel 29:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then all the inhabitants of Egypt will know that I am Yahweh, because they have been a reed stalk to the house of Israel.

### they have been a reed stalk

The word “they” refers to the inhabitants of Egypt. A reed stalk is unreliable because it is easily broken. Yahweh speaks of them as a reed stalk because the people of Israel relied on the Egyptians to help them in war, but the Egyptians did not help them. Alternate translation: “they have been as unreliable as a reed stalk” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### reed

a plant that grows near water and looks like very large grass

### stalk

the part of a reed that is long and like a thick stick. People can use them like sticks, but the stalks of reeds are not as strong as wood and can break suddenly.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Egypt](#)
- [will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)



## Ezekiel 29:7

### When they took hold of you in their hand

God speaks of Israel relying on Egypt as if they were taking hold of a reed stalk in order to use it as a crutch. Alternate translation: "When they relied on you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### When they took hold of you

The word "they" refers to the Israelites and the word "you" refers to Pharaoh or Pharaoh and Egypt.

### you caused their legs to be unsteady

Because Egypt did not help the Israelites, the Israelites could not defend themselves against their enemy, the Babylonians. God speaks of the Israelites being unable to defend themselves as if their legs were unsteady. Alternate translation: "you caused them to be like people whose legs are unsteady" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When they took hold of you in their hand, you broke and tore open their shoulder; and when they leaned on you, you were broken, and you caused their legs to be unsteady.

## Ezekiel 29:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” This word adds emphasis to what is said next.

This is the Lord’s message to Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### I will bring a sword against you

Here “sword” is a metonym for battle, and “bring a sword against you” is a metaphor for causing an enemy army to come fight against Egypt. Alternate translation: “I will cause your enemies to come fight against you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### a sword against you

The word “you” refers to the nation of Egypt. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### I will cut off both man and beast from you

Here “cut off man and beast” is a metaphor for destroying the people and animals. God would do this by causing the enemy army to do it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [a sword](#)
- [I will cut off](#)
- [both man](#)
- [and beast](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this:  
Behold! I will bring [a sword](#) against you.  
[I will cut off both man and beast](#) from  
you.

## Ezekiel 29:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- So the land
- of Egypt
- desolate
- Then they will know that
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So the land of Egypt will become desolate and a ruin. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, because the sea monster had said, "The river is mine, for I have made it."

## Ezekiel 29:10

### I am against you and against your river

The word “you” refers to Pharaoh. God speaks to Pharaoh as if Pharaoh were a monster in the river.

### I will give the land of Egypt over to desolation and waste

“I will put Egypt into the power of desolation and waste.” Desolation and waste are spoken of as if they were people who could be given power over Egypt. Alternate translation: “I will cause Egypt to become a desolate waste” (See: [Personification](#))

### you will become a wasteland

Here “you” refers to Pharaoh and represents Egypt, the country he rules over. Alternate translation: “your country will become a wasteland” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### from the Migdol to Syene and the borders of Cush

This refers to all of Egypt. Where these places are can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “throughout all of Egypt, from Migdol in the north to Syene in the south and the borders of Cush further south” (See: [Merism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Migdol

This is the name of a place in the far northern part of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Syene

This the name of a town in southern Egypt. It is now called Aswan. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the borders of Cush

These borders of Cush were south of Syene. Some versions say Sudan or Ethiopia, the modern names of countries south of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [a wasteland](#)
- [of Cush](#)

#### ULT

**10** Therefore, behold! I am against you and against your river, so I will give [the land of Egypt](#) over to desolation and waste, and you will become [a wasteland](#) from the Migdol to Syene and the borders [of Cush](#).

## Ezekiel 29:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

### No man's foot will pass through it

Here "man's foot" represents people. Alternate translation: "No man will walk through the land of Egypt" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### no wild animal's foot will pass through it

Here "animal's foot" represents animals. Alternate translation: "not even a wild animal will walk through it" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [man's](#)
- [wild animal's](#)

### ULT

**11** No [man's](#) foot will pass through it, and no [wild animal's](#) foot will pass through it. It will not be inhabited for forty years.

## Ezekiel 29:12

### For I will make the land of Egypt a desolation

The abstract noun “desolation” can be expressed with the adjective “desolate.” Alternate translation: “For I will make the land of Egypt desolate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I will scatter Egypt among the nations

Here “Egypt” represents the people of Egypt, and “scatter” represents causing them to move to other places. Alternate translation: “I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations” or “I will make the people of Egypt go and live among the nations” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For I will make [the land of Egypt a desolation](#) in the midst of [uninhabited lands](#), and its cities in the midst of wasted cities will become [a desolation](#) for forty years; then I will scatter [Egypt among the nations](#), and I will disperse them through the lands.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [lands](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [a desolation](#)
- [a desolation](#)
- [of uninhabited](#)
- [among the nations](#)

## Ezekiel 29:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

### I will gather Egypt

Here “Egypt” is a metonym for the people of Egypt, and “gather” is a metaphor for causing them to return to Egypt. Alternate translation: “I will cause the people of Egypt to return to Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**13** For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: At the end of forty years I will gather [Egypt](#) from the [peoples](#) among whom they were scattered.

### among whom they were scattered

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “among whom I scattered them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [peoples](#)

## Ezekiel 29:14

### I will restore the fortunes of Egypt

The phrase “fortunes of Egypt” is a metaphor for the people of Egypt who had been taken away to other countries. Alternate translation: “I will bring back the people of Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the region of Pathros

the southern part of Egypt between the Delta and the land of Cush. This is also called Upper Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a lowly kingdom

Here “lowly” represents unimportant. Alternate translation: “an unimportant kingdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will restore](#)
- [bring them back](#)
- [fortunes](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [of](#)
- [to the land](#)
- [kingdom](#)

### ULT

**14** I will restore the [fortunes of Egypt](#) and [bring them back](#) to the region of Pathros, [to the land](#) of their origin. Then they will be a lowly [kingdom](#) there.



## Ezekiel 29:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Pharaoh.

### the lowliest of the kingdoms

Here “lowliest” represents least important. Alternate translation: “the least important of the kingdoms” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### it will not be lifted up any more among the nations

Here “be lifted up” represents becoming important. Alternate translation: “it will not become important again among the nations” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will diminish them

“I will make them small.” Here “diminish them” represents making Egypt weak or unimportant. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [among the nations](#)
- [nations](#)

### ULT

**15** It will be the lowliest of the kingdoms, and it will not be lifted up any more [among the nations](#). I will diminish them so they will no longer rule over [nations](#).

## Ezekiel 29:16

### The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence for the house of Israel

The abstract noun “confidence” can be translated with the verbs “trust” or “rely on.” Alternate translation: “The house of Israel will no longer trust in the Egyptians” or “The house of Israel will no longer rely on the Egyptians” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the house of Israel

Here “house” represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they will be a reminder of the iniquity that Israel committed

How Egypt would be a reminder can be stated clearly. The abstract nouns “reminder” and “iniquity” can be expressed with the verbs “remember” and “sin.” Alternate translation: “when Israel sees what I do to Egypt, Israel will remember how Israel sinned” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### when they turned to Egypt for help

Here “turn ... for help” is a metonym for “ask ... for help.” Alternate translation: “whenever they asked Egypt to help them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the iniquity](#)
- [Then they will know that](#)
- [am the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> The Egyptians will no longer be a reason for confidence [for the house of Israel](#). Instead, they will be a reminder of [the iniquity](#) that Israel committed when they turned to Egypt for help. [Then they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.](#)”

## Ezekiel 29:17

### it came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### in the twenty-seventh year

This was after King Jehoiachin and the people of Judah were taken as exiles to Babylon. Alternate translation: “in the twenty-seventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### on the first of the first month

“on the first day of the first month.” This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the beginning of April. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

**17** Then it came about in the twenty-seventh year on the first day of the first month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 29:18

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### to do hard work against Tyre

The kind of hard work they did can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “to work hard at attacking Tyre” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Every head ... every shoulder

This refers to the heads and shoulders of the Babylonian soldiers.

### Every head was rubbed until it was made bald

Either their helmets or the heavy things they carried on their heads rubbed the hair off their heads.

### every shoulder was made raw

Either their armor or the heavy things they carried on their shoulders rubbed the skin off their shoulders. Alternate translation: “every shoulder was rubbed raw” or “every shoulder was rubbed bare”

### he and his army received no payment from Tyre

Here “payment” represents the valuable things that Nebuchadnezzar’s army would steal from Tyre as a reward for defeating it. God speaks of these things as if they were what God would pay them for working for him. Alternate translation: “he and his army did not get any valuable things from Tyre as reward” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [stationed](#)
- [he carried out](#)
- [army](#)
- [against Tyre](#)
- [head](#)

### ULT

**18** “[Son of man](#), [Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon](#) [stationed](#) his [army](#) to do hard work [against Tyre](#). Every [head](#) was rubbed until it was made bald, and every shoulder was made raw. Yet he and his army received no payment from Tyre for the hard work that [he carried out](#) against it.

## Ezekiel 29:19

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” This word adds emphasis to what is said next.  
Alternate translation: “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon

Yahweh speaks of causing the army of Babylon to defeat Egypt as if God were giving Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar. Alternate translation: “I will cause the army of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, to defeat Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### that will be his army’s wages

God speaks of these things that Nebuchadnezzar’s army would take as if they were what God would pay them for working for him. Alternate translation: “his army will receive those things as if they were payment” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [the land](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)

### ULT

**19** Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, ‘Behold! I am giving [the land of Egypt](#) to Nebuchadnezzar [the king of Babylon](#), and he will take away its wealth, plunder its possessions, and carry off all he finds there; that will be his army’s wages.’

## Ezekiel 29:20

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> I have given him [the land of Egypt](#) as the wages [for the work](#) they did for me —this [is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [for the work](#)
- [is the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 29:21

### I will make a horn sprout up for the house of Israel

An animal horn represents the animal's strength, so horn is a metonym for strength. God speaks of making Israel strong as if Israel were an animal, and he were to cause its horn to grow. Alternate translation: "I will make the people of Israel strong" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. Here it refers to the people of Israel, the descendants of Jacob whom God called Israel. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### speak in their midst

"speak to them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [will know that](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> On that day I will make a horn sprout up [for the house of Israel](#), and I make you speak in their midst, so that they [will know that I am Yahweh.](#)"

## Ezekiel 30

### Ezekiel 30 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. Babylon will destroy all the towns of Egypt and their allies will not be able to help them. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))



## Ezekiel 30:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel tells about a message that Yahweh gave him.

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 30:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “[Son of man](#), prophesy and say, ‘[The Lord Yahweh](#) says this: Wail, “Woe is the coming day.”

### Wail

cry out with grief

### Woe is the coming day

This exclamation expresses the fear that people would feel about a certain day when terrible and frightening things will happen. Alternate translation: “Oh that day” or “Oh, what a frightening day is coming” (See: [Exclamations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [The Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 30:3

### The day is near

“That day is soon” or “It will soon be that day”

### The day is near for Yahweh

It is implied that on that day, Yahweh will punish people. Alternate translation: “It will soon be the day when Yahweh will punish you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a day of clouds

Dark storm clouds represent danger and fear. Alternate translation: “It will be like a day with dark clouds” or “It will be frightening like a day with dark clouds” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a time of doom for nations

The abstract noun “doom” can be translated with the phrase “terrible things will happen.” Alternate translation: “a time when terrible things will happen to the nations” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [of doom for nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The day is near. The day is near for [Yahweh](#). It will be a day of clouds, a time of doom for nations.

## Ezekiel 30:4

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

### Then a sword will come against Egypt

The word "sword" here represents war or an army that attacks. Alternate translation: "There will be war against Egypt" or "An enemy army will attack Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### there will be anguish in Cush

The abstract noun "anguish" can be expressed in terms of how the people feel. Alternate translation: "the people of Cush will be very sad" or "the people of Cush will suffer" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### when they take her wealth

"when the attackers take away the wealth of Egypt"

### when her foundations are ruined

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the attackers destroy the foundations of the buildings in Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then a sword](#)
- [against Egypt](#)
- [in Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then a sword will come against Egypt, and there will be anguish in Cush when the killed people fall in Egypt— when they take her wealth, and when her foundations are ruined.

## Ezekiel 30:5

### Cush and Put, Lydia and all Arabia, and Libya

These names refer to the people of these countries. Alternate translation: “The people of Cush and Put, Libya, and all Arabia, and Lydia” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Libya

Libya is a country west of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Lydia

This probably refers to the kingdom of Lydia which was in what is now Turkey.

### will all fall by the sword

Here the sword represents battle. Alternate translation: “will all die in battle” or “will all die in the war” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will all fall by the sword

The word “all” here is a generalization. It means that many people will die. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cush](#)
- [together with the people](#)
- [belonging](#)
- [the covenant](#)
- [by the sword](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [Cush](#) and Put, Lydia and all Arabia, and Libya, [together with the people belonging to the covenant](#)—they will all fall by the sword.

## Ezekiel 30:6

### Yahweh says this

“This is what Yahweh says.” This sentence introduces what the Lord would say.

### So the ones

“In this way, the peoples” or “In this manner, the nations”

### who support Egypt

“who help Egypt”

### will fall

“will die” or “come to ruin”

### the pride of her strength will go down

This represents Egypt no longer being proud of their strength. The reason that they will not be proud is that they will no longer be strong. Alternate translation: “Egypt will no longer be proud about being strong” or “Egypt will no longer have the strength that they were so proud of” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### From Migdol to Syene

Ezekiel names towns on the borders of Egypt in order to refer to all of Egypt. Alternate translation: “In all of Egypt” or “From the northern border of Egypt to the southern border of Egypt” (See: [Merism](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [will fall](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [Yahweh](#) says this: So the ones who support [Egypt will fall](#), and the pride of her strength will go down. From Migdol to Syene their soldiers will fall [by the sword](#)—[this is the Lord](#) [Yahweh’s](#) declaration.

## Ezekiel 30:7

### They will be appalled in the midst of the abandoned lands

“The soldiers of the allies of Egypt will be appalled when they are left surrounded by nothing but abandoned lands”

### in the midst of

“among” or “surrounded by”

### their cities will be among all the ruined cities

Being “among” the ruined cities represents being ruined like the ruined cities of other countries. Alternate translation: “their cities will be ruined like the cities of other countries” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the abandoned](#)
- [lands](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> They will be appalled in the midst of [the abandoned lands](#), and their cities will be among all the ruined cities.

## Ezekiel 30:8

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

### Then they

This could mean: (1) "Then people" or (2) "Then the Egyptians."

### they will know that I am Yahweh

Yahweh is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated as similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: "they will understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God" or "they will realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### when I set fire in Egypt

Here "set fire in Egypt" represents sending an army to attack Egypt and set fires. Alternate translation: "when I send an army to burn Egypt with fire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### all of her helpers are destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I destroy all of the allies of Egypt" or "when armies destroy all of those who help Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire](#)
- [in Egypt](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I set fire in Egypt, and when all of her helpers are destroyed.



## Ezekiel 30:9

### messengers will go out from before me in ships to terrorize a secure Cush

Messengers will bring the news of Egypt's destruction to Cush, who will be frightened by the news.

### to terrorize a secure Cush

"in order to frighten Cush, who now feels safe from danger"

### there will be anguish among them on the day of Egypt's doom

The abstract noun "anguish" and "doom" can be translated with the words "suffer" and "punish." Alternate translation: "the people of Cush will also suffer when I punish Egypt" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### behold!

The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. It can also be translated as "indeed!"

### It is coming

"It" refers to the "great pain" or "great sorrow" that Cush will have when they are punished along with Egypt.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [messengers](#)
- [will go out](#)
- [Cush](#)
- [of Egypt's doom](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> In that day [messengers will go out](#) from before me in ships to terrorize a secure [Cush](#), and there will be anguish among them on the day [of Egypt's doom](#). For behold! It is coming.

## Ezekiel 30:10

### The Lord Yahweh says this

The word “this” refers to what follows. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:5](#).

### I will make an end of the multitudes of Egypt

“I will make it so that Egypt will no longer have many people.”

### by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar

Here “the hand” represents Nebuchadnezzar’s military power. Nebuchadnezzar will be the one who brings this punishment about.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [by the hand](#)
- [of Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)

#### ULT

**10** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I will make an end of the multitudes [of Egypt](#) [by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar](#), the [king of Babylon](#).

## Ezekiel 30:11

### He and his army with him ... will be brought to destroy the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bring Nebuchadnezzar and his army ... to destroy the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### He and his army ... will be brought to destroy the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will cause him and his army ... to go destroy the land of Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### He and his army with him, the terror of nations

Yahweh calls Nebuchadnezzar "the terror of the nations" because all of the nations are greatly afraid of his army. Alternate translation: "He and his army with him, the one who terrifies many nations" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### they will draw out their swords against Egypt

Here "draw out their swords" represents fighting with their swords. Alternate translation: "they will use their swords and fight against Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### fill the land with those who have been killed

This is an exaggeration to show that the Babylonians will kill very many Egyptians. There will be so many dead Egyptians that it will seem that their dead bodies cover all of the land of Egypt. Alternate translation: "kill so many people that it will seem like dead bodies are everywhere" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the](#)
- [of nations](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the land](#)
- [their swords](#)
- [Egypt](#)

## ULT

<sup>11</sup> He and his army with him, [the terror of nations](#), will be brought to destroy [the land](#); they will draw out [their swords](#) against [Egypt](#) and fill [the land](#) with those who have been killed.

## Ezekiel 30:12

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

### I will make the rivers into dry ground

"I will dry up the rivers of Egypt"

### I will sell the land into the hand of wicked men

Yahweh will give the Babylonians control over Egypt just as a person who sells something gives the one who buys it control over that thing. Alternate translation: "I will give control of the land to wicked men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### its fullness

"everything in the land"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [I will make the land](#)
- [into the hand](#)
- [by the hand \(2\)](#)
- [of wicked men](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I will make the rivers into dry ground, and I will sell [the land into the hand of wicked men](#). I will make the land and its fullness desolate [by the hand](#) of strangers—I, [Yahweh](#), have spoken.

## Ezekiel 30:13

### The Lord Yahweh says this

The word “this” refers to what follows. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:5](#).

### I will bring an end to the worthless idols

“I will destroy the worthless idols”

### Memphis

Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. It was near modern-day Cairo. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a prince in the land of Egypt

“an important ruler in the land of Egypt”

### I will put terror on the land of Egypt

Here “put terror on the land” represents causing the people of the land to be very afraid. Alternate translation: “I will make the people of Egypt very afraid” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [I will destroy](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [terror](#)

#### ULT

**13** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [I will destroy](#) idols, and I will bring an end to the worthless idols of Memphis. There will no longer be a prince in the land of [Egypt](#), and I will put [terror](#) on the land of [Egypt](#).

## Ezekiel 30:14

### Pathros

This was a region in southern Egypt.

### set fire in Zoan

“I will burn Zoan with fire”

### Zoan

Zoan was another important city in Egypt.

### I will execute acts of judgment on Thebes

The phrase “acts of judgment” refers to punishment. Alternate translation: “I will punish Thebes” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Thebes

This was the capital city of southern Egypt.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)

### ULT

**14** Then I will make Pathros desolate and set [fire](#) in Zoan, and I will execute acts of judgment on Thebes.

## Ezekiel 30:15

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

### For I will pour out my fury on Pelusium

Here "pour out my fury" represents punishing the people because of his great anger. Alternate translation: "For I will act in great anger against Pelusium" or "Because I am so angry, I will punish Pelusium severely" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Pelusium

Pelusium is the name of a fortress in northern Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### cut off the multitude of Thebes

Here "cut off" represents killing the people. Alternate translation: "kill the very large number of people in Thebes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Thebes

This was the capital city of southern Egypt. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my fury](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For I will pour out [my fury](#) on Pelusium, the stronghold [of Egypt](#), and [cut off](#) the multitude of Thebes.

## Ezekiel 30:16

### Then I will set fire in Egypt

Here “set fire” is an idiom meaning “start a fire.” Alternate translation: “I will start a fire in Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Pelusium will be in great agony

Here “Pelusium” is a metonym for the people of the city near Pelusium, and “be in great agony” can be translated with the verb “suffer.” Alternate translation: “The people of Pelusium will suffer terribly” or “The people of Pelusium will feel terrible pain” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Thebes will be broken up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “enemies will break up the walls and buildings in Thebes” or “enemies will destroy the Thebes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Memphis will face enemies every day

Here “face enemies” represents seeing or having enemies. The name of the city is a metonym for the people who live in the city. Alternate translation: “The people of Memphis will have enemies every day” or “Enemies will fight against the people of Memphis every day” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Memphis

Memphis was a very important city in Egypt. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 30:13](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [in Egypt](#)
- [will face enemies](#)

#### ULT

**16** Then I will set [fire in Egypt](#); Pelusium will be in great agony, Thebes will be broken up, and Memphis [will face enemies](#) every day.



## Ezekiel 30:17

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words about Egypt.

### Heliopolis and Bubastis

These were cities in northern Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### will fall by the sword

The word "sword" is used here to refer to a battle or war. Alternate translation: "will die in battle" or "will die in the war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### their cities will go into captivity

Here "cities" represents the people of the cities. The abstract noun "captivity" can be expressed with the more concrete noun "captive" or the verb "capture" Alternate translation: "the people of their cities will become captives" or "their enemies will capture their people and take them away" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the sword](#)
- [and their cities will go](#)
- [into captivity](#)

#### ULT

**17** The young men in Heliopolis and Bubastis will fall [by the sword](#), and their cities will go into captivity.

## Ezekiel 30:18

### Tahpanhes

This was an important city in northern Egypt.

### the day will hold back its light

The day is spoken of as if it were able to keep its own light from shining. Alternate translation: “the day will be dark” (See: [Personification](#))

### when I break the yoke of Egypt there

The word “yoke” here refers to Egypt’s power to oppress people. Alternate translation: “when I stop Egypt from oppressing people” or “when I end Egypt’s power to cruelly control other nations” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the pride of her strength will be finished

This represents Egypt no longer being proud of their strength. The reason that they will not be proud is that they will no longer be strong. Alternate translation: “Egypt will no longer be proud about being strong” or “Egypt will no longer have the strength that they were so proud of” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### There will be a cloud covering her

This could mean: (1) the dark cloud represents how sad the people of Egypt will feel. Alternate translation: “It will be as if there is a cloud over Egypt” or (2) there will be a cloud of dust over Egypt from everything that is destroyed. Alternate translation: “A cloud of dust will be over Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### her daughters

This could mean: (1) the people of the Egyptian towns or (2) the daughters of the Egyptian people

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Egypt](#)
- [will walk](#)
- [into captivity](#)

### ULT

**18** In Tahpanhes, the day will hold back its light when I break the yoke of [Egypt](#) there, and the pride of her strength will be finished. There will be a cloud covering her, and her daughters [will walk into captivity](#).

## Ezekiel 30:19

### I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt

The phrase “acts of judgment” refers to punishment. Alternate translation: “I will punish Egypt in many ways” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### so they

“so the Egyptians”

### Translation Words - ULT

- in Egypt
- so they will know
- Yahweh

### ULT

**19** I will execute acts of judgment in Egypt, so they will know that I am Yahweh.’”

## Ezekiel 30:20

### General Information:

God speaks of making Pharaoh's army weak as if he were to break Pharaoh's arm, and of the army not being able to become strong again as if Pharaoh's arm could not be healed. (See: [Parables](#))

### Then it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### in the eleventh year

This is the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 26:1](#).

### in the first month, in the seventh day of the month

"in the seventh day of the first month." This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then it came about in the eleventh year, in the first month, in the seventh day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 30:21

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### I have broken the arm of Pharaoh

Here “arm” represents the powerful army of a king. (See: [Parables](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Behold

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

### It has not been bound up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one has bound up his arm” or “No one has wrapped up his arm” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### or set to heal with a bandage

Here “set to heal with a bandage” refers to the arm being wrapped tightly in a bandage so that the parts of the bone will stay together and heal.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [a sword](#)

### ULT

21 “[Son of man](#), I have broken the arm of Pharaoh, [the king of Egypt](#). Behold! It has not been bound up, or set to heal with a bandage, so that it will become strong enough to grasp [a sword](#).”

## Ezekiel 30:22

### General Information:

God continues speaking of Pharaoh's army as if it were a broken arm. He also speaks of strengthening the army of Babylon as if it were the arms of the king of Babylon. (See: [Parables](#))

### the Lord Yahweh says this

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:11](#).

### both the strong one and the broken one

"both the arm that is healthy and the arm that is already broken"

### I will make the sword fall from his hand

"I will knock the sword out of Pharaoh's hand"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [strong one](#)
- [fall](#)
- [from his hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this, 'Behold, I am against Pharaoh, [the king of Egypt](#). For I will break his arm, both the [strong one](#) and the broken one, and I will make the sword [fall from his hand](#).

## Ezekiel 30:23

### scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated similar phrases in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

### among the lands

“among the places in which people live”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)
- [among the nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then I will scatter [Egypt among the nations](#) and disperse them among the lands.

## Ezekiel 30:24

### I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon

“I will make the arms of the king of Babylon strong”

### He will groan before the king of Babylon

“When the king of Babylon comes to attack Egypt, Pharaoh will groan.”

### groan

A groan is a noise that people make when they have a lot of pain or are dying.

### with the groans of a dying man

“as a man who is dying groans” or “like a man who is dying”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the king
- of Babylon
- my sword
- in his hand

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> I will strengthen the arms of [the king of Babylon](#) and place [my sword in his hand](#) so that I might destroy Pharaoh's arms. He will groan before the king of Babylon with the groans of a dying man.



## Ezekiel 30:25

### General Information:

God continues speaking of the armies of Egypt and Babylon as if the armies were the arms of their kings. He also speaks of making the army of Babylon strong to attack others as if he had a sword and put it in the Babylonian king's hand. (See: [Parables](#))

### For I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon

Here "arms" are a metonym for the army. Alternate translation: "I will make the army of the king of Babylon strong" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### while Pharaoh's arms will fall

Here "Pharaoh's arms" is a metonym for his army, and "will fall" represents being weak. Alternate translation: "but Pharaoh's army will be unable to defeat enemies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Then they

Here, the word **they** could refer to: (1) "the Egyptians" or (2) "all people who hear what Yahweh has done."

### for he will attack the land of Egypt with it

"and the king of Babylon will attack the land of Egypt with my sword"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)
- [of Babylon \(2\)](#)
- [they will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my sword](#)
- [the hand of](#)
- [land](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> For I will strengthen the arms of [the king of Babylon](#), while Pharaoh's arms will fall. Then [they will know that](#) I am [Yahweh](#), when I put [my sword](#) into [the hand of the king of Babylon](#); for he will attack the [land of Egypt](#) with it.

## Ezekiel 30:26

### scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them through the lands

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated similar phrases in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)
- [among the nations](#)
- [Then they will know](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So I will scatter [Egypt among the nations](#) and disperse them through the lands. [Then they will know that I am Yahweh.](#)”

## Ezekiel 31

### Ezekiel 31 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king continues in this chapter. God told Egypt to remember what happened to Assyria when it became proud. This same things will now happen to Egypt. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## Ezekiel 31:1

### it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### in the eleventh year

“in year 11.” This means the eleventh year after King Jehoiachin was taken into exile in Babylon. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 26:1](#). Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in the third month, on the first day of the month

“on the first day of the third month.” This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. This first day is near the beginning of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then it came about in the eleventh year, in the third month, on the first day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 31:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), say to Pharaoh, [the king of Egypt](#), and to his multitudes around him, ‘In your greatness, who are you like?’

### In your greatness, who are you like?

“Who is as great as you are?” Yahweh uses this question to introduce a new topic. Pharaoh thought that his nation was the greatest, but God is about to talk about another great nation. Alternate translation: “You think that there is no country whose power is as great as the power of your country.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

## Ezekiel 31:3

### General Information:

These are God's words to Pharaoh about Assyria. God gives his message in the form of a parable about a great cedar tree. (See: [Parables](#))

### Behold!

"Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

### Assyria was a cedar

In this parable, God speaks about Assyria as if it were a great tree to emphasize how great and powerful the Assyrians were. This parable continues until 31:9. Alternate translation: "Assyria was like a cedar" (See: [Parables](#))

### the branches formed its treetop

"its top was above the branches of the other trees." Some versions of the Bible translate this as "the top of the tree was in the clouds."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria](#)
- [was a cedar](#)
- [in Lebanon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Behold! [Assyria was a cedar in Lebanon](#) with beautiful branches, giving shade to the forest, and the tallest in height, and the branches formed its treetop.

## Ezekiel 31:4

### Many waters made it tall

“Because the cedar had a lot of water, it grew very tall”

### the deep waters made it huge

“the water deep in the ground made the cedar grow very big”

### for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field

“and streams flowed from the rivers to all the trees of the field”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Many
- flowed

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Many waters made it tall; the deep waters made it huge. Rivers flowed all around its area, for their channels stretched out to all the trees in the field.

## Ezekiel 31:5

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### **Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field**

"The cedar was taller than any of the other trees of the field"

### **its branches became very many**

"it grew very many branches"

### **because of many waters as they grew**

"because it had a lot of water"

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Its great height was more than any of the other trees in the field, and its branches became very many; its branches grew long because of many waters as they grew.



## Ezekiel 31:6

### Every bird of the heavens nested in its branches

“All kinds of birds that fly in the sky made nests in its branches”

### while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage

“and all of the creatures that live in the field gave birth under the cedar’s branches”

### All of the many nations lived under its shade

“All of the great nations lived in the shade of that tree.” Here “nations” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “The people from all the nations lived in the shade of that tree” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the heavens](#)
- [nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Every bird [of the heavens](#) nested in its branches, while every living thing of the field gave birth to its young under its foliage. All of the many [nations](#) lived under its shade.

## Ezekiel 31:7

### it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches

“It was beautiful because it was very big and its branches were very long”

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For it was beautiful in its greatness and the length of its branches, for its roots were in many waters.

## Ezekiel 31:8

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### Cedars in the garden of God could not equal it

Since these were God's words to Pharaoh, it can also be translated with the first person. Alternate translation: "The cedar trees in my garden were not as great as that tree" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### the garden of God

This is another way of referring to "the garden of Eden."

### None among the cypress trees matched its branches

Yahweh was comparing how many branches the trees had. Alternate translation: "None of the cypress trees had as many branches as the cedar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### cypress trees

Cypress trees have very many branches. They can grow very tall. See how you translated "cypress" in [Ezekiel 27:5](#).

### the plane tree could not equal its boughs

It was implied Yahweh was comparing the long branches of the cedar tree with the long branches of the plane tree. Alternate translation: "the plane tree did not have branches like the cedar tree" or "no plane tree had branches as long as the branches of the cedar tree" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### plane tree

A plane tree was a large, leafy tree with strong branches. It is similar to a sycamore tree. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### was like it in its beauty

"was as beautiful as the cedar tree"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cedars](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [Cedars](#) in the garden [of God](#) could not equal it. None among the cypress trees matched its branches, and the plane tree could not equal its boughs. There was no other tree in the garden [of God](#) that was like it in its beauty.

## Ezekiel 31:9

### I made it beautiful with its many branches

“I made the cedar beautiful by giving it many long branches”

### envied it

“were jealous of the cedar tree”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- envied it

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I made it beautiful with its many branches and all the trees of Eden that were in the garden of God envied it.

## Ezekiel 31:10

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this

Since Yahweh is speaking this can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh the Lord, say" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### it set its treetop between its branches

"its top was above the branches of the other trees." Some versions of the Bible translate this as "the top of the tree was in the clouds."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [it lifted up](#)
- [its heart](#)

#### ULT

**10** Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Because it was tall in height, and it set its treetop between its branches, [it lifted up its heart](#) because of its height.

## Ezekiel 31:11

### I have given it into the hand of a mighty one of the nations

The word “hand” represents control. Alternate translation: “I put it in the power of the strongest nation” or “I gave the strongest nation power over it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I have thrown it out

“I sent the cedar away from the cedar’s land because the cedar was wicked”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [into the hand of](#)
- [one of the nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> I have given it [into the hand of](#) a mighty [one of the nations](#), to deal with it according to what its wickedness deserves. I have thrown it out.

## Ezekiel 31:12

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### who were the terror of all the nations

The abstract noun "terror" can be stated as "afraid." And here "nations" represents the people of the nations. Alternate translation: "who made the people of all the nations afraid" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### cut it off

"cut the cedar down"

### its boughs lay broken

"the foreigners broke the boughs of the cedar"

### boughs

Boughs are very large branches that grow on trees. Usually, many smaller branches grow on the boughs.

### came out from under its shade

"left the shade of the cedar"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of all the nations
- cut
- the
- of the land
- on earth

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Foreigners who were the terror of all the nations cut it off and left it to die. Its branches fell on the mountains and all the valleys, and its boughs lay broken in all the ravines of the land. Then all the nations on earth came out from under its shade and they went away from it.

## Ezekiel 31:13

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### All the birds of the sky

"All the birds that fly in the sky"

### rested on the trunk of the fallen tree

"rested on the remains of the cedar"

### trunk

The trunk is a very thick part of the tree that comes out of the ground and holds up the rest of the tree.

### every animal of the field came to its branches

"the wild animals lived in the branches of the cedar"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the sky

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> All the birds of the sky rested on the trunk of the fallen tree, and every animal of the field came to its branches.



**Ezekiel 31:14****that no other trees that grow by the waters**

“that no other trees that get a lot of water”

**will lift up their foliage to the height of the tallest trees**

“will grow taller than the branches of other trees.” Some Bibles translate this as “will set their tops among the clouds.”

**that no other trees that grow beside the waters will reach up to that height**

“that no other trees that get a lot of water will ever grow that tall again”

**All of them have been assigned to death, to the earth below**

This can be stated in active form. And the abstract noun “death” can be stated “die.” Alternate translation: “For I made it so that they all will die and go deep under the ground” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**among the children of humanity, with those that go down to the pit**

“to be with those people who have died and gone down to the grave”

**the pit**

This refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 26:20](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [up](#)
- [earth](#)
- [the children](#)
- [of humanity](#)

**ULT**

**14** This happened so that no other trees that grow by the waters will lift up their foliage to the height of the tallest trees, and that no other trees that grow beside the waters will reach [up](#) to that height. All of them have been assigned to death, to the [earth](#) below, among [the children of humanity](#), with those that go down to the pit.

## Ezekiel 31:15

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues. Here, Yahweh speaks about the great sadness caused by the tree being cut down as if even the waters, Lebanon, and the wild trees all mourned for the cedar.

### On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol

The phrase "went down to Sheol" means "died." Alternate translation: "On the day that the cedar died" or "On the day that the cedar was chopped down" (See: [Idiom](#))

### I brought mourning to the earth

The abstract noun "mourning" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I caused the earth to mourn" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I covered the deep waters over it

The word "covered" possibly refers to putting on clothes for mourning. Alternate translation: "I made the water from the springs mourn for the cedar" or "it was as though the springs that watered it mourned for it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I held back the ocean waters

"I kept the water in the ocean from watering the earth"

### I kept back the great waters

"I made it so that there would not be a lot of water anymore"

### I brought mourning to Lebanon for him

The abstract noun "mourning" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I made Lebanon mourn for the cedar" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [I brought mourning](#)
- [to Lebanon for him](#)

### ULT

**15** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: On the day when the cedar went down to Sheol [I brought mourning](#) to the earth. I covered the deep waters over it, and I held back the ocean waters. I kept back the great waters, and I brought mourning [to Lebanon for him](#). So all the trees of the field mourned because of it.

## Ezekiel 31:16

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### when I threw it down to Sheol with those who went down into the pit

Here "threw it down to Sheol" is an idiom that means to kill. "The pit" refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 31:14](#). Alternate translation: "when I killed the cedar and it went to Sheol with everyone else that is dead" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### in the lowest parts of the earth

"that were already deep down in the ground." This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "that had already died and are now in Sheol" (See: [Idiom](#))

### the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters

"the best trees of Lebanon that everyone would want; trees that got a lot of water." This is describing the trees of Eden that were in the lowest parts of the earth.

### the choicest

This is something that everyone would want because it is very good.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I brought shuddering](#)
- [to the nations](#)
- [of Lebanon](#)

### ULT

**16** I brought shuddering to the nations at the sound of its downfall, when I threw it down to Sheol with those who went down into the pit. So I comforted all the trees of Eden in the lowest parts of the earth. These had been the choicest and best trees of Lebanon; the trees that drank the waters.

## Ezekiel 31:17

### General Information:

Yahweh's parable about the cedar continues.

### they also went down with it to Sheol

Here "went down ... to Sheol" is an idiom that means to die.  
Alternate translation: "those trees of Lebanon also died and went down to Sheol with the cedar" (See: [Idiom](#))

### who had been killed by the sword

Here "sword" represents enemies who fought them in battle. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom enemies had killed with swords" or "who had died in battle" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### These were its strong arm

"These trees of Lebanon were its strong arm." The phrase "strong arm" represents "power." Alternate translation: "These trees of Lebanon were the power of the cedar" or "These trees strengthened the cedar" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the sword](#)
- [those nations](#)

### ULT

**17** For they also went down with it to Sheol, to the ones who had been killed [by the sword](#). These were its strong arm, [those nations](#) who had lived in its shade.

## Ezekiel 31:18

### Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness?

“Which of these trees in Eden had as much glory as you and was as great as you?” God asks Pharaoh this question to show him that the parable applies to him and his country. It can start with “So Pharaoh” or “So Egypt.” Alternate translation: “None of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### For you will be brought down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For I will bring you down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### with the trees of Eden

“like the other trees of Eden”

### to the lowest parts of the earth

“to a place deep in the ground”

### among the uncircumcised

“where you will be with people who are not circumcised”

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the earth](#)
- [the uncircumcised](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Which of the trees in Eden was your equal in glory and greatness? For you will be brought down with the trees of Eden to the lowest parts [of the earth](#) among [the uncircumcised](#); you will live with those who were killed [by the sword](#). This is Pharaoh and all of his multitudes—[this is the Lord Yahweh’s](#) declaration.”

## Ezekiel 32

### Ezekiel 32 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The prophecy against Egypt and its king concludes in this chapter. Egypt will have its army destroyed, just as happened to so many other nations. Beginning in verse 1, the land of Egypt is addressed through Pharaoh, its king, so God refers to Egypt as “he” and “him.” However, beginning in verse 12, Egypt is referred to as “she” and “her,” as if she were a woman. It was common in Hebrew for lands and countries to be referred to as if they were women. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 32:1

### Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### in the twelfth month ... on the first of the month

This is the twelfth and final month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of February. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### of the twelfth year

This refers to the twelfth year of the reign of King Jehoiachin. Alternate translation: “of the twelfth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then it happened in the twelfth month of the twelfth year, on the first of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 32:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### lift up

“sing”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), lift up a lament concerning Pharaoh [the king of Egypt](#); say to him, ‘You are like a young lion [among the nations](#), but you are like a monster in the seas; you churn up the water, you stir up the waters with your feet and muddy their waters.’

### You are like a young lion ... like a monster in the seas

This could mean: (1) he thought he was like a lion, but he was really only a monster, or (2) he was like a lion and a monster.

### like a young lion among the nations

Egypt was stronger than other nations, like lions are stronger than other animals. (See: [Simile](#))

### like a monster in the seas

Pharaoh was powerful, but he only caused trouble for others, like this monster in the water. (See: [Simile](#))

### monster

A monster is an animal that is big and dangerous. This one might be a crocodile. See how you translated this word in [Ezekiel 29:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the king](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [among the nations](#)



## Ezekiel 32:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to speak of him as if he were a monster, perhaps a crocodile, in the water.

### The Lord Yahweh says this

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:5](#).

### So I will spread my net over you in the assembly of many peoples

God's punishment of Pharaoh is spoken of as if the king were the river monster caught in a net. Alternate translation: "So I will gather many peoples and throw my net over you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [assembly](#)
- [peoples](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: So I will spread my net over you in the [assembly](#) of many [peoples](#), and they will lift you up in my net.

## Ezekiel 32:4

### I will abandon you in the land

“I will leave you helpless on the land.” The monster that was fearsome and powerful when it was in the water cannot do anything when it is left on dry land.

### all the birds of the heavens

“all the birds that fly in the sky”

### the hunger of all living animals on earth will be satisfied by you

This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: “I will let all the animals of the earth eat your body until they are hungry no longer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- the heavens
- on earth

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> I will abandon you in the land. I will throw you into a field and cause all the birds [of the heavens](#) to settle on you; the hunger of all living animals [on earth](#) will be satisfied by you.

## Ezekiel 32:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh and to compare him to a monster that lives in the water.

### your worm-filled corpse

The worms help the dead body to rot. Alternate translation: "your rotting body" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will put your flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For [I will put your flesh](#) on the mountains, and I will fill the valleys with your worm-filled corpse.

## Ezekiel 32:6

### the stream beds will be filled with your blood

This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: "I will fill the streams with your blood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then [I will](#) pour your blood over the mountains, and the stream beds will be filled with your blood.

## Ezekiel 32:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Pharaoh what he will do to Egypt.

### when I extinguish you

It was common to speak of a person's life as if it were a lamp that could be put out. Alternate translation: "When I destroy you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will cover the heavens

Yahweh speaks of making the stars dark as if he were putting a cover over the sky. Alternate translation: "I will make everything in the sky go dark" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then when I extinguish you, I will cover [the heavens](#) and darken their stars; I will cover the sun with clouds, and the moon will not shine its light.

## Ezekiel 32:8

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [over your land](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> All the shining lights in [the heavens](#) I will darken over you, and I will put [darkness over your land—this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration](#).

## Ezekiel 32:9

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.

### I will terrify the heart of many peoples

Here “heart” represents the people’s emotions. Alternate translation: “I will make the hearts of many peoples afraid” or “I will cause many people to be terrified” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in lands that you do not know

The way that Yahweh destroys Egypt will make afraid even people in lands that Pharaoh never knew about.

### when I bring about your collapse among the nations

The nation of Egypt, symbolized by its king, is spoken of as if it were a building that was collapsing. Alternate translation: “when nations hear about the way I destroyed you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the heart](#)
- [peoples in lands that you do not know](#)
- [among the nations](#)
- [among lands](#)
- [known](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So I will terrify [the heart](#) of many [peoples in lands that you do not know](#), when I bring about your collapse [among the nations, among lands](#) that you have not [known](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 32:10

### when I swing my sword

Here swinging a sword represents using the sword. Alternate translation: "when I use my sword" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Every moment each one will tremble because of you

Here "tremble" is an action that people often do when they are very afraid. Alternate translation: "Every one of them will keep shaking because of their fear"

### on the day of your downfall

The idea of falling down ("downfall") represents dying. Alternate translation: "when I destroy you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [peoples](#)
- [when I swing my sword](#)
- [before them](#)

#### ULT

**10** I will shock many [peoples](#) concerning you; their kings will shudder in horror concerning you [when I swing my sword before them](#). Every moment each one will tremble because of you, on the day of your downfall.



## Ezekiel 32:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh.

### The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you

Here “sword” represents an army. Alternate translation: “The army of the king of Babylon will attack you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [The sword](#)
- [of the king](#)
- [of Babylon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [The sword of the king of Babylon](#) will come against you.

## Ezekiel 32:12

### each warrior a terror of nations

The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as “terrifies” or “afraid.” Alternate translation: “Each warrior terrifies the nations” or “each one of them makes the nations afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### will devastate the pride of Egypt

The abstract noun “pride” can be stated as “proud.” Alternate translation: “will cause the Egyptians to no longer be proud” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### destroy all of its multitudes

Here “all” is probably a generalization that refers to the killing of large numbers of soldiers, and perhaps other people also. Alternate translation: “kill a very large number of people who live in Egypt” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by warriors](#)
- [swords](#)
- [of nations](#)
- [of Egypt](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I will cause your multitudes to fall [by warriors' swords](#)—each warrior a terror [of nations](#). These warriors will devastate the pride [of Egypt](#) and destroy all of its multitudes.

## Ezekiel 32:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking.

### from beside the plentiful waters

“in the places where there is a lot of water”

### the foot of man will no longer stir the waters up

The foot here is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “people will no longer stir the waters up with their feet” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### stir the waters

make clear water muddy

### the hooves of cattle stir them

The hoof is a synecdoche for cattle. Alternate translation: “cattle stir them with their hooves” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will destroy](#)
- [the livestock](#)
- [of cattle](#)
- [of man](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For [I will destroy](#) all [the livestock](#) from beside the plentiful waters; the foot [of man](#) will no longer stir the waters up, neither will the hooves [of cattle](#) stir them.

## Ezekiel 32:14

### Then I will calm their waters

This could mean: (1) "I will make the water calm" or (2) "I will make the water clear." When no one stirs up the water, the dirt settles down and the water becomes clear.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [run like](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**14** Then I will calm their waters and make their rivers [run like](#) oil— [this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.

## Ezekiel 32:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking.

### When I make the land of Egypt an abandoned place

This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: "When I make the land of Egypt a place where no one is living" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### when the land is made bare of all its fullness

"when the country is made to lose all its wealth"

### when I attack all the inhabitants in her

Here the idea of attacking represents destroying. Alternate translation: "when I destroy all who live in her" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in her

It was normal in biblical language to represent countries and lands as if they were women. Alternate translation: "in it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: "understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God" or "realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [when the land](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [an abandoned place](#)
- [they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When I make [the land of Egypt an abandoned place](#), when the land is made bare of all its fullness, when I attack all the inhabitants in her, [they will know](#) that I am Yahweh.

## Ezekiel 32:16

### over her

It was normal in biblical language to represent countries and lands as if they were women. Alternate translation: “over it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the daughters of the nations

This could mean: (1) “the women of other nations” or (2) “people of other nations”

### over Egypt, over all her multitudes

“about Egypt, about all her multitudes” or “about the disaster that happened to Egypt, about the disaster that happened to all her multitudes”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the nations](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**16** There will be a lament; the daughters [of the nations](#) will lament over her; they will lament over [Egypt](#), over all her multitudes they will lament—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.’”

## Ezekiel 32:17

### Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new message. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### in the twelfth year

This could mean: (1) This happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took the Israelites to Babylon or (2) this happened in the twelfth year after the Babylonians took Jehoiachin to Babylon. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

#### ULT

17 Then it happened in the twelfth year, on the fifteenth day of the month, that the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 32:18

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### bring them down—her and the daughters of majestic nations

God is perhaps telling Ezekiel to cause this to happen by giving a prophetic command.

### her

Once again, the land of Egypt is referred to as a woman.

### the daughters of majestic nations

This could mean: (1) “the people of powerful nations” or (2) “other powerful nations.”

### the lowest earth

“to the places under the ground.” When people died, they were put in the ground. So “bring them down ... to the lowest earth” means “make them die.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### with those who have gone down to the pit

“with everyone else who has died and gone into the ground”

### the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 31:16](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [of majestic](#)
- [nations](#)
- [earth](#)

### ULT

**18** “[Son of man](#), weep for the multitudes [of Egypt](#) and bring them down— her and the daughters [of majestic nations](#)— to the lowest [earth](#) with those who have gone down to the pit.



## Ezekiel 32:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel. He speaks of the people of Egypt as if they were a woman. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Are you really more beautiful than anyone else? Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised.

This is a question and command that the prophet is to ask the Egyptians. Alternate translation: "Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised. Ask them all: 'Are you really more beautiful than anyone else?'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Go down

It is implied that they must go down to Sheol. Alternate translation: "Go down to Sheol" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### lie down

as in death. If your language has a word for dead people lying down that is different from the word for live people lying down to sleep, use it here.

### Are you really more beautiful than anyone else?

This question really makes a statement. Alternate translation: "You are not more beautiful than anyone else." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with the uncircumcised](#)

#### ULT

**19** 'Are you really more beautiful than anyone else? Go down and lie down with the uncircumcised.'

## Ezekiel 32:20

### They will fall

“Egypt and her people will fall”

### who were killed by the sword

The word “sword” is a metonym for a soldier who kills people with a sword. This can be put into active form. Alternate translation: “whom enemy soldiers killed with swords” or “who died in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> They will fall among those who were killed [by the sword](#). [The sword has been drawn!](#) She has been given to the sword; they will seize her and her multitudes.

### The sword has been drawn!

The word “sword” here is a metonym for war that people fight with swords. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “War has begun” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### She has been given to the sword

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “I have given Egypt to the sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they will seize her and her multitudes

“her enemies will seize Egypt and her people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the sword](#)
- [The sword has been drawn](#)

## Ezekiel 32:21

### about Egypt and her allies

“about the Egyptians and those who join them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The strongest of the warriors](#)
- [by the sword](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [The strongest of the warriors](#) in Sheol will declare about Egypt and her allies, ‘They have come down here! They will lie with the uncircumcised, with those who were killed [by the sword.](#)’

## Ezekiel 32:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol. Because what God is showing Ezekiel may be for future time, either the present tense or the future tense is suitable for these verses and the following verses.

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [Assyria](#) is there with all [her assembly](#). [Her graves](#) surround her; all of them were killed [by the sword](#).

### Assyria is there with all her assembly

The land of Assyria is represented as a woman. Alternate translation: "The people of Assyria and all its army are there in Sheol" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### her assembly

"all her people together"

### all of them were killed by the sword

The word "sword" is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: "Soldiers used swords to kill them all" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria](#)
- [her assembly](#)
- [Her graves](#)
- [by the sword](#)

## Ezekiel 32:23

### are set in the recesses of the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:18](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

### all of those who were killed, who fell by the sword

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “all those whom enemies killed in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### fell by the sword

The word “fell” here is a euphemism for “died.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### those who brought terror on the land of the living

The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as “afraid.” Alternate translation: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the land of the living

This represents the people who were alive. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [graves](#)
- [with all her assembly](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [of the living](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Those whose [graves](#) are set in the recesses of the pit are there, [with all her assembly](#). Her graves surround all of those who were killed, who fell [by the sword](#), those who brought terror on the land [of the living](#).

## Ezekiel 32:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.

### Elam is there

Here “Elam” refers to the people of that country. Alternate translation: “The people of Elam are also there in Sheol” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### her multitudes

This could mean: (1) her many people or (2) her army.

### Her graves surround her

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:22](#).

### all of them were killed

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “Her enemies killed them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Those who fell by the sword

Translate “who fell by the sword” as in [Ezekiel 32:23](#).

### by the sword

Here “the sword” is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### who have gone down uncircumcised

“who were uncircumcised when they went down”

### to the lowest parts of the earth

“to places deep down in the ground” or “to the land deep down in the ground.” See how you translated “in the lowest realms of the earth” in [Ezekiel 26:20](#).

### who brought their terrors

The abstract noun “terrors” can be stated as “afraid.” See how you translated “brought terror” in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). Alternate translation: “those who, when they were still alive, caused people to be extremely afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Elam is there with all her multitudes. Her graves surround her; all of them were killed. Those who fell [by the sword](#), who have gone down [uncircumcised](#) to the lowest parts of the [earth](#), who brought their terrors on the land [of the living](#) and who carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit.

## the land of the living

This represents the people who were alive. See how you translated “the land of the living” in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

## who carry their own shame

Shame is spoken of as if it were an object that one could carry where he goes. Alternate translation: “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [by the sword](#)
- [uncircumcised](#)
- [earth](#)
- [of the living](#)

## Ezekiel 32:25

### They set a bedroll for Elam and all her multitudes

Space being made in Sheol for the dead is spoken of as if the dead were given beds to lie on. Alternate translation: "They gave beds to Elam and all its people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in the midst of the slain

"with all the other people who were killed"

### All of them are uncircumcised

The Israelites did not respect people who were not circumcised. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### pierced by the sword, because

The word "pierced" here is a metonym for "killed." This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "their enemies have killed them with swords because" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Elam is among all those who were killed

This is very similar to the first part of the verse. Alternate translation: "The dead people gave Elam a place to lie among themselves"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [her graves](#)
- [are uncircumcised](#)
- [pierced by the sword](#)
- [of the living](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They set a bedroll for Elam and all her multitudes in the midst of the slain; [her graves](#) surround her. All of them [are uncircumcised, pierced by the sword](#), because they had brought their terrors on the land [of the living](#). So they carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit among all those who have been killed, those who are going down to the pit. Elam is among all those who were killed.



## Ezekiel 32:26

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about nations in Sheol.

### Meshech ... Tubal

See how you translated these names in [Ezekiel 27:13](#).

### Their graves surround them

See how you translated “her graves surround her” in [Ezekiel 32:22](#).

### killed by the sword

Here “the sword” represents warfare. Alternate translation: “killed in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### they had brought their terrors on the land of the living

Causing people to fear is spoken of as if it were the act of bringing an object to them. The abstract noun “terrors” can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “they terrified everyone in the land of the living” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### All of them ... land of the living

See how you translated “All of them ... land of the living” in [Ezekiel 32:25](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Their graves](#)
- [are uncircumcised](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [of the living](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Meshech, Tubal, and all their multitudes are there! [Their graves](#) surround them. All of them [are uncircumcised](#), killed [by the sword](#), because they had brought their terrors on the land [of the living](#).

## Ezekiel 32:27

### their iniquities over their bones

The warriors' iniquities cover their bodies, although one would expect that their shields would cover them in death. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they were the terror of warriors in the land of the living

"while they were still alive, they made other warriors very afraid"

### in the land of the living

The time during which these warriors were living is spoken of as if it were a place. Alternate translation: "while they were alive" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [warriors](#)
- [of warriors](#)
- [their swords](#)
- [their heads](#)
- [and their iniquities](#)
- [of the living](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> They do not lie with the fallen [warriors](#) of the uncircumcised who have gone down to Sheol with all their weapons of war, and with [their swords](#) placed under [their heads and their iniquities](#) over their bones. For they were the terror [of warriors](#) in the land [of the living](#).

## Ezekiel 32:28

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking.

### you ... will be broken

“Broken” here represents “destroyed.” This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “I will destroy you” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### in the midst of

“in the middle of”

### those who were pierced

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). Alternate translation: “those whose enemies have killed them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### by the sword

This represents being in warfare. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the uncircumcised](#)
- [by the sword](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> So you, Egypt, will be broken in the midst [of the uncircumcised](#)! You will lie alongside those who were pierced [by the sword](#).

## Ezekiel 32:29

### Edom is there with her kings and all her leaders

Here “Edom” represents all the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “the people of Edom are in Sheol with their kings and all their leaders” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with her kings](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [the uncircumcised](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Edom is there [with her kings](#) and all her leaders. They have been placed in their strength with those killed [by the sword](#). With [the uncircumcised](#) they lie, with those who have gone down to the pit.

## Ezekiel 32:30

### The princes of the north

“The princes who ruled nations in the north”

### are there

“are in Sheol”

### went down

“went down to Sheol”

### had been pierced

The word “pierced” here is a metonym for “killed.” This can be translated in active form. See how you translated similar words in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). Alternate translation: “whom enemies had killed with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### by the sword

This represents being in warfare. Alternate translation: “in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### They carry their own shame

Shame is spoken of as if it were an object that one could carry where he goes. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:25](#). Alternate translation: “who feel ashamed” or “who are now disgraced” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the pit

“The pit” refers to the grave; because the grave was thought to be the entrance to the world of the dead, the pit also represents that world. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [but now they are there in shame](#)
- [uncircumcised](#)
- [by the sword](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The princes of the north are there— all of them and all the Sidonians who went down with the ones who had been pierced. They were powerful and made others to be afraid, [but now they are there in shame, uncircumcised](#) with those who were pierced [by the sword](#). They carry their own shame, together with the ones going down to the pit.

## Ezekiel 32:31

### Pharaoh will look

It can be made explicit who Pharaoh will see. Alternate translation: “Pharaoh will see all the dead people from other nations” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### be comforted about all his multitudes

It is implied that Pharaoh will be comforted because the armies of other great kings also died. Alternate translation: “will comfort himself that he was not the only king whose entire army died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sword](#)
- [his army](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

**31** Pharaoh will look and be comforted about all his multitudes who were pierced by the [sword](#)—Pharaoh and all [his army](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.

**Ezekiel 32:32****I put him as my terrifying one in the land of the living**

“While Pharaoh was still alive, I made him to terrify people”

**he will be laid down in the midst of the uncircumcised**

This can be put in active form. Alternate translation: “Others will lay him in the midst of the uncircumcised” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of the living](#)
- [of the uncircumcised](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> I put him as my terrifying one in the land [of the living](#), but he will be laid down in the midst [of the uncircumcised](#), among those pierced [by the sword](#), Pharaoh and all his multitudes—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

32:9 <sup>[1]</sup>, some ancient and modern versions have .

## Ezekiel 33

### Ezekiel 33 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Repentance

God does not want sinners to die. He wants them to repent and live. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))



## Ezekiel 33:1

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 33:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### a sword against any land

The word “sword” refers to an enemy army that attacks. Also, “land” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “an army to attack the people of any land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### make him a watchman

“appoint him as a guard” or “make him guard”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- your people
- of man
- your people
- then the people
- a sword
- land
- of that land

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), declare this to [your people](#); say to them, ‘When I bring a [sword](#) against any [land](#), [then the people of that land](#) take one man from among themselves and make him a watchman for them.’

## Ezekiel 33:3

### He looks for the sword

Here “sword” represents an enemy army. Alternate translation: “He looks for an enemy army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [horn](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He looks for the sword as it comes on [the land](#), and he blows his [horn](#) to warn [the people](#)!

## Ezekiel 33:4

### do not pay attention

“ignore the warning”

### each one’s blood is on his own head

Here “blood” represents death. The phrase “on his own head” is an idiom that means the person will be held responsible. Alternate translation: “it is their own fault if they die” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> If the people hear the sound of the horn but do not pay attention, and if the sword comes and kills them, then each one’s blood is on his own head.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the horn
- if the sword
- then each one’s blood is on
- his own head

## Ezekiel 33:5

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

### his blood is on him

Here “blood” represents a person’s death. The phrase “on him” is an idiom that means that person is considered responsible. Alternate translation: “it will be his own fault that he dies”

### save his own life

“will keep himself from dying”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the horn
- his blood
- he will save his own
- life

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> If someone hears the sound of the horn and pays no attention, his blood is on him; but if he pays attention, he will save his own life.

## Ezekiel 33:6

### the sword as it is coming

The word “sword” refers to an enemy army. Alternate translation: “the enemy army as it is coming” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with the result that the people are not warned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and he does not warn the people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the sword comes and takes anyone’s life

Here “sword” represents an enemy army. Alternate translation: “the enemy army comes and kills anyone” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### that person dies in his own sin

“that person dies because of his own sin”

### I will require his blood from the watchman

Here “blood” represents a person’s death. The phrase “I will require his blood from” is an idiom that means to consider someone responsible. Alternate translation: “I will consider that person’s death to be the fault of the watchman” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blow the horn](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and if the sword](#)
- [life](#)
- [require](#)
- [from](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> However, if the watchman sees the sword as it is coming, but if he does not [blow the horn](#), with the result that [the people](#) are not warned, [and if the sword](#) comes and takes anyone’s [life](#), then that person dies in his own sin, but I will [require](#) his blood [from](#) the watchman.’

## Ezekiel 33:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you will hear the words from my mouth and warn them on my behalf

Here “mouth” represents what Yahweh says. Alternate translation: “you will hear the message that I speak and you will warn them on my behalf” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### warn them on my behalf

“warn them as my representative” or “give them the warning from me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [for the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now you yourself, [son of man](#)! I have made you a watchman [for the house of Israel](#); you will hear the words from my mouth and warn them on my behalf.

## Ezekiel 33:8

### do not announce this

“do not say this”

### about his way

“the way he acts” or “the things he does.” See how you translated “your ways” in [Ezekiel 7:3](#).

### I will require his blood from your hand

Here “blood” represents a person’s death. The phrase “require ... from your hand” is an idiom that means to consider someone responsible. Alternate translation: “I will consider you responsible for his death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [If I say](#)
- [but I will require](#)
- [from your hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [If I say](#) to a wicked person, ‘Wicked one, you will surely die!’ but if you do not announce this so as to warn the wicked about his way, then he who is wicked will die in his sin, [but I will require](#) his blood [from your hand](#)!



## Ezekiel 33:9

### he might turn back from it, and if he does not turn back from his way

A person no longer behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if he physically turns and goes back on a path. Alternate translation: "he might stop doing bad things, and if he does not stop doing bad things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### will have saved your own life

"will have kept yourself alive"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [turn back](#)
- [that](#)
- [your own life](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But you, if you warn the wicked about his way, so [that](#) he might [turn back](#) from it, and if he does not turn back from his way, then he will die in his sin, but you yourself will have saved [your own life](#).

## Ezekiel 33:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

### the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### You are saying this

“This is what you have said”

### Our transgressions and our sins are on us

This could mean: (1) “on us” is a metaphor that means they feel guilty for their transgressions and sins or (2) “on us” is a metaphor that means they realize that Yahweh is punishing them for their transgressions and sins. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### we are decaying in them

“we are rotting away because of them.” Being destroyed because of sin is spoken of as if the person’s flesh were rotting. Alternate translation: “they are destroying us” or “they are killing us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in them

“because of them”

### How can we live?

The people ask this question to emphasize that they have no hope of living. Alternate translation: “We have no hope of living.” or “We will certainly die.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [our sins](#)
- [can we live](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So you, [son of man](#), say to [the house of Israel](#), ‘You are saying this, “Our transgressions and [our sins](#) are on us, and we are decaying in them! How [can we live?](#)”’

## Ezekiel 33:11

### I do not delight in the death of the wicked

The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “die.” And the nominal adjective “the wicked” can be stated as “wicked people.” Alternate translation: “It does not make me happy when wicked people die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### if the wicked repents from his way

Here “way” represents how a person behaves. Alternate translation: “if the wicked person stops doing bad things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### For why should you die, house of Israel?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he does not want the people of Israel to die. Alternate translation: “Do not choose to die, house of Israel!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [then he will live](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [I do not delight](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [from your wicked](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**11** Say to them, ‘As I [live](#)—this is [the Lord Yahweh’s](#) declaration—I [do not delight](#) in the death of the wicked, for if the wicked repents from his way, [then he will live!](#) [Repent!](#) [Repent from your wicked](#) ways! For why should you die, [house of Israel?](#)’

## Ezekiel 33:12

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

### The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins!

The abstract noun “righteousness” can be stated as the adjective “right.” It is implied that they will not be saved from God’s punishment. Alternate translation: “If righteous people start to sin, the fact that they did what was right before will not stop me from punishing them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**12** So now you, [son of man](#), say to [your people](#), ‘The righteousness of a righteous person will not save him if he sins! The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish if he [repents from](#) his sin! For the righteous person will not be able to live because of his righteousness [if he sins](#).’

### The wickedness of a wicked person will not cause him to perish

The abstract noun “wickedness” can be stated as the adjective “wicked.” Alternate translation: “A person who does what is wicked will not perish” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [your people](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your people](#)
- [repents from](#)
- [if he sins](#)

## Ezekiel 33:13

### if he trusts in his righteousness

The person thinks that because he was righteous, Yahweh will not punish him, even if he sins. The abstract noun "righteousness" can be stated as the adjective "right." Alternate translation: "if he depends on the right things he has done" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### commits injustice

"does what is evil" or "does wicked things"

### I will not call to mind

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I will not think about" or "I will not recall" (See: [Idiom](#))

### for the wickedness he committed

The abstract noun "wickedness" can be stated as the adjective "wicked" Alternate translation: "because of the wicked things he has done" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [If I say](#)
- [He will surely](#)
- [live](#)

#### ULT

**13** [If I say](#) to the righteous, "[He will surely live!](#)" and if he trusts in his righteousness and then commits injustice, I will not call to mind any of his righteousness. He will die for the wickedness he committed.

## Ezekiel 33:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

### to the wicked

The nominal adjective “the wicked” can be stated as “the wicked person.” Alternate translation: “to the wicked person” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [but if he then repents from](#)
- [what is just](#)

### ULT

**14** So if I say to the wicked, “You will surely die,” [but if he then repents from](#) his sins and does [what is just](#) and right

—

## Ezekiel 33:15

### if he restores the loan guarantee

“if he gives back the loan guarantee”

### loan guarantee

something a person leaves with another person to show that he will keep his promise to pay back what he has borrowed

### makes restitution for what he has stolen

“returns what he has stolen” or “pays back the value of what he stole”

### walks in the statutes that give life

Acting or behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if it were walking. Alternate translation: “lives according to the laws that give life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [that](#)
- [and if he walks](#)
- [then he will surely](#)
- [live](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> if he restores the loan guarantee [that](#) he wickedly demanded, or if he makes restitution for what he has stolen, [and if he walks](#) in the statutes that give life and no longer commits sin—[then he will surely live](#). He will not die.

## Ezekiel 33:16

### will be called to mind for him

The phrase “call to mind” is an idiom that means to remember. The phrase “will be called” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will I think about” or “will I recall” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sins](#)
- [the sins](#)
- [He has acted justly](#)
- [and so, he will surely](#)
- [live](#)

### ULT

**16** None of [the sins](#) that he has committed will be called to mind for him. [He has acted justly](#) and rightly, [and so, he will surely live!](#)



## Ezekiel 33:17

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the Israelites.

### your people

These are the people of Israel. The word “your” refers to Ezekiel.

### The way of the Lord ... your ways that are not fair

Behaviors or actions is spoken of as if they were a way or road on which a person travels. Alternate translation: “What the Lord does ... the things you do that are not fair” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### but it is your ways

The word “your” refers to the people of Israel. This can be stated in third person. Alternate translation: “but it is their ways” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But your people](#)
- [But your people](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> [But your people](#) say, “The way [of the Lord](#) is not fair!” but it is your ways that are not fair!

## Ezekiel 33:18

### turns away from his righteousness

No longer doing something is spoken of as if it were physically turning away from something. Alternate translation: "stops doing what is right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### die in it

"die because of his sins"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous person](#)
- [then he will die](#)

### ULT

**18** When the [righteous person](#) turns away from his righteousness and commits sin, [then he will die](#) in it!

## Ezekiel 33:19

### turns away from his wickedness

No longer doing something is spoken of as if it were physically turning away from something. Alternate translation: "stops doing wicked things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### because of those things

"because he does what is just and righteous"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [what is just](#)
- [he will live](#)

#### ULT

**19** When the wicked turns away from his wickedness and does [what is just](#) and righteous, [he will live](#) because of those things!

## Ezekiel 33:20

### you people

These are the people of Israel.

### house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But you people say, “The way [of the Lord](#) is not fair!” I will judge each of you according to his way, [house of Israel!](#)”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

## Ezekiel 33:21

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### the twelfth year ... fifth day ... tenth month

“year 12...day 5...month 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### on the fifth day of the tenth month

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifth day is near the beginning of January on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### of our captivity

Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the time the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem, but not to the reader. Alternate translation: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem

“someone escaped from Jerusalem and came to me” The Babylonians had destroyed Jerusalem and killed the people of Jerusalem, but a few people escaped.

### The city has been captured

The phrase “the city” refers to “Jerusalem.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Babylonians have destroyed Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

**21** It happened in the twelfth year, on the fifth day of the tenth month of our captivity, that a fugitive came to me from Jerusalem and said, “The city has been captured!”

## Ezekiel 33:22

### The hand of Yahweh had been on me

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that person. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 1:3](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh was controlling me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### my mouth was opened

This phrase is an idiom that means to be able to speak. It can be stated in active form. See how you translated “I will open your mouth” in [Ezekiel 3:27](#). Alternate translation: “I was able to speak” or “Yahweh enabled me to speak” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### dawn

The word “dawn” refers to the time early in the morning when the light of the sun first appears.

### I was no longer mute

“I was no longer forced to be silent” or “I was no longer unable to speak” Ezekiel had been unable to speak anything except prophetic words since [Ezekiel 3:26](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The hand of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [The hand of Yahweh](#) had been on me in the evening before the fugitive came, and my mouth was opened by the time that he came to me in the dawn. So my mouth was open; I was no longer mute!

## Ezekiel 33:23

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 33:24

### those ruins

This could mean: (1) “those ruined buildings” or (2) “those ruined cities”

### he inherited the land

Yahweh giving the land to Abraham is spoken of as if Abraham inherited the land. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave him the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the land

“the land of Israel”

### The land has been given to us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has given us the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### as a possession

The abstract noun “possession” can be stated as “possess.” Alternate translation: “so that we can possess it” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [in the land](#)
- [the land](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [he inherited](#)

### ULT

24 “[Son of man](#), the ones inhabiting those ruins [in the land of Israel](#) are talking and say, ‘[Abraham](#) was only one person, and [he inherited the land](#), but we are many! The land has been given to us as a possession.’”



## Ezekiel 33:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.

### You eat blood

It is implied that they eat blood by eating meat that still has blood in it. Yahweh had commanded them to drain out the blood. Alternate translation: "You eat meat with blood in it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### you lift up your eyes towards your idols

"you look to your idols" This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "you worship your idols" (See: [Idiom](#))

### you pour out people's blood

Here "blood" represents a person's life. To pour out blood is an idiom that means to murder. Alternate translation: "you murder people" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Should you really possess the land?

Yahweh used this question to rebuke the people. Alternate translation: "You should not possess this land!" or "You do not deserve this land!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [eat](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Therefore say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: You eat blood, and you lift up your eyes towards your idols, then you pour out people's blood. Should you really possess the land?'

## Ezekiel 33:26

### You have depended on your swords

Here “swords” represent doing violent things. Alternate translation: “You have committed violent acts with your swords to get what you want” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### done disgusting things

“done things that I hate very much”

### each man defiles his neighbor’s wife

It is implied that they defile their neighbor’s wives by sleeping with them. Alternate translation: “each man sleeps with his neighbor’s wife” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You have depended](#)
- [your swords](#)

#### ULT

**26** [You have depended](#) on [your swords](#) and have done disgusting things; each man defiles his neighbor’s wife. Should you really possess the land?’

## Ezekiel 33:27

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people who were living in the ruins of Israel.

### As I live

“As surely as I am alive.” Yahweh uses this expression to show that what he says next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

### the ones in the ruins will fall by the sword

The phrase “fall by the sword” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “enemies will kill the ones living in the ruins” (See: [Idiom](#))

### those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues

“plagues will kill the people who live in fortresses and caves”

### fortresses

A fortress is a building that people build to protect themselves from enemies who attack them.

### caves

Caves are natural holes in the side of a mountain or down in the ground. They are usually made of rock.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [live](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [to](#)

### ULT

**27** You will say this to them, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: As I [live](#), surely the ones in the ruins will fall [by the sword](#), and I will give those in the fields [to](#) the living creatures as food, and those in fortresses and in caves will die of plagues.’

## Ezekiel 33:28

### the pride of its might will end

The word “it” refers to the land, which refers to the people of the land. Alternate translation: “the people of the land will not be proud anymore that they are strong” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the mountains of Israel will be deserted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will live in the mountains of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### there will be no one to pass through them

“there will be no one left to travel through the land or over the mountains”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will turn the land
- into a desolation
- of Israel

#### ULT

**28** Then I will turn the land into a desolation and a horror, and the pride of its might will end, for the mountains of Israel will be deserted, and there will be no one to pass through them.’

## Ezekiel 33:29

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So they will know that I am Yahweh, when I make the land a desolation and a waste because of all the abominations that they have done.

### all the abominations that they have done

The abstract noun “abominations” can be stated as “things I hate.” Alternate translation: “all the things they have done that I hate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### they have done

“the people have done”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the land](#)
- [a desolation](#)

## Ezekiel 33:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### that comes out from Yahweh

“that Yahweh tells him to speak” or “that Yahweh gives him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- your people
- of man
- your people
- of the houses
- to his brother
- from Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So now you, **son of man**—**your people** are saying things about you beside the walls and the gates **of the houses**, and each says to one another—each man **to his brother**, ‘Let us go and listen to the prophet’s word that comes out **from Yahweh!**’

## Ezekiel 33:31

### Right words are in their mouths, but their hearts are going after unjust profit

Here “mouths” represent speaking. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: “They speak about loving me, but their hearts are going after unjust profit” or (2) Alternate translation: “They speak about the things they lust after, and their hearts are going after unjust profit” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### their hearts are going after unjust profit

Here “hearts” represents desire. Alternate translation: “in their hearts they want to get their unjust profit” or “they desire to get things in ways that are not just” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [people](#)
- [but their hearts](#)
- [are going](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So my [people](#) will come to you, as they often do, and will sit in front of you and listen to your words, but they will not obey them. Right words are in their mouths, [but their hearts are going](#) after unjust profit.

## Ezekiel 33:32

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about the people of Israel.

### you are like a lovely song to them

Here “you” refers to Ezekiel, and here he represents the message he speaks. This compares Ezekiel’s message to a lovely song, which means the people enjoy listening to him, but they do not think his message is important enough to obey. Alternate translation: “they think that your words are like a lovely song” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> For you are like a lovely song to them, a beautiful sound that is well played on a stringed instrument, so they will listen to your words, but none of them will obey them.

### a lovely song

This could mean: (1) “a beautiful song” or (2) “a love song” or “a song about love.”

### that is well played on a stringed instrument

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that someone plays very well on a stringed instrument” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### stringed instrument

something that has strings and people use to make music



## Ezekiel 33:33

### behold!

The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “indeed!”

### that a prophet has been among them

“that I really sent you as a prophet to them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- they will know that
- a prophet

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So when all of this happens—behold! it will happen!—then they will know that a prophet has been among them.”

## **Ezekiel 34**

### **Ezekiel 34 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **God protects the people**

God is against those who exploit others. He will protect and take care of his people. (See: [people of God](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

The people of Israel are compared to sheep and God and the son of David as good shepherds. This is a common metaphor in scripture. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 34:1

### General Information:

In chapter 34, Yahweh speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel were the shepherds that were supposed to care for the flock but have not. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 34:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### the shepherds of Israel

The leaders of Israel are spoken as if they were shepherds. They were supposed to take care of their people like shepherds take care of their flock. Alternate translation: “the leaders of Israel who are like shepherds” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### are shepherding themselves

The leaders taking care of themselves instead of the people are spoken of as if they were shepherding themselves. AT “are feeding and taking care of themselves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Should not shepherds guard the flock?

Yahweh uses this question to scold the leaders for not taking care of the people. Alternate translation: “Shepherds should feed the flock and take care of it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [the flock](#)

#### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), prophesy against the shepherds [of Israel](#). Prophesy and say to them, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this to the shepherds: Woe to the shepherds [of Israel](#) who are shepherding themselves. Should not shepherds guard [the flock](#)?’

## Ezekiel 34:3

### You eat the fatty portions ... dress in wool

This continues speaking of the leaders of Israel as if they were bad shepherds that kill the best animals in their flock for food and clothing. Alternate translation: "You are like shepherds who eat the fatty portions ... dress in wool" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> You [eat](#) the fatty portions and you dress in wool. [You slaughter](#) the fatlings [of the flock](#). You do not shepherd at all.

### You eat the fatty portions

The fatty portions come from the sheep and the goats. Alternate translation: "You eat the fatty parts of the sheep and goats" or "You eat the best parts of the sheep and goats" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### dress in wool

"wear the wool from the sheep"

### the fatlings

"the youngest and fattest sheep and goats"

### do not shepherd at all

"do not feed and take care of the flock"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eat](#)
- [You slaughter](#)
- [of the flock](#)

## Ezekiel 34:4

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### have diseases

This could mean: (1) “are sick” or (2) “are weak”

### You do not bind up the ones who are broken

“You do not wrap cloth around the broken bones of those who are wounded”

### the ones who are broken

“the sheep that have broken bones” or “the sheep that are injured”

### you do not restore

“you do not bring back”

### the outcasts

“the sheep that have been chased away” or “those that others have chased away”

### the lost

The words “the sheep or goats” are left out of this phrase, but they are intended to be understood. Alternate translation: “the sheep or goats that are lost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### through strength and violence

“forcefully and cruelly”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [strengthened](#)
- [restore](#)
- [seek](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You have not [strengthened](#) those who have diseases, nor do you heal the ones who are ill. You do not bind up the ones who are broken, and you do not [restore](#) the outcasts or [seek](#) the lost. Instead, you rule over them through strength and violence.

## Ezekiel 34:5

### Then they were scattered without a shepherd

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then they scattered because they did not have a shepherd" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they became food for all the living beasts in the fields

"all of the wild animals could attack and eat them"

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then they were scattered without a shepherd, and they became food for all the living beasts in the fields, after they were scattered.

## Ezekiel 34:6

### it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth

“my flock is spread out all over the earth”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- My flock
- them
- entire surface
- of the earth
- for
- is searching

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> My flock strays on all of the mountains and on every high hill, and it is dispersed over the entire surface of the earth. Yet no one is searching for them.



## Ezekiel 34:7

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, shepherds, hear the word of Yahweh:

### hear the word of Yahweh

This is an idiom that is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “listen to Yahweh’s message” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

## Ezekiel 34:8

### because my flock has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: “because all the beasts in the fields steal my flock and eat them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### plunder

things that are stolen

### all the beasts in the fields

Here “all” is a generalization that refers to all the wild animals that eat sheep. Alternate translation: “all the wild animals in the fields” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### because there was no shepherd

“because they did not have a shepherd”

### none of my shepherds sought my flock

“none of my shepherds tried to find my flock”

### guarded themselves

“shepherded themselves” or “fed and cared for themselves”

### did not shepherd my flock

“did not feed and care for my flock”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [my flock](#)
- [my flock](#)
- [my flock](#)
- [themselves](#)
- [sought](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> As I [live](#)—this is [the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—because [my flock](#) has become plunder and food for all the beasts in the fields, because there was no shepherd and none of my shepherds [sought my flock](#), but the shepherds guarded [themselves](#) and did not shepherd [my flock](#).

## Ezekiel 34:9

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and the leaders of Israel as if they were shepherds who have not cared for the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore, shepherds, hear the word of Yahweh:

### hear the word of Yahweh

“listen to Yahweh’s message.” This is an idiom that is used to introduce a special message from God. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 34:10

### The Lord Yahweh says this

This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Behold!

The word "Behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Indeed!"

### I am against the shepherds

"I am opposed to the shepherds"

### I will require my flock from their hand

The phrase "require ... from their hand" is an idiom that means to hold or consider someone responsible for something. Alternate translation: "I will hold them responsible for all the bad things that happen to my flock" or "I will punish them for all the bad things they let happen to my flock" (See: [Idiom](#))

### I will dismiss them from shepherding the flock

"I will not let them shepherd the flock any longer" or "I will not let them be the shepherds of the flock any longer"

### shepherd themselves

"feed and take care of themselves"

### from their mouths

Here "mouths" represent eating. Alternate translation: "so they cannot eat them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### my flock will no longer be food for them

"the shepherds will no longer eat the sheep and the goats of my flock"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [my flock](#)
- [the flock](#)
- [my flock](#)
- [from their hand](#)
- [since I will take away](#)

### ULT

**10** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against the shepherds, and I will require [my flock from their hand](#). Then I will dismiss them from shepherding [the flock](#); neither will the shepherds any longer shepherd themselves [since I will take away my flock](#) from their mouths, so that my flock will no longer be food for them.

## Ezekiel 34:11

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. Here he speaks of himself as if he were their shepherd and will take care of them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**11** For [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this:  
Behold! I myself will seek out [my flock](#)  
and I will look after them,

### For the Lord Yahweh says this

This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "For this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Behold!

The word "Behold" here alerts the shepherds to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### will seek out

"will look for"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [my flock](#)

## Ezekiel 34:12

### within the midst of his scattered flock

“with his scattered flock”

### they were scattered

It is implied that the animals in the flock scattered because they did not have a shepherd to care for them or protect them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they scattered because they did not have a shepherd to care for them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### on the day of clouds and darkness

“on the cloudy and dark day.” Disasters are spoken of as if they were a day of darkness. Alternate translation: “when terrible disasters happened to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> like a shepherd seeking [his flock](#) on the day he is within the midst of his scattered [flock](#). Thus I will seek [my flock](#), and [I will rescue them](#) from all the places where they were scattered on the day of clouds [and darkness](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flock](#)
- [his flock](#)
- [my flock](#)
- [I will rescue them](#)
- [and darkness](#)

## Ezekiel 34:13

### bring them

“bring my sheep and my goats” or “bring my flock”

### from among the peoples

“from the places where they lived with other peoples”

### I will put them in pastures ... every settlement in the land

Yahweh bringing his people back from exile to their land so that he can care for them and keep them safe is spoken of as if he were their shepherd who puts his flock in a place where there is plenty of land, food, and water. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### pastures

land that has grass and small plants that sheep and goats can eat

### settlement

This is a place where people live. Usually they live in houses in a settlement.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then I will bring them out](#)
- [among the peoples](#)
- [the lands](#)
- [in the land](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

**13** Then I will bring them out from among the peoples; I will gather them from the lands and bring them to their land. I will put them in pastures on the mountainsides of Israel, by the streams, and in every settlement in the land.

## Ezekiel 34:14

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the leaders of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. Here he speaks of himself as their shepherd who will take care of them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### their grazing places

“places where they can eat”

### abundant pastures

“lands that have a lot of grass and plants to eat”

### graze

eat grass and other plants

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in good](#)
- [in good](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**14** I will put them [in good](#) pastures; the high mountains [of Israel](#) will be their grazing places. They will lie down there [in good](#) places for grazing, in abundant pastures, and they will graze on the mountains [of Israel](#).



## Ezekiel 34:15

### I myself

The word “myself” adds emphasis. God would do this because the shepherds were not doing it. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### will shepherd

“will feed and take care of”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my flock](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**15** I myself will shepherd [my flock](#), and I myself will make them lie down—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—

## Ezekiel 34:16

### the lost

The words “the sheep or goats” are left out of this phrase, but they are intended to be understood. Alternate translation: “the sheep or goats that are lost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### restore the outcast

“bring back those that others have chased away”

### bind up the broken sheep

“wrap a cloth around any sheep’s broken bone” or “wrap a cloth around any sheep’s wound”

### the fat and the strong

The word “sheep” is understood. Alternate translation: “the fat sheep and the strong sheep” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will seek](#)
- [restore](#)
- [heal](#)
- [the strong](#)

### ULT

**16** I will seek the lost and restore the outcast. I will bind up the broken sheep and heal the sick sheep but the fat and the strong I will destroy. I will shepherd with justice.

## Ezekiel 34:17

### General Information:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel his message. Now it is to the people of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**17** So now you, [my flock](#)—this is what [the Lord](#) Yahweh says—behold, I will be a judge between sheep and sheep and between rams and male goats.

### behold, I

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important, I”

### I will be a judge between sheep and sheep

“I will judge between one sheep and another”

### rams and male goats

The male sheep and goats are usually the strongest in the flock and can get whatever they want from the other animals in the flock.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my flock](#)
- [the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 34:18

### Is it not enough ... feet

God uses these questions to scold Israel's leaders, who are spoken of as if they were the stronger animals in the flock that were unkind to the weaker ones. You can translate this as a statement as in the UST. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the good](#)

#### ULT

**18** Is it not enough to feed [on the good](#) pasture, that you must trample down with your feet what is left of the pasture; and to drink from clear waters, that you must muddy the rivers with your feet?

## Ezekiel 34:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Must my sheep](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [Must my sheep](#) eat what you have trampled with your feet, and drink what you have muddied with your feet?

## Ezekiel 34:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the Lord Yahweh says this

This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### to them

“to my flock”

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

### I myself

The word “myself” emphasizes that it is Yahweh who will judge. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### will judge between the fat sheep and the thin ones

“will make sure that the fat sheep and goats and the skinny sheep and goats are treating each other fairly”

### the fat sheep and the thin ones

The leaders and strong people in Israel are spoken of as if they were fat and strong animals in the flock. The poor and weak people in Israel are spoken of as if they were the thin and weak animals in the flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [will judge](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this to them: Behold! I myself [will judge](#) between the fat sheep and the thin ones,

## Ezekiel 34:21

### for you

The word “you” refers to the sheep and goats that were not treating other sheep and goats well.

### with your sides

“with the sides of your body”

### have gored

This could mean: (1) “have pushed” or “have shoved” (2) “have stabbed” or “have pierced”

### scattered them

“made them go in many different directions”

### away from the land

“away from the land of Israel”

### ULT

**21** for you have pushed them with your sides and shoulders, and you have gored all of the weak ones with your horns until you have scattered them away from the land.

## Ezekiel 34:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and of himself as their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they will no longer be plunder

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will not allow anyone to plunder them” or “I will not allow anyone to steal them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### will no longer be plunder

“will no longer be things that are stolen.” The shepherds and wild animals have been stealing the sheep and the goats from Yahweh’s flock.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will save](#)
- [and I will judge](#)

### ULT

22 [I will save](#) my flock and they will no longer be plunder, [and I will judge](#) between one sheep and another!



## Ezekiel 34:23

### I will set over them one shepherd

The phrase “set over” is an idiom that means to cause a person to rule someone else. Alternate translation: “I will assign one shepherd to be in charge of my sheep and the goats” (See: [Idiom](#))

### my servant David

Here “David” refers to a descendant of David. Alternate translation: “a descendant of my servant David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### He will shepherd them

The descendant of David who will be king over the people of Israel is spoken of as if he would be their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my servant](#)
- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> I will set over them one shepherd, [my servant David](#). He will shepherd them, he will feed them, and he will be their shepherd.

## Ezekiel 34:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- God
- and my servant
- David

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> For I, Yahweh, will be their God, and my servant David will be a prince among them—I, Yahweh, have declared this.

## Ezekiel 34:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel. Yahweh continues speaking of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a covenant of peace

“a covenant that brings peace”

### the evil wild animals

These are wild animals that could kill the sheep and the goats.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then I will make a](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [of peace](#)
- [the evil](#)
- [the land](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

### ULT

**25** [Then I will make a covenant of peace](#) with them and remove [the evil](#) wild animals from [the land](#), so that they will live securely [in the wilderness](#) and safely sleep in the forests.

## Ezekiel 34:26

### I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill

Some versions of the Bible translate this as “I will also turn them and the places around my hill into a blessing.”

### my hill

This refers to Mount Zion. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### I will send out showers

“I will cause it to rain”

### in due season

“at the right time”

### These will be showers of blessing

“This rain will be a blessing”

### Translation Words - ULT

- blessings
- of blessing

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> I will also bring blessings on them and on the places around my hill, for I will send out showers in due season. These will be showers of blessing.

## Ezekiel 34:27

### the earth will yield its produce

“the earth will grow food” or “food will grow on the earth”

### will be secure

“will be safe”

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### when I break the bars of their yoke

Slavery is spoken of as if it were a yoke that people wear like some animals. Alternate translation: “when I free them from being slaves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### from the hand of those who enslaved them

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “from the control of those who made them slaves” or “from those who made them slaves” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their fruit](#)
- [will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [when I rescue them](#)
- [from the hand of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then the trees of the field will produce [their fruit](#), and the earth will yield its produce. My sheep will be secure in their land; then they [will know that](#) I am [Yahweh](#), when I break the bars of their yoke, and [when I rescue them from the hand of](#) those who enslaved them.

## Ezekiel 34:28

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

### They will no longer be plunder for the nations

Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. Alternate translation: “The people of the nations will no longer steal from them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### plunder

These are things that are stolen or taken by force. See how you translated “plunder” in [Ezekiel 7:21](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the nations](#)
- [on the earth](#)
- [devour them](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> They will no longer be plunder [for the nations](#), and the wild animals [on the earth](#) will no longer [devour them](#). For they will live securely, and no one will frighten them.

## Ezekiel 34:29

### be victims of famine

“be starved” or “be starving because of lack of food”

### they will not bear the scorn of the nations

Here “nations” represents the people of the nations. The abstract noun “scorn” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “they will no longer hear the people of the nations insult them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For I will provide them a land known for its [crops](#); so they will not be victims [of famine](#) in the land, and they will not bear the scorn [of the nations](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [crops](#)
- [of famine](#)
- [of the nations](#)

## Ezekiel 34:30

### I, Yahweh their God, am with them

Here “I ... am with them” is an idiom that means Yahweh helps them. Alternate translation: “I, Yahweh their God, am helping them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### with them. They are my people

This can be stated as one sentence. Alternate translation: “with them, and that they are my people”

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then they will know that I, Yahweh their God, am with them. They are my people, the house of Israel—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their God](#)
- [my people](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)



## Ezekiel 34:31

### For you are my sheep, the flock of my pasture

This speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep and Yahweh is their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my sheep](#)
- [the flock](#)
- [and my people](#)
- [your God](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> For you are [my sheep](#), [the flock](#) of my pasture, [and my people](#), and I am [your God](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.'"

## **Ezekiel 35**

### **Ezekiel 35 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Edom**

Because the people of Edom rejoiced at the destruction of Israel, they too will be destroyed.

## Ezekiel 35:1

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak a prophecy. Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir, but the message is for all of the people of Edom.

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 35:2

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

2 “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) against Mount Seir [and prophesy](#) against it.

### set your face against Mount Seir

Mount Seir was far away, so Ezekiel could not see it, but Yahweh commands him to stare in that direction as a symbol of harming the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 6:2](#). Alternate translation: “turn toward Mount Seir and stare” or “stare toward Mount Seir so that the people there will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Mount Seir and prophesy against it

“the mountain of Seir.” Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for all of the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “Mount Seir and prophesy against it because of what the people of Edom have done” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [and prophesy](#)

## Ezekiel 35:3

### to it

“to the mountain” or “to the people of Edom”

### Behold! I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a waste

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to Mount Seir as if it could hear him. The message is for all of the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “Listen, Mount Seir, I will strike you with my hand and make you a desolation and a waste because of what your people did” (See: [Personification](#))

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Listen!” or “Indeed!”

### I am against you

“I am your enemy” or “I oppose you”

### I will strike you with my hand

Here “hand” represents power. Alternate translation: “I will use my power to strike you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### make you a desolation

The abstract noun “desolation” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “make you desolate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Yahweh](#)
- [with my hand](#)
- [a desolation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Say to it, ‘The [Lord Yahweh](#) says this: Behold! I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will strike you [with my hand](#) and make you [a desolation](#) and a waste.’

## Ezekiel 35:4

### General Information:

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desolate](#)
- [then you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> I will make your cities ruins, and you yourself will become [desolate](#); [then you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 35:5

### you poured them out into the hands of the sword

This metaphor could mean: (1) “you gave them over to their enemies who killed them with swords” or (2) “you killed them with swords.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### at the time of their distress

“at a time of disaster”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to the people](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [hands](#)
- [of the sword](#)
- [their punishment](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Because you have always been hostile [to the people of Israel](#), and because you poured them out into the [hands of the sword](#) at the time of their distress, at the time [their punishment](#) was at its greatest.

## Ezekiel 35:6

### I will prepare you for bloodshed

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Alternate translation: “I will make it easy for your enemies to kill many of you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### bloodshed will pursue you

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Yahweh speaks of bloodshed as if it were a person who could chase them. Alternate translation: “your enemies will chase you down and kill you” (See: [Personification](#))

### Since you did not hate bloodshed

Here “bloodshed” is a metonym for killing. Alternate translation: “Since you did not hate it when enemies brutally killed the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [and bloodshed](#)
- [will pursue you](#)
- [will pursue you](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, as I [live](#)—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—I will prepare you for bloodshed, [and bloodshed will pursue you!](#) Since you did not hate bloodshed, [bloodshed will pursue you.](#)



## Ezekiel 35:7

### General Information:

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

### when I cut off from it anyone who passes through and returns again

This could mean: (1) "cut off" is a metaphor that means to destroy. Alternate translation: "I will destroy anyone who enters it or leaves it" or (2) "cut off" is a metaphor that means to stop someone from doing something. Alternate translation: "I will make it so that people do not travel back and forth through it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a complete](#)
- [I cut off](#)
- [and returns again](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> I will make Mount Seir [a complete](#) desolation when [I cut off](#) from it anyone who passes through [and returns again](#).

## Ezekiel 35:8

### those who were killed by the sword

Here “sword” represents enemies who fought them in battle. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 31:17](#). Alternate translation: “those whom enemies have killed with swords” or “those who have died in battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the sword](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I will fill its mountains with those who were killed; on your high hills and valleys and in all your streams those who were killed [by the sword](#) will fall.

## Ezekiel 35:9

### a perpetual desolation

“desolate forever.” This may be an exaggeration to emphasize the destruction. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Your cities will not be inhabited

This can be stated in active form. This may be an exaggeration for emphasis. Alternate translation: “People will not live in your cities” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

### but you will know

Here “you” is plural. God is speaking to the people of Mount Seir, rather than to a single mountain. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desolation](#)
- [you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> I will make you a perpetual [desolation](#). Your cities will not be inhabited, but [you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 35:10

### General Information:

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

### You have said

The word “You” refers to the mountain of Seir. Ezekiel is to speak to the mountain as if it can hear him. The message is for the people of Edom. Alternate translation: “Your people said” (See: [Personification](#))

### these two lands

“the lands of Israel and Judah”

### will become mine

The word “mine” can be stated in plural form. Alternate translation: “will become ours”

### we

The word “we” refers to the people of Edom.

### even when Yahweh was present with them

It is implied that Yahweh was protecting Israel and Judah. Alternate translation: “but Yahweh was there protecting Israel and Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nations...two](#)
- [lands](#)
- [and we will possess](#)
- [even when Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**10** You have said, “These two [nations](#) and these [two lands](#) will become mine, and [we will possess](#) them,” [even when Yahweh](#) was present with them.

## Ezekiel 35:11

### I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy

This could mean: (1) "I will punish you because of your anger and jealousy" or (2) "just as you acted against the people of Israel with anger and jealousy, I will act against you with anger and jealousy."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)
- [you](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore, as I live—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration—so I will do according to your anger and according to your jealousy that [you](#) had in your hatred [of Israel](#), and I will show myself to them when I judge you.

## Ezekiel 35:12

### General Information:

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

### against the mountains of Israel

Here “mountains” represents the whole land of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### They have been destroyed

This phrase can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They are in ruins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they have been given over to us to devour

The people of Mount Seir taking the land of Israel and using it for themselves is spoken of as if they were wild animals that would devour the mountains of Israel. Alternate translation: “they are here for us to devour” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the insults](#)
- [against](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**12** [So you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#). I have heard all [the insults](#) you spoke [against](#) the mountains [of Israel](#), when you said, “They have been destroyed; they have been given over to us to devour.”

## Ezekiel 35:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**13** You exalted yourselves against me with what you said, and you multiplied the words you said against me; and I heard it all.

## Ezekiel 35:14

### General Information:

This continues the message that Ezekiel is to speak to Mount Seir. The message is for all the people of Edom.

### The Lord Yahweh says this

This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, say" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### I will make you a desolation

Here "you" refers to Mount Seir, but the message is for the people of Edom. The abstract noun "desolation" can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "Because of what your people did I will make you desolate" (See: [Personification](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the entire earth rejoices

Here "earth" represents the people of the earth. The word "entire" is a generalization that refers only to people near Mount Seir. Alternate translation: "people who know that I have destroyed you rejoice" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [a desolation](#)
- [entire earth](#)

#### ULT

**14** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I will make you [a desolation](#), while the [entire earth](#) rejoices.



## Ezekiel 35:15

### As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the people of Israel because of its desolation

This speaks of the land that Yahweh gave to the Israelites as their inheritance. Alternate translation: “As you rejoiced when I made the land of the Israelites desolate” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will do the same to you

This could mean: (1) “I will make your land desolate” or (2) “I will rejoice when your land is desolate” or (3) “I will make other people rejoice because of your desolation.”

### Then they will know

The word **they** possibly refers to (1) “the people of the earth” or (2) “the people of Israel and Judah.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [desolation](#)
- [a desolation](#)
- [Then they will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the [people of Israel](#) because of its [desolation](#), I will do the same to you. You will become [a desolation](#), Mount Seir, and all of Edom—all of it! [Then they will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).”

## **Ezekiel 36**

### **Ezekiel 36 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Israel restored**

Israel is promised to be restored by Yahweh. Because of his honor, God will bring Israel back to their land. (See: [promise, promised](#) and [restore, restoration](#))

#### **New hearts**

God will forgive Israel's sin and give them the desire to obey him. This is expressed by the metonym "heart." (See: [forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

## Ezekiel 36:1

### General Information:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak a prophecy. Ezekiel is to speak to the mountains of Israel, but the message is for all of the people of Israel.

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### prophecy to the mountains of Israel

God wants Ezekiel to speak to the mountains as if they were people. The message is for the people of Israel. (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

### ULT

1 “Now you, [son of man](#), prophesy to the mountains [of Israel](#) and say, ‘Mountains [of Israel](#), listen to the word [of Yahweh](#).’

## Ezekiel 36:2

### Aha

This is an expression of joy. It can be translated as "I am very happy" or "This is great."

### The ancient high places

"The very old mountains." This refers to the high mountains of Israel.

### have become our possession

"now belong to us"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: The enemy has said about you, "Aha!" and "The ancient high places have become our possession."

## Ezekiel 36:3

### Because of your desolation

The abstract noun “desolation” can be stated as “desolate.”  
Alternate translation: “Because you, mountains of Israel, have become desolate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### because of the attacks that came on you from all sides

“because you were attacked from every direction” or “because your enemies attacked you from every direction”

### you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, and of people’s stories

Here, “lips” and “tongues” represent people speaking. Alternate translation: “people are saying bad things about you, and the nations are telling bad stories about you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Therefore prophesy and say, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Because [of your desolation](#) and because of the attacks that came on you from all sides, you have become a possession of the other [nations](#); you have been the subject of slanderous lips and tongues, [and of people’s stories](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [of your desolation](#)
- [nations](#)
- [and of people’s stories](#)

## Ezekiel 36:4

### General Information:

This continues the message that Yahweh tells Ezekiel to speak to the mountains of Israel. The message is for all of the people of Israel. It may be helpful to use a verse bridge here, as the UST does, to arrange the text in a more logical order. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

### listen to the word of the Lord Yahweh

“listen to the message of the Lord Yahweh”

### the uninhabited desolations

The abstract noun “desolations” can be stated as “desolate cities.” Alternate translation: “the desolate cities which have no people living in them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the forsaken cities

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cities that people have left behind” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### that have become plunder

“that enemies have stolen from”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [The Lord](#) (2)
- [nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Therefore, mountains [of Israel](#), listen to the word of the [Lord Yahweh](#): [The Lord Yahweh](#) says this to the mountains and the high hills, to the streambeds and valleys, to the uninhabited desolations and the forsaken cities that have become plunder and a subject of mocking for the other [nations](#) that surround them—

## Ezekiel 36:5

### in the fire of my fury

This speaks of Yahweh's fury as if it were a fire. Yahweh loves Israel very much, so he becomes jealous and angry when other nations mock it. Alternate translation: "because of my intense jealousy" or "because of my very strong anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### against Edom and all

"and against all of Edom"

### had both joy in their heart and disdain in their spirit, as they seized my land

Here "heart" and "spirit" represent a person's inner being. The ideas of having joy and disdain can be expressed with the verbs "rejoiced" and "despised." Alternate translation: "who despised the people of Israel and rejoiced while they took my land" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [the other](#)
- [nations](#)
- [who took my land](#)
- [who had both joy](#)
- [in their](#)
- [heart](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> therefore [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I have certainly spoken in [the fire](#) of my fury against [the other nations](#), against Edom and all [who took my land](#) for themselves as a possession, against all those [who had both joy in their heart](#) and disdain in their spirit, as they seized my land that they might claim its pasturelands for themselves.'

## Ezekiel 36:6

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

### In my fury and in my anger

The words “fury” and “anger” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of his anger. Alternate translation: “Because I am extremely angry” (See: [Doublet](#))

### you have borne the insults of nations

“other nations have insulted you” or “other nations have mocked you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [of nations](#)

### ULT

6 Therefore, prophesy to the land of [Israel](#) and say to the mountains and to the high hills, to the streambeds and to the valleys, ‘[the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Behold! In my fury and in my anger I am declaring this because you have borne the insults [of nations](#).



## Ezekiel 36:7

### General Information:

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

### I myself will lift up my hand to swear

Here "lift up my hand" is a symbolic action that shows he will truly do what he has sworn to do. Alternate translation: "I solemnly swear" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### that the nations that surround you will certainly carry their own shame

The people experiencing shame are spoken of as if they will carry their shame. Alternate translation: "that people will certainly mock the nations that surround you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### surround you

The word "you" refers to the mountains of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [my hand](#)
- [the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, [the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I myself will lift up [my hand](#) to swear that [the nations](#) that surround you will certainly carry their own shame.

## Ezekiel 36:8

### General Information:

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

### you will grow branches and bear fruit

Here "you" refers to the mountain of Israel which here represents the trees on the mountain that will grow fruit. Alternate translation: "your trees will grow branches and bear fruit" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But you, mountains [of Israel](#), [you will grow](#) branches and bear fruit for [my people Israel](#), since they will soon come back to you.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [you will grow](#)
- [my people](#)

## Ezekiel 36:9

### behold, I

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I”

### I am for you

“I want to do good things to you.” The word “you” refers to the mountains of Israel.

### I treat you with favor

“I will be kind to you”

### you will be plowed and sown with seed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “my people, Israel, will plow your ground and sow it with seed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For behold, I am for you, and I treat you with favor; you will be plowed and sown with seed.

## Ezekiel 36:10

### General Information:

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is intended for the people of Israel.

### So I will multiply upon you

Yahweh is speaking to the mountains. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "So, mountains of Israel, I will multiply upon you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### even the whole house of Israel

Here "house" represents people. Alternate translation: "all of the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then people will live in the cities and will rebuild the ruins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the number of your people](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So I will multiply upon you [the number of your people](#), even the whole [house of Israel](#). The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt.

## Ezekiel 36:11

### they will multiply and be fruitful

Here “be fruitful” is an idiom that means to have many children and descendants. Alternate translation: “they will become very many people and have very many children” (See: [Idiom](#))

### you to be inhabited as you previously were

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people to live on you mountains as they did before” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [man](#)
- [and beast](#)
- [you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**11** I will multiply [man and beast](#) on you mountains so that they will multiply and be fruitful. Then I will cause you to be inhabited as you previously were, and I will make you prosper more than you did in the past, for [you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 36:12

### They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance

The people living in the mountains and land of Israel permanently is spoke of as if the people would inherit them. Alternate translation: "They will possess you permanently" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you will no longer cause their children to die

It is implied that in the past children died because there was not enough food in the land. Now the land would produce enough food. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will bring men](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [They will possess](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I will bring men, my people Israel, to walk on you. They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance, and you will no longer cause their children to die.

## Ezekiel 36:13

### General Information:

This continues Yahweh's message to the mountains of Israel. The message is meant for the people of Israel.

### they are saying to you

"other nations are saying to you mountains"

### You devour men

Not enough food growing in Israel so that people die is spoken of as if the mountains of Israel were devouring the people. Alternate translation: "You cause many people to die" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### bereaving your nation of children

"you cause your people's children to die"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [devour](#)
- [men](#)
- [nation](#)

### ULT

**13** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Because they are saying to you, "You [devour men](#), bereaving your [nation](#) of children,"

## Ezekiel 36:14

### you will not consume people any longer

Not enough food growing in Israel so that people die is spoken of as if the mountains of Israel were consuming the people. Alternate translation: "you will no longer cause the people to die" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [consume](#)
- [people](#)
- [This is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

**14** therefore you will not [consume people](#) any longer, and you will no longer make your nation mourn their deaths. [This is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.



## Ezekiel 36:15

### Nor will I allow you to hear the insults of the nations any longer

This speaks of the mountains as if they were able to hear when people insult them. Alternate translation: "I will no longer allow the other nations to insult you" (See: [Personification](#))

### you will no longer have to bear the shame of the peoples

Experiencing shame is spoken of as if the mountains could bear shame. Alternate translation: "the peoples will no longer cause you to feel ashamed" (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the nations](#)
- [of the peoples](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Nor will I allow you to hear the insults [of the nations](#) any longer; you will no longer have to bear the shame [of the peoples](#) or cause your nation to fall—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration."

## Ezekiel 36:16

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

16 Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 36:17

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with their ways and their deeds

“by the way they lived and the things they did”

### Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me

This compares how the people behaved to a woman’s unclean menstruation rags. This emphasizes how disgusting their behaviors were to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “Their ways were as disgusting to me as the unclean menstruation of a woman” (See: [Simile](#))

### menstruation of a woman

the time every month when a woman bleeds from her womb

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [when the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

17 “[Son of man](#), [when the house of Israel](#) inhabited their land, they defiled it with their ways and their deeds. Their ways were like the unclean menstruation of a woman before me.

## Ezekiel 36:18

### I poured out my fury against them

Yahweh punishing people because he is angry is spoken of as if his fury were a liquid that he poured out. Alternate translation: "I did things to them that showed how angry I was" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for the blood that they poured out on the land

This is an idiom that refers to killing someone. Alternate translation: "because they made the blood of many people spill onto the land" or "because they murdered many people" (See: [Idiom](#))

### for their pollution of it by their idols

The people worshiping idols is spoken of as if the idols made the land physically dirty. Alternate translation: "because they defiled the land with their idols" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my fury against them](#)
- [of it](#)

#### ULT

**18** So I poured out [my fury against them](#) for the blood that they poured out on the land and for their pollution [of it](#) by their idols.

## Ezekiel 36:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel about Israel.

### **I scattered them among the nations; they were dispersed through the lands**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 12:15](#). Alternate translation: "I caused them to separate and live in separate lands" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **they were dispersed through the lands**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I dispersed them through the lands" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **their ways and their deeds**

Here "ways" and "deeds" mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "the things that they have done" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [among the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> I scattered them [among the nations](#); they were dispersed through the lands. I judged them according to their ways and their deeds.

## Ezekiel 36:20

### they profaned my holy name

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. Alternate translation: “they mocked me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### when people

“because other people said”

### Are these really the people of Yahweh?

The people use a question to express their surprise at what they saw. Alternate translation: “I cannot believe these are really the people of Yahweh!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### For they have been thrown out of his land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For Yahweh has forced them out of his land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### his land

This refers to the land of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the nations](#)
- [they profaned](#)
- [my holy](#)
- [name](#)
- [said](#)
- [the people](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [thrown out](#)

#### ULT

**20** Then they went to [the nations](#), and wherever they went, [they profaned my holy name](#) when people [said](#) of them, ‘Are these really [the people of Yahweh](#)? For they have been [thrown out](#) of his land.’

## Ezekiel 36:21

**But I had compassion for my holy name that the house of Israel had defiled among the nations, when they went there**

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. Alternate translation: “When the house of Israel went among the nations, they caused me disgrace, but I wanted people to know that I am holy” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I had compassion for my holy name**

“I cared about my holy name”

**the house of Israel**

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [for my holy](#)
- [name](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [among the nations](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But I had compassion [for my holy name](#) that the [house of Israel](#) had defiled [among the nations](#), when they went there.

## Ezekiel 36:22

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel, and he gives him a message to Israel.

### the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### for your sake

“because of you” or “in order to help you”

### but for my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone

Here “name” represents Yahweh and his reputation. Alternate translation: “but so that the people of the nations, who mock me because of you, will know that I am holy” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you have profaned among the nations everywhere you have gone

“you have caused the people of the nations to mock everywhere you have gone”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [for my holy](#)
- [the nations](#)

### ULT

**22** Therefore say to [the house of Israel](#), ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: I am not doing this for your sake, [house of Israel](#), but [for my holy](#) name, which you have profaned among [the nations](#) everywhere you have gone.’



## Ezekiel 36:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will make
- name holy
- among the nations
- of the nations
- Then the nations will know
- Yahweh
- the Lord

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For I will make my great name holy, which you have profaned among the nations—in the midst of the nations, you profaned it. Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—when you see that I am holy.

## Ezekiel 36:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the nations
- land

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> I will take you from the nations and gather you from every land, and I will bring you to your land.

## Ezekiel 36:25

**I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols**

Yahweh forgiving the people and causing them to no longer sin is spoken of as if he would cleanse them with water. The phrase “you will be purified” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will purify you as if I were sprinkling you with pure water, and I will cause you to stop worshiping idols” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### all of your impurities

“all the things that made you unclean”

### Translation Words - ULT

- pure
- so you will be purified
- I will purify you

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then I will sprinkle pure water on you so you will be purified from all of your impurities, and I will purify you from all of your idols.

## Ezekiel 36:26

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

**I will give you a new heart and a new spirit in your innermost parts, and I will take away the heart of stone from your flesh. For I will give you a heart of flesh**

Yahweh causing the people to no longer be stubborn but to love and serve Yahweh is spoken of as if he will take away their old heart and give them a new heart and spirit. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a new heart and a new spirit

Here “heart” and “spirit” represent a person’s thoughts, attitudes, and emotions. See how you translated “heart” and “spirit” in [Ezekiel 11:19](#).

### in your innermost parts

“within you” or “inside of you”

### the heart of stone

This speaks of people being stubborn as if their hearts were made of stone. See how you translated “stone heart” in [Ezekiel 11:19](#). Alternate translation: “the heart that is as hard as stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### your flesh

“your body”

### a heart of flesh

People being willing to serve Yahweh is spoken of as if their hearts were soft like flesh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:19](#). Alternate translation: “a heart that is soft like flesh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [the heart](#)
- [a heart](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [of flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> I will give you a new [heart](#) and a new [spirit](#) in your innermost parts, and I will take away [the heart](#) of stone from your flesh. For I will give you [a heart of flesh](#).

## Ezekiel 36:27

### enable you to walk in my statutes

A person acting or behaving in a certain way is spoken of as if it were a person walking. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:20](#). Alternate translation: "enable you to obey my statutes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

**27** I will set my [Spirit](#) in you and enable you [to walk](#) in my statutes [and keep](#) my [decrees](#), so you will do them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [to walk](#)
- [and keep](#)
- [decrees](#)

## Ezekiel 36:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ancestors](#)
- [people](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then you will inhabit the land that I gave to your [ancestors](#); you will be my [people](#), and I will be your [God](#).

## Ezekiel 36:29

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

### For I will save you from all of your uncleanness

Something that is unacceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. Alternate translation: "For I will save you from everything that made me reject you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will summon the grain

"I will call the grain to come." This phrase presents the grain as a servant of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I will cause there to be grain in the land of Israel" (See: [Personification](#))

### I will no longer put famine upon you

Yahweh causing a famine in the land is spoken of as if he put famine on the people. Alternate translation: "I will no longer cause there to be a famine" or "I will no longer cause there to be no food" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [For I will save](#)
- [summon](#)
- [the grain](#)
- [famine](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For I will save you from all of your uncleanness. I will [summon the grain](#) and multiply it. I will no longer put [famine](#) upon you.

## Ezekiel 36:30

### you will no longer bear the shame of famine among the nations

Experiencing shame is spoken of as if the people had to carry the shame. Alternate translation: “the nations will no longer make you feel ashamed because you suffer from famine” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the fruit](#)
- [the shame](#)
- [of famine](#)
- [among the nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> I will multiply [the fruit](#) of the tree and the produce of the field so that you will no longer bear [the shame of famine among the nations](#).



## Ezekiel 36:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- your wicked
- good
- your own sins

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then you will think of your wicked ways and your deeds that were not good, and you will show loathing on your faces because of your own sins and your disgusting deeds.

## Ezekiel 36:32

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

### let this be known to you

“know this” or “you can be sure of this.” Yahweh says this to emphasize that it is not because the people are good that he will restore them. This phrase can be moved to the beginning of the verse. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### So be ashamed and disgraced

The words “ashamed” and “disgraced” share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of the shame. Alternate translation: “So be very ashamed” (See: [Doublet](#))

### because of your ways

“because of what you do”

### house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. Alternate translation: “people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this is the Lord](#)
- [let this be known](#)
- [So be ashamed](#)
- [and disgraced](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> I am not doing this for your sake—  
[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration—  
[let this be known](#) to you. [So be](#)  
[ashamed and disgraced](#) because of  
 your ways, [house of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 36:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Lord
- that I purify you
- your iniquity

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: On the day that I purify you from all your iniquity, I will cause you to inhabit the cities and to rebuild the ruined places.

## Ezekiel 36:34

### you will plow the ruined land

“you will farm the ruined land”

### before the eyes of all who pass by

The eyes represent sight. Alternate translation: “to those who pass by and see it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will plow](#)
- [no longer a ruin](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For [you will plow](#) the ruined land until it is [no longer a ruin](#) before the eyes of all who pass by.

## Ezekiel 36:35

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Israel.

### Then they

The word “they” refers to the people who walk through the land of Israel.

### the uninhabited ruins

“the ruins that no one lived in”

### that were torn down

This can be stated in active form. This could mean: (1) Alternate translation: “that enemies had torn down” or (2) Alternate translation: “that people could not get into” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### are now fortified and inhabited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people have now rebuilt them and have started living there again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [This land](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Then they will say, “[This land](#) was desolate, but it has become like the garden of Eden; the desolate cities and the uninhabited ruins that were torn down are now fortified and inhabited.”

## Ezekiel 36:36

### that I built up the ruins

“and that I built up the cities that enemies had torn down”

### replanted the abandoned places

“planted crops in the desolate land”

### Translation Words - ULT

- nations
- you will know
- Yahweh
- I am Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Then the other nations around you will know that I am Yahweh, that I built up the ruins and replanted the abandoned places. I am Yahweh. I have declared it and I will do it.

## Ezekiel 36:37

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### I will be asked by the house of Israel

Here “house” represents people. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: “The people of Israel will ask me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### to increase them like a flock of people

Yahweh causing the people to multiply greatly and quickly is spoken of as if they were a flock of sheep. Sheep multiply very quickly. Alternate translation: “to make them multiply like a flock of sheep” or “to make the people multiply quickly like sheep” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [I will be asked by the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [for](#)
- [of people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Again [I will be asked by the house of Israel](#) to do this [for](#) them, to increase them like a [flock of people](#).

## Ezekiel 36:38

### Like the flock is set apart for sacrifices, like the flock in Jerusalem at her appointed feasts

The phrase "is set apart" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Like the great number of sheep that the people set apart for sacrifices or bring to Jerusalem for the appointed feasts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Like the flock [is set apart for sacrifices, like the flock in Jerusalem](#) at her appointed feasts, so will the ruined cities be filled with flocks of [people and they will know](#) that I am [Yahweh.](#)"

### so will the ruined cities be filled with flocks of people

This speaks of the people of Israel as if they were a flock of sheep. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so will the great number of people be who will be living in the cities that are now ruined but the people will rebuild" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [is set apart for sacrifices](#)
- [like the flock in Jerusalem](#)
- [people](#)
- [and they](#)
- [will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)



## **Ezekiel 37**

### **Ezekiel 37 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Israel restored**

God will unite the two kingdoms of Israel and Judah and the Messiah will rule over them. This will come in a prophesied day of restoration. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#) and [restore, restoration](#))

### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

#### **Metaphor**

The people are discouraged and compare themselves to skeletons, but God will cause them to become a nation again. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Ezekiel 37:1

### General Information:

Ezekiel is speaking.

### The hand of Yahweh was upon me

The word “hand” is often used to refer to someone’s power or action. A person with his hand on another person has power over that other person. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 1:3](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh was controlling me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in the midst

“in the middle”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The hand](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [and he brought me out](#)
- [by the Spirit](#)
- [and set me down](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [The hand of Yahweh](#) was upon me, and he brought me out by the [Spirit of Yahweh](#) and set me down in the midst of a valley; it was full of bones.

## Ezekiel 37:2

### round and round

“in every direction”

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then he made me pass through them
- of them

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then he made me pass through them round and round. Behold! A great many of them were in the valley. Behold! They were very dry.

## Ezekiel 37:3

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He said to me, “[Son of man](#), can these bones live again?” So I said, “[Lord](#) Yahweh, you alone [know](#).”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [know](#)

## Ezekiel 37:4

### General Information:

Yahweh speaks to Ezekiel.

### Listen to the word of Yahweh

“Listen to Yahweh’s message”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then he said to me, “Prophesy over these bones and say to them, ‘Dry bones. Listen to the word of Yahweh.

## Ezekiel 37:5

### Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### to put breath into you

The noun “breath” can be stated as the verb “breathe.” Alternate translation: “I will cause you to breathe”

### breath

The Hebrew word translated as “breath” in these verses is translated as “spirit” by a few modern versions. It is also translated as “wind” in [Ezekiel 37:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [breath](#)
- [and you will live](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this to these bones: Behold! I am about to put [breath](#) into you, [and you will live](#).

## Ezekiel 37:6

### sinews

the tissue that connects muscles to bones

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> I will place sinews over you and bring [flesh onto you](#). I will cover you with skin and put [breath](#) within you [so you will live](#). [Then you will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh onto you](#)
- [breath](#)
- [so you will live](#)
- [Then you will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 37:7

### General Information:

Ezekiel is speaking.

### as I was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh had commanded me to speak” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So I prophesied](#)
- [commanded](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [So I prophesied](#) as I was [commanded](#); as I prophesied, behold, a sound came, that of shaking. Then the bones drew together—bone against bone.



## Ezekiel 37:8

### sinews

This refers to the parts of human bodies that are like hard strings and hold the bones and muscles together. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 37:6](#).

### But there was still no breath in them

The noun “breath” can be stated as the verb “breathing.” Alternate translation: “But they were not breathing” or “But they were not alive”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [breath](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> I looked and, behold, sinews were now on them, and flesh grew up and skin covered them. But there was still no [breath](#) in them.

## Ezekiel 37:9

### the breath

Possible meanings are: (1) "breath" or (2) "spirit" or (3) "wind."

### from the four winds

"from the four directions that the wind can blow in." This is an idiom.  
Alternate translation: "from every direction" (See: [Idiom](#))

### these who have been killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "these people that enemies and disasters have killed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [Breath](#)
- [so they may live](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, "Prophecy to the breath, prophesy, [son of man](#), and say to the breath, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: [Breath](#), come from the four winds, and breathe on these who have been killed, [so they may live.](#)'"

## Ezekiel 37:10

### as I was commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh had commanded me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So I prophesied](#)
- [I was commanded](#)
- [and they lived](#)
- [army](#)

### ULT

**10** [So I prophesied](#) as I was [commanded](#); the breath came into them [and they lived](#). Then they stood on their feet, a very great [army](#).

## Ezekiel 37:11

### the entire house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Indeed!”

### We have been cut off

The people being destroyed and removed from their land is spoken of as if they had been cut off like a person would cut off a branch or piece of cloth. Alternate translation: “Our nation is destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [entire house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [and our hope](#)
- [is gone](#)
- [have been cut off](#)

### ULT

**11** Then Yahweh said to me, “[Son of man](#), these bones are the [entire house of Israel](#). Behold! They are saying, ‘Our bones have dried up, [and our hope is gone](#). We [have been cut off](#).’

## Ezekiel 37:12

### I will open your graves and lift you out from them

Yahweh restoring the people and bringing them back to their land is spoken of as if he will bring them back to life again. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [graves](#)
- [people](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Therefore prophesy and say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I will open your [graves](#) and lift you out from them, my [people](#). I will bring you back to the land of [Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 37:13

### General Information:

These are Yahweh's words to the house of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then you will know
- Yahweh
- your graves
- my people

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when I open your graves and bring you out from them, my people.

**Ezekiel 37:14****to rest in your land**

“to live peacefully in your own land”

**this is Yahweh’s declaration**

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel](#)

[5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**ULT**

**14** I will place [my Spirit](#) within you [so you will live](#), and I will cause you to rest in your land when [you know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#). I declare and will do it—[this is Yahweh’s declaration.](#)”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [my Spirit](#)
- [so you will live](#)
- [you know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [this is Yahweh’s](#)

## Ezekiel 37:15

### the word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then the word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,



## Ezekiel 37:16

### For Judah

Here “For” means “representing.” Alternate translation: “Representing Judah” or “Belonging to Judah”

### Judah

The tribe of Judah lived in the southern kingdom of Israel which was called Judah. Here the name is used to refer to the whole southern kingdom. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the people of Israel, his companions

This refers to the Israelites who lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. Alternate translation: “all the tribes of Judah” or “the tribes of Israel who are part of the kingdom of Judah”

### For Joseph, the branch of Ephraim

Joseph was Ephraim’s father. The tribe of Ephraim lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. Here the names are used to represent the whole northern kingdom. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### all the people of Israel, their companions

This refers to the Israelites who lived in the northern kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “all the tribes of Israel” or “the Israelites who were part of the kingdom of Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [and for the people](#)
- [of man](#)
- [For Judah](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel \(2\)](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [the people](#)

### ULT

**16** “So now you, [son of man](#), take one stick for yourself and write on it, ‘[For Judah and for the people of Israel](#), his companions.’ Then take another stick and write on it, ‘For Joseph, the branch of [Ephraim](#), and for all [the people of Israel](#), their companions.’”

## Ezekiel 37:17

### into one stick

“so that they become one stick”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**17** Bring both of them together into one stick, so that they become one in your [hand](#).

## Ezekiel 37:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### what these things of yours mean

“what your sticks mean” or “why you have these sticks”

### Translation Words - ULT

- your people
- your people

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> When **your people** speak to you and say, ‘Will you not tell us what these things of yours mean?’

## Ezekiel 37:19

### Behold!

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows.  
Alternate translation: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

### the branch of Joseph

"the stick of Joseph." This represents the kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### that is in the hand of Ephraim

The word "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "that is in the power of Ephraim" or "that the tribe of Ephraim rules over" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the tribes of Israel his companions

"the other tribes of Israel who are his companions" or "the other tribes of Israel who are part of that kingdom"

### the branch of Judah

"the stick of Judah." This represents the kingdom of Judah. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [joining](#)
- [the hand of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the branch of Judah](#)

### ULT

**19** then say to them, 'The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am taking the branch of [Joseph](#) that is in the hand of [Ephraim](#) and the tribes of [Israel](#) his companions and [joining](#) it to the branch of [Judah](#), so that they will make one branch, and they will become one in my hand.'

## Ezekiel 37:20

### before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “while they watched you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hold in your hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> [Hold in your hand](#) the branches that you wrote on before their eyes.

## Ezekiel 37:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### Behold!

“Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Lord
- the people
- of Israel
- nations
- went

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Declare to them, ‘The Lord Yahweh says this: Behold! I am about to take the people of Israel from among the nations where they went. I will gather them from the surrounding lands and I will bring them to their land.’

## Ezekiel 37:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- nation
- nations
- of Israel
- king
- kingdoms

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and there will be one king as king over all of them, and they will no longer be two nations. They will no longer be divided into two kingdoms.

## Ezekiel 37:23

### they will be my people and I will be their God

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 11:20](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [For I will save](#)
- [they have sinned](#)
- [will purify](#)
- [people](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then they will no longer defile themselves with their idols, their disgusting things, or any of their other sins. [For I will save](#) them from all of their faithless actions with which [they have sinned](#), and I [will purify](#) them, so they will be my [people](#) and I will be their [God](#). <sup>[1]</sup>



## Ezekiel 37:24

### General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Ezekiel.

### David my servant

Yahweh said “David” to refer to a descendant of David. See how you translated “my servant David” in [Ezekiel 34:23](#). Alternate translation: “A descendant of my servant David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### one shepherd over them

This speaks of a king ruling a people as if he were a shepherd leading sheep. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 34:23](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### over them

“over the people of Israel”

### will walk according to my decrees

This speaks of acting or behaving in a certain way as if it were a person walking. Alternate translation: “will live as I have commanded” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [my servant](#)
- [will be king](#)
- [and they will walk](#)
- [my decrees](#)
- [and they will keep](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [David my servant will be king](#) over them. So there will be one shepherd over them all, [and they will walk](#) according to [my decrees](#) and they will [keep](#) my statutes and obey them.

## Ezekiel 37:25

### had stayed

“had lived”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- to my servant
- my servant will be
- Jacob
- your fathers
- their grandchildren
- children
- their

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They will live in the land that I have given to my servant Jacob, where your fathers had stayed. They will live in it forever—they, their children, and their grandchildren, for David my servant will be their chief forever.

## Ezekiel 37:26

### General Information:

Yahweh is speaking about the people of Israel.

### I will establish

“I will set up” or “I will create”

### a covenant of peace

“a covenant that brings peace.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 34:25](#).

### I will establish them

It was implied that Yahweh would establish them in the land of Israel. Alternate translation: “I will set them in the land of Israel” or “I will cause them to live securely in the land of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### multiply them

“cause their people to increase in number”

### my holy place

“my holy sanctuary” or “my holy temple”

### in their midst

“among them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will establish a covenant
- I will establish a covenant
- covenant with them
- of peace
- holy

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> I will establish a covenant of peace with them. It will be an everlasting covenant with them. I will establish them and multiply them and set my holy place in their midst forever.

## Ezekiel 37:27

### My dwelling place

“The place where I live”

### I will be their God, and they will be my people

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 11:20](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [My dwelling place](#)
- [their God](#)
- [people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [My dwelling place](#) will be with them; I will be [their God](#), and they will be my [people](#).

## Ezekiel 37:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then the nations
- will know
- Yahweh
- Israel
- apart
- my holy place

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh who sets Israel apart, when my holy place is among them forever.'"  
37:23 <sup>[1]</sup> . However, the Hebrew text reads , which many think makes little sense in this context.

## **Ezekiel 38**

### **Ezekiel 38 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter begins a section prophesying against Gog. Later Gog will try to conquer Israel.

## Ezekiel 38:1

### The word of Yahweh came

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:16](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word [of Yahweh](#) came to me, saying,

## Ezekiel 38:2

### set your face toward Gog, the land of Magog, the chief prince ... Tubal

This is a command to stare at Gog and Magog as a symbol of punishing the people there. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 4:3](#). Alternate translation: “Stare at the land of Magog and at Gog, the chief prince ... Tubal” or “Stare at Gog, the chief prince ... Tubal, and at the land of Magog so that they will be harmed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> “[Son of man](#), set [your face](#) toward Gog, [the land](#) of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal; [and prophesy](#) against him.

### set your face

Here “face” is a metonym for attention or gaze, and “set your face” represents staring. Alternate translation: “stare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Gog, the land of Magog

It is implied that Magog is the land over which Gog rules. Alternate translation: “Gog who rules over the land of Magog” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Gog

This is the name of a leader or king who ruled in the land of Magog. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Magog

This is the name of an ancient nation that was probably located in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia.

### the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal

This expression occurs twice in these verses. Some modern versions, however, interpret the Hebrew expression as “the chief of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.” This is another title for Gog. Alternate translation: “who is the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Meshech ... Tubal

See how you translated these names in [Ezekiel 32:26](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [your face](#)
- [the land](#)
- [and prophesy](#)



## Ezekiel 38:3

### Behold!

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows. It can be translated as "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

### I am against you

This idiom means "I am your enemy." (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Say, 'The Lord Yahweh says this:  
Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief  
prince of Meshech and Tubal.'

## Ezekiel 38:4

### General Information:

These verses list the various nations who will join Gog's army.

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

### set hooks in your jaw

Here "hooks in your jaw" represents God's control over Gog. People put hooks in the mouths of animals so that they could lead the animals wherever they wanted. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in full armor ... holding swords

These phrases describe an army that is ready for battle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So I will turn](#)
- [with](#)
- [your army](#)
- [horses](#)
- [and horsemen](#)
- [company](#)
- [swords](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [So I will turn](#) you around and set hooks in your jaw; I will send you out [with all your army, horses, and horsemen](#), all of them dressed in full armor, a great [company](#) with large shields and small shields, all of them holding [swords](#)!

## Ezekiel 38:5

### with shields and helmets

This phrase describes an army that is ready for battle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Persia](#)
- [Cush](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [Persia](#), [Cush](#), and Libya are with them, all of them with shields and helmets!

## Ezekiel 38:6

### Gomer

a nation that lived north of the Black Sea

### Beth Togarmah

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:14](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and Beth](#)
- [peoples](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Gomer and all her troops, [and Beth Togarmah](#), from the far parts of the north, and all its troops! Many [peoples](#) are with you!

## Ezekiel 38:7

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

### **your troops assembled with you**

“all of your troops that you have gathered to yourself” or “all of your army that you have brought together for yourself”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your troops](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Get ready! Yes, prepare yourself and [your troops](#) assembled with you, and be their commander.

## Ezekiel 38:8

### You will be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will call you to come for war" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### recovered from the sword

Here the "sword" represents war. Alternate translation: "recovered from war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### that has been gathered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that I have gathered together" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### from many peoples

"from many nations"

### a continuous ruin

"destroyed for a long time"

### the land's people will be brought out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bring the Israelites out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You will be called after](#)
- [a land](#)
- [peoples](#)
- [of the peoples \(2\)](#)
- [gathered back](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [But the land's people will be brought out](#)

### ULT

8 [You will be called after](#) many days, and after some years you will go to [a land](#) that has recovered from the sword and that has been gathered from many [peoples, gathered back](#) to the mountains [of Israel](#) that had been a continuous ruin. [But the land's people will be brought out of the peoples](#), and they will live in safety, all of them!

## Ezekiel 38:9

### you will go up as a storm goes

This simile means Gog will bring destruction like a large storm does. (See: [Simile](#))

### a cloud covering the land

This simile means the army will be so large that it will cover the entire land. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covering the land](#)
- [all the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So you will go up as a storm goes; you will be like a cloud [covering the land](#), you and all your troops, [all the](#) many soldiers with you.

## Ezekiel 38:10

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

### on that day that

“at that time”

### plans will form in your heart ... you will devise wicked schemes

These phrases mean the same thing and can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: “you will plan to do something very evil” (See: [Doublet](#))

### plans will form in your heart

Here “heart” refers to his thinking. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will think of plans” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [in your heart](#)
- [wicked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: It will happen on that day that plans will form [in your heart](#), and you will devise [wicked](#) schemes.’



## Ezekiel 38:11

### I will

Gog will not do these things alone. His army will do most of them.  
Alternate translation: "My army and I will" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the open land

The following phrases explain that this refers to a land without walls or bars or gates.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [land](#)

### ULT

**11** Then you will say, 'I will go up to the open [land](#); I will go to the quiet people living in safety, all of them living where there are no walls or bars, and where there are no city gates.'

## Ezekiel 38:12

### capture booty and steal plunder

These phrases mean the same thing and can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: “take away all their valuable possessions” (See: [Doublet](#))

### bring my hand

Here “hand” refers to Gog’s military power. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### against the ruins

Here “ruins” refers to the people who live in the destroyed cities. Alternate translation: “against the people who live in the ruins” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### at the center of the earth

“in the middle of the most important countries in the world”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [that](#)
- [and against the people gathered](#)
- [people who are gaining](#)
- [the earth](#)

### ULT

**12** I will capture booty and steal plunder, in order to bring [my hand](#) against the ruins [that](#) are newly inhabited, [and against the people gathered](#) from the nations, [people who are gaining](#) livestock and property, and who are living at the center of [the earth.](#)

## Ezekiel 38:13

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Gog.

### Sheba

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 27:22](#).

### Dedan

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 25:13](#).

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Sheba and Dedan, and the traders of [Tarshish](#) along with all its young warriors will say to you, 'Have you come to plunder? Have you [assembled your armies](#) to take away spoil, to carry off [silver and gold](#), to take their livestock and property and to haul away much plunder?'

### Have you come to plunder? Have you assembled your armies ... to haul away much plunder?

These two questions are used to accuse Gog of attacking Israel without cause. These can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "It is not right for you to assemble your army to plunder, to carry off silver and gold, to take their livestock and property, and to haul away much plunder!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to take their livestock and property ... to haul away much plunder

These phrases have similar meaning and can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: "to take away their livestock and all their valuable possessions" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Tarshish](#)
- [assembled](#)
- [your armies](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and gold](#)

## Ezekiel 38:14

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh tells Ezekiel what he is to say to Gog.

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### ULT

**14** Therefore prophesy, [son of man](#), and say to Gog, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: On that day, [when my people Israel](#) are living securely, will you not [learn about them](#)?’

### On that day ... learn about them?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that Gog will indeed hear about the people living in Israel. Alternate translation: “On that day, when my people Israel are living securely, you will hear about them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [when my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [learn about them](#)

## Ezekiel 38:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- army
- horses
- company

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> You will come from your place far away in the north with a great **army**, all of them riding on **horses**, a great **company**, a large army.

## Ezekiel 38:16

### like a cloud that covers the land

This simile means the army will be so large that it will cover the entire land. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Ezekiel 38:9](#). (See: [Simile](#))

### In the latter days

This refers to the distant future before the world ends. Alternate translation: "In the last days" or "At the end of time" or "In the distant future"

### In the latter days ... to be holy before their eyes

All the nations will understand that Yahweh is holy when they see what he does to Gog.

### might know me

"might know who I am"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the land](#)
- [against my land](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [might know](#)

### ULT

**16** You will attack [my people Israel](#) like a cloud that covers [the land](#). In the latter days I will bring you [against my land](#), so [the nations might know](#) me when I show myself through you, Gog, to be holy before their eyes.

## Ezekiel 38:17

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues telling Ezekiel what he is to say to Gog.

### Are you not the one ... bring you against them?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he was the one who brought Gog to the land of Israel. Alternate translation: "You are the one ... bring you against them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### of whom I spoke

"that I spoke about"

### in former days

"in the past" or "a long time ago"

### by the hand of my servants

Here "hand" refers to the fact that these prophets wrote down Yahweh's message. Alternate translation: "by means of my servants" or "through my servants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### against them

"against the people of Israel"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [by the hand](#)
- [of my servants](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**17** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Are you not the one of whom I spoke in former days [by the hand of my servants, the prophets of Israel](#), who prophesied in their own time for years that I would bring you against them?

## Ezekiel 38:18

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### ULT

**18** So it will come to be in that day when Gog attacks the land of Israel—[this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—my wrath](#) will mount up in my anger.

### my wrath will mount up in my anger

Here “mount up” means “rise up” and expresses that his wrath will increase. The words “wrath” and “anger” mean the same thing and emphasize how intense his anger will be. Alternate translation: “my anger will greatly increase” or “I will be very angry with you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [my wrath](#)



## Ezekiel 38:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog.

### In my zeal

Here “zeal” refers to Yahweh’s desire to defend his honor against Gog’s attacks.

### in the fire of my anger

The intensity of Yahweh’s anger is spoken of as if it were as hot as fire. Alternate translation: “because my anger was intense” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and in the fire](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**19** In my zeal [and in the fire](#) of my anger, I declare that on that day there will be a great earthquake in the land [of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 38:20

### The mountains will be thrown down

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will make mountains fall down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the skies
- and every person
- on the surface
- will fall

### ULT

**20** They will shake before me—the fish of the sea and the birds of the skies, the beasts of the fields, and all the creatures that crawl on the earth, and every person who is on the surface of the land. The mountains will be thrown down and the cliffs will fall, until every wall falls to the earth.

## Ezekiel 38:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message about Gog. He speaks of the people of Gog as if they were one man. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will summon a sword against him

The word “sword” here is a metonym for soldiers who use swords to kill people. Alternate translation: “I will cause soldiers to attack him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### each man’s sword will be against his brother

Here “sword” is a metonym for the person who uses the sword to fight. Alternate translation: “all of his soldiers will fight each other” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### his brother

“his fellow soldier”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will summon](#)
- [a sword against him](#)
- [sword](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [against his brother](#)

### ULT

**21** I will summon a sword against him on all my mountains—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration—each man’s sword will be against his brother.

## Ezekiel 38:22

### I will judge him by plague and blood

Here “blood” is a metonym for injury and death. Alternate translation: “I will judge him by causing him to be sick and by sending soldiers to kill him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur I will rain down upon him

It may be helpful to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: “I will rain down overflowing rain and hailstones and burning sulfur upon him”

### hailstones

ice that falls out of the sky

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will judge him](#)
- [and burning](#)
- [nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then [I will judge him](#) by plague and blood; and overflowing rain and hailstones [and burning](#) sulfur I will rain down upon him and his troops and the many [nations](#) that are with him.

## Ezekiel 38:23

### show my greatness and my holiness

The abstract nouns “greatness” and “holiness” can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “show that I am great and holy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I will make myself known in the eyes of the many nations

Here “eyes” refers to sight, which is a metonym for understanding. Alternate translation: “I will cause many nations to understand who I am” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will make myself](#)
- [known](#)
- [and they will know](#)
- [nations](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For I will show my greatness and my holiness [and I will make myself known](#) in the eyes of the many [nations](#), and [they will know](#) that I am [Yahweh](#).”

## **Ezekiel 39**

### **Ezekiel 39 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter concludes the prophecy against Gog. God will destroy Gog and his army.

## Ezekiel 39:1

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh gives Ezekiel his message to Gog.

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### Behold!

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows. Alternate translation: “Look!” or “Listen!” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!”

### I am against you

“I am your enemy”

### chief of Meshech and Tubal

Some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression as “prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.” This is another title for Gog. See how you translated these names in [Ezekiel 38:2](#). Alternate translation: “who is the prince of Meshech and Tubal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [The Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> “Now you, [son of man](#), prophesy against Gog and say, ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Behold! I am against you, Gog, chief of Meshech and Tubal.

## Ezekiel 39:2

### I will turn you and lead you on

God speaks of leading Gog as if Gog was an animal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### bring you up

God speaks of bringing Gog “up” to Israel because it was located in the mountains.

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I will turn you and lead you on; I will bring you up from the far north and bring you to the mountains of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I will turn
- of Israel



## Ezekiel 39:3

**I will knock your bow out of your left hand and make the arrows fall from your right hand.**

Knocking Gog's bow and arrows out of his hands is spoken of as if God is destroying Gog's military power. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and make](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then I will knock your bow out of your left [hand and make](#) the arrows fall from your right hand.

## Ezekiel 39:4

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

### your troops and the soldiers

These refer to the same people. It can be stated as a single phrase.  
Alternate translation: "all your soldiers" (See: [Doublet](#))

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You will fall on the mountains [of Israel](#) —you and all your troops [and the soldiers](#) who are with you. I will give you to the birds of prey and the wild beasts of the fields for food.

### I will give you to the birds of prey and the wild beasts of the fields for food

The scavengers eating the corpses is spoken of as if Yahweh was giving food to them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [and the soldiers](#)

## Ezekiel 39:5

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [You](#) will fall on the open field, for I myself declare it—[this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration](#).

## Ezekiel 39:6

### I will send out fire on Magog

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will send literal fire down on Gog and his army or (2) “fire” is a metonym for the destruction that it causes. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Magog

This is the name of an ancient nation that probably lived in the land that is now Turkey. Magog might be the ancient nation of Lydia. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 38:2](#).

### know that I am Yahweh

When Yahweh says that people will know that he is Yahweh, he is implying that they will know that he is the one true God who has supreme authority and power. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:7](#). Alternate translation: “understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God” or “realize that I, Yahweh, have supreme power and authority” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [and they will know that](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then I will send out [fire](#) on Magog and on those living in safety on the coasts, [and they will know that I am Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 39:7

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

### I will make my holy name known in the midst of my people Israel

Here the metonym “my holy name” refers to Yahweh’s character.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will make my people, Israel, know that I am holy” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For I will [make my holy name known](#) in the midst [of my people Israel](#), and I will no longer allow [my holy name](#) to be profaned; [the nations will know that I am Yahweh, the Holy One in Israel](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [make](#)
- [name](#)
- [my holy](#)
- [my holy name](#)
- [the Holy One](#)
- [known](#)
- [will know that](#)
- [of my people](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [I am Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 39:8

### Behold!

This tells the reader to pay special attention to what follows.  
Alternate translation: "Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you!"

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Behold! The day is coming, and it will take place—this is [the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.

### is coming ... will take place

These two phrases have similar meaning and emphasize the fact that this will really happen. Alternate translation: "is surely going to happen" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 39:9

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to Gog.

### to kindle and make fires

These two phrases mean the same thing. The Israelites will use the wood from the weapons as kindling for fires. Alternate translation: “to start fires” (See: [Doublet](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The ones living in the cities [of Israel](#) [will go out](#) and they will use weapons to kindle [and make](#) fires and burn them—small shields, large shields, bows, arrows, the clubs and spears; they will make [fires with them](#) for seven years.

### small shields, large shields, bows, arrows, the clubs and spears

This list includes all the typical weapons of war of that day. It may represent weapons in general.

### clubs

wooden sticks used as a weapon

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Israel](#)
- [will go out](#)
- [and make](#)
- [fires with them](#)

## Ezekiel 39:10

### wanted to take ... wanted to plunder

Here “to take” and “to plunder” mean the same thing. Gog intended to take Israel’s possessions, but Yahweh prevented him so that he was not able to do that. (See: [Doublet](#))

### will plunder ... wanted to plunder

Translate “plunder” as in [Ezekiel 23:46](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they will burn](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

**10** They will not gather wood from the fields or cut down trees from the forests, since [they will burn](#) the weapons; they will take from those who wanted to take from them; they will plunder those who wanted to plunder them—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”



## Ezekiel 39:11

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh begins to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

### it will happen on that day that

This signals an important event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could use it here.

### to the east of the sea

A few modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “to the east toward the sea.”

### It will block

This could mean: (1) “The grave will block” or (2) “The dead army will block.”

### There they

“There the house of Israel”

### They will call it

“People will call it”

### Valley of Hamon Gog

“Valley of the Great Army of Gog”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a grave
- in Israel
- They will call it

### ULT

**11** Then it will happen on that day that I will make a place there for Gog—a [grave in Israel](#), a valley for those who journey to the east of the sea. It will block those who wish to cross over. There they will bury Gog with all his multitudes. [They will call it](#) the Valley of Hamon Gog.

## Ezekiel 39:12

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

### seven months

“7 months.” (See: [Numbers](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### will bury them in order to purify the land

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### bury them

“bury the soldiers of Gog’s army”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [purify](#)
- [the land](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For seven months [the house of Israel](#) will bury them in order to [purify the land](#).

## Ezekiel 39:13

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [a memorable](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For all [the people of the land](#) will bury them; it will be [a memorable](#) day for them when I am glorified—[this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration](#).

## Ezekiel 39:14

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to tell Ezekiel what will happen to Gog.

### through the land

“through the land of Israel”

### those who were traveling through, but who died and their bodies remained on the surface of the land

This refers to the dead bodies of Gog’s soldiers whom Yahweh killed as they entered the land.

### so that they may bury them

“so that the designated men may bury the dead bodies”

### to cleanse the land

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### seventh month

This “seventh” is the ordinal number for seven. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the surface](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [they may bury them](#)

### ULT

**14** Then they will designate men to continually go through the land, to find those who were traveling through, but who died and their bodies remained on [the surface of the land](#), so that [they may bury them](#), in order to cleanse the land. At the end of the seventh month they will begin their search.

## Ezekiel 39:15

### any human bone

Bones would be all that remained of the corpses after a period of time.

### they will put a marker by it, until gravediggers come and bury it

There are apparently two groups of men. The first will mark the location of corpses, and the second group will bury them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- when
- any human
- gravediggers come

#### ULT

**15** As these men pass through the land, when they see any human bone, they will put a marker by it, until gravediggers come and bury it in the Valley of Hamon Gog.

## Ezekiel 39:16

### purify the land

In Jewish law, a dead body defiled anything it touched and made it “unclean.” Burying these bodies is spoken of as cleansing or purifying the land. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Hamonah

This name means “Great Army.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the name](#)
- [In this way they will purify](#)
- [the land](#)

### ULT

**16** There will be a city there [by the name](#) of Hamonah. [In this way they will purify](#) the land.

## Ezekiel 39:17

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh gives Ezekiel a message for the birds and the wild animals about what they will do to Gog.

### son of man

“son of a human being” or “son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “mortal person” or “human”

### to the sacrifice

“to the feast” or “to the slaughter.” Yahweh means that he will give the birds and animals a very good meal and not that he is worshiping them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to you, son
- of man
- blood
- the Lord
- Gather
- sacrifice
- sacrifice
- sacrifice
- of Israel
- so that you may consume
- flesh

### ULT

**17** Now [to you, son of man, the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Say to all the winged birds and all the wild beasts in the fields, ‘[Gather](#) together and come. Gather from all around to the [sacrifice](#) that I myself am making for you, a large [sacrifice](#) on the mountains [of Israel](#), [so that you may consume flesh](#) and drink [blood](#).

## Ezekiel 39:18

### they will be rams, lambs, goats, and bulls

Yahweh is speaking with irony. Normally people sacrificed animals to God. Here, God is sacrificing people to animals. Alternate translation: "as if they were male sheep, lambs, goats, and bulls" (See: [Irony](#))

### they were all fattened in Bashan

That can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they all became fat while grazing in Bashan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

**18** You will consume the flesh of warriors and drink the blood of the princes of the earth; they will be rams, lambs, goats, and bulls, they were all fattened in Bashan.

### Translation Words - ULT

- You will consume
- the flesh
- of warriors
- of the earth
- they will be rams
- and bulls
- in Bashan



## Ezekiel 39:19

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message for the birds and the wild animals about what they will do to Gog.

### to your satisfaction

The abstract noun “satisfaction” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “until you are satisfied” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### until drunkenness

The abstract noun “drunkenness” can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “until you become drunk” or “until you are intoxicated” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fat
- blood
- slaughter

#### ULT

**19** Then you will eat fat to your satisfaction; you will drink blood until drunkenness; this will be the sacrifice that I will slaughter for you.

## Ezekiel 39:20

### chariot

The metonym “chariot” refers to the men in the chariots. Alternate translation: “chariot driver” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### ULT

**20** You will be satisfied at my table [with horse](#), chariot, [warrior](#), and every man of war—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.’

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with horse](#)
- [warrior](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

## Ezekiel 39:21

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh gives Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

### I will set my glory among the nations

Yahweh speaks of his glory as if he will place it in the middle of the nations where they can see it. Alternate translation: "I will make the nations see my glory" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### my judgment that I perform and my hand that I have set against them

Both of these phrases refer to the punishment that Yahweh will inflict upon Israel and are repeated for emphasis. They can be combined into a single phrase. Alternate translation: "the way that I will judge them" (See: [Doublet](#))

### my hand

Here the metonym "hand" refers to Yahweh's power that he uses to bring punishment. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### against them

"against Gog and his great army"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my glory](#)
- [among the nations](#)
- [nations](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [and my hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> I will set [my glory among the nations](#), and all the [nations](#) will see my [judgment](#) that I perform [and my hand](#) that I have set against them.

## Ezekiel 39:22

### The house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [The house of Israel will know](#) that I am [Yahweh their God](#) from that day onward.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [will know](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their God](#)

## Ezekiel 39:23

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

**23** The nations will know that the house of Israel went into captivity because of their iniquity by which they betrayed me, so I hid my face from them and gave them into the hand of their adversaries so that all of them fell by the sword.

### because of their iniquity by which they betrayed me

The abstract noun “iniquity” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “because they sinned and betrayed me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### I hid my face from them

Here “face” refers to Yahweh’s help and protection. Alternate translation: “I stopped protecting them and taking care of them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### gave them into the hand of their adversaries

Here the metonym “hand” refers to power. Alternate translation: “gave their enemies power over them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### all of them fell by the sword

Here falling represents being killed, and the sword represents battle. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 32:23](#). Alternate translation: “their enemies killed them all in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The nations](#)
- [will know that](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [went into captivity](#)
- [they betrayed me](#)
- [my face](#)
- [into](#)
- [the hand of their adversaries](#)
- [fell](#)

## Ezekiel 39:24

### their uncleanness and their sins

This speaks of the people's disgusting behavior as if they were physically unclean. Here "uncleanness" means basically the same as "sins." Alternate translation: "their disgusting behavior and their sins" or "their sins" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my face from them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> I did to them according to their uncleanness and their sins, when I hid [my face from them](#).

## Ezekiel 39:25

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

### will restore the fortunes of Jacob

Translate “will restore the fortunes” as in [Ezekiel 16:53](#). However, some modern versions interpret the Hebrew expression here as “will bring Jacob back from captivity.”

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### act with zeal for my holy name

“make sure that they honor me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- I will restore
- the fortunes
- of Jacob
- the house
- of Israel
- when I act with zeal
- for my holy

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Therefore the Lord Yahweh says this: Now I will restore the fortunes of Jacob, and I will have compassion on all the house of Israel, when I act with zeal for my holy name.

## Ezekiel 39:26

### they will bear their shame and all the treason

Experts do not agree on the meaning of this phrase. This could mean: (1) "they will regret their shame and all the treason" or (2) "they will forget their shame and all the treason."

### the treason

"the unfaithfulness"

### Translation Words - ULT

- the treason
- they betrayed me

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then they will bear their shame and all the treason in which they betrayed me. They will forget all this when they rest in their land in safety, with no one to terrify them.



## Ezekiel 39:27

### I will show myself to be holy in the sight of many nations

Here “sight” is a metonym for understanding. Alternate translation: “many nations will understand that I am holy because of what I did for the house of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the peoples](#)
- [of their enemies](#)
- [holy](#)
- [nations](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> When I restore them from [the peoples](#) and gather them from the lands [of their enemies](#), I will show myself to be [holy](#) in the sight of many [nations](#).

## Ezekiel 39:28

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues to give Ezekiel a message about what will happen to Israel.

### **I sent them into captivity ... I will gather them back to their land**

At the time when Ezekiel wrote, Israel was still in captivity in Babylon.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then they will know
- Yahweh
- their God
- nations

#### ULT

**28** Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God, for I sent them into captivity among the nations, but then I will gather them back to their land. I will not leave any of them among the nations.

## Ezekiel 39:29

### I will no longer hide my face from them

Here “no longer hide my face” is an idiom that means Yahweh will not continue to abandon Israel to exile in Babylon. Alternate translation: “I will no longer abandon them” (See: [Idiom](#))

### when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel

Here to give the Spirit abundantly is spoken of as to “pour out” the Spirit. Alternate translation: “when I generously give my Spirit to the house of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my face](#)
- [my Spirit](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> I will no longer hide [my face](#) from them when I pour out [my Spirit](#) on the [house of Israel](#)—[this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration](#).”

## **Ezekiel 40**

### **Ezekiel 40 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

#### **The new temple and city**

In a vision, Ezekiel saw a man measuring the wall of a new temple. The next chapters will give precise measurements for the construction of a temple to be built. This was not the temple of Ezra's day. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## Ezekiel 40:1

### twenty-fifth ... tenth ... fourteenth

These words are the ordinal forms of 25, 10, and 14. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### of our captivity

Here “our” refers to Ezekiel and the Israelites who have been in Babylon since the Babylonians forced King Jehoiachin to leave Jerusalem, but not to the reader. Alternate translation: “after we became captives” or “after the Babylonians took us as captives to Babylon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> In the twenty-fifth year of our captivity [at the beginning](#) of the year on the tenth day of the month, in the fourteenth year after the city was captured—on that same day, [the hand of Yahweh](#) was upon me and he took me there.

### the beginning of the year on the tenth day of the month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is in April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### the city was captured

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Babylonians captured the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the hand of Yahweh

Here “hand” refers to Yahweh’s power to show Ezekiel supernatural visions. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [at the beginning](#)
- [the hand](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

## Ezekiel 40:2

### He brought me to rest

“He put me down”

### Translation Words - ULT

- from God
- the land
- of Israel
- He brought me to rest

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> In visions from God he brought me to the land of Israel. He brought me to rest on a very high mountain; to the south were what appeared to be buildings of a city.

## Ezekiel 40:3

### he brought me there

“Yahweh brought me to the place that had the buildings”

### Behold

Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then he brought me there. Behold, a man! His appearance was like the appearance of bronze. A linen cord and a measuring stick were in his hand, and he stood in the city gate.

### His appearance was like the appearance of bronze

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “The way he appeared was like the way bronze appears” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### linen cord

“a rope made of linen.” This is a tool for measuring very long distances.

### linen

This is a type of cloth. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

### measuring stick

This is a tool for measuring shorter distances.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of bronze
- were in his hand
- stood
- in the city gate

## Ezekiel 40:4

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### fix your mind on

This idiom means “pay attention to” or “think about.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [and fix your mind](#)
- [to](#)
- [to the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The man said to me, “[Son of man](#), look with your eyes and listen with your ears, [and fix your mind](#) on all that I am revealing [to](#) you, for you were brought here so I could reveal them to you. Report everything that you will see [to the house of Israel](#).”



## Ezekiel 40:5

### surrounding the temple area

“entirely around the temple area”

### Each long cubit was a cubit and a handbreadth in length

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. Alternate translation: “These were the long cubits, which were the length of a regular cubit plus a handbreadth” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### a handbreadth

“the width of a hand.” This was about 8 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the temple](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> There was a wall surrounding [the temple](#) area. The length of the measuring stick in the man's [hand](#) was six long cubits. Each long cubit was a cubit and a handbreadth in length. So he measured the wall, and it was one measuring stick thick and one rod high.

## Ezekiel 40:6

### one stick

“it was one stick wide.” This was about 3.2 meters.

### the temple gate that faced east

This gate was part of the wall that surrounded the temple area. It was not part of the temple building itself. Alternate translation: “the gate on the eastern side of the wall surrounding the temple” or “the gate on the eastern wall of the temple courtyard”

### up its steps

“up the steps of the gate”

### in depth

“from the front edge of the threshold to its back edge”

## Translation Words - ULT

- temple gate
- of the gate
- faced

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then he went to the temple gate that faced east. He went up its steps and measured the threshold of the gate— one stick in depth. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 40:7

### The guard chambers

These were rooms that were built inside of the gate where guards stayed to protect the gate.

### five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### there were five cubits between any two of the chambers

“the chambers next to each other were five cubits apart” or “there were five cubits between a chamber and the one next to it”

### the chambers

“the rooms”

### portico

This was a covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the temple gate](#)
- [of the temple gate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The guard chambers were each one stick in length and one stick in width; there were five cubits between any two of the chambers, and the threshold of [the temple gate](#) by the temple portico was one stick deep.

## Ezekiel 40:8

### portico

This was a covering in front of a doorway or gateway with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### one stick

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [of the gate](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He measured the portico [of the gate](#); it was one stick in length.

## Ezekiel 40:9

### the portico of the gate facing the temple

Here “facing the temple” means that the portico was attached to the gate in the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: “the portico of the gate on the inner side of the wall that surrounded the temple”

### two cubits

about one meter (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the gate](#)
- [of the gate](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He measured the portico [of the gate](#). It was one stick deep. The doorposts were two cubits in width. This was the portico [of the gate](#) facing the temple.

## Ezekiel 40:10

### had the same measurement

“were the same size”

### Translation Words - ULT

- gate

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> There were three guard chambers on either side of the east gate, and each of them had the same measurement, and the walls that separated them had the same measurement.

## Ezekiel 40:11

### ten cubits

about 5.4 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### thirteen cubits

about 7 meters

## Translation Words - ULT

- [entrance](#)
- [of the gateway](#)

### ULT

**11** Then the man measured the width of the gateway entrance—ten cubits; and he measured the length [of the gateway entrance](#)—thirteen cubits.

## Ezekiel 40:12

### The chambers measured six cubits

“The chambers were 6 cubits long”

#### **six cubits**

about 3.2 meters

#### **one cubit**

“54 centimeters” or “about one-half meter”

#### **ULT**

<sup>12</sup> He measured the wall that was bordering the front of the chambers—one cubit high. The chambers measured six cubits on each side.



## Ezekiel 40:13

### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

### that of the second

“the entrance of the second chamber”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the gateway](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then he measured [the gateway](#) from the roof of one chamber to that of the next chamber—twenty-five cubits, from the entrance of the first chamber to that of the second.

## Ezekiel 40:14

### sixty cubits

about 32 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### portico

This was a covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [he measured as far as the](#)
- [gate's](#)

### ULT

**14** Then he measured the wall that went between the guard chambers—sixty cubits in length; [he measured as far as the gate's](#) portico.

## Ezekiel 40:15

### fifty cubits

about 27 meters

### Translation Words - ULT

- front of
- the gate
- the gate's

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The entrance from the front of the gate to the other end of the gate's portico was fifty cubits.

## Ezekiel 40:16

### closed windows

This could mean: (1) “closed windows” or (2) “windows with shutters” or (3) “narrow windows.”

### likewise for the porches

“the porches also had closed windows all around”

### each jamb

jamb is the sides of a wooden frame of a door

### ULT

**16** There were closed windows toward the chambers and toward their pillars within the gates all around; and likewise for the porches. There were windows all around the inside, and each jamb was decorated with palm trees.

## Ezekiel 40:17

### General Information:

There were two walls surrounding the temple. The outer wall surrounded the outer courtyard, and within that, the inner wall surrounded the inner courtyard. The inner courtyard was higher than the outer courtyard. Each wall had gates on the east, north, and south sides.

### ULT

**17** Then the man brought me to the outer **courtyard of** the temple. Behold, there were rooms, and there was pavement **in the courtyard**, with thirty rooms next to the pavement.

### the man brought me to the outer courtyard of the temple

“The man brought me from outside the temple area into the outer courtyard of the temple”

### outer courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

### Behold

The word “Behold” here indicates that Ezekiel saw something interesting.

### pavement

a flat floor that is made out of rocks

### with thirty rooms next to the pavement

“and there were 30 rooms all around the pavement” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard of](#)
- [in the courtyard](#)

## Ezekiel 40:18

### went up to

“went all the way to”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the gates
- of...and its width...the gates

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> The pavement went up to the side of the gates, and its width was the same as the gates' length. This was the lower pavement.

## Ezekiel 40:19

### the front of the lower gate to the front of the inner gate

The lower gate was on the wall of the outer courtyard, and the inner gate was on the wall of the inner courtyard. Alternate translation: “the front of the outer gate to the front of the inner gate”

### one hundred cubits

about 54 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### the same on the north side

“it was the same on the north side” or “on the north side, the distance from the outer gate to the inner gate was also one hundred cubits”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [gate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Then the man measured the distance from the front of the lower [gate](#) to the front of the inner [gate](#); it was one hundred cubits on the east side, and the same on the north side.

## Ezekiel 40:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- the gate
- court

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then he measured the length and width of the gate that was at the north of the outer court.



## Ezekiel 40:21

### chambers

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

### portico

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### measured the same

“had the same measurement”

### fifty cubits

about 27 meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

## Translation Words - ULT

- [and the gate](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> There were three chambers on either side of that gate, [and the gate](#) and its portico measured the same as the main gate—fifty cubits in total length and twenty-five cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 40:22

### General Information:

Ezekiel continues to describe the vision of the temple and of the man who looked like bronze.

### Its windows

The word “Its” refers to the gate that was on the north side of the outer courtyard. Alternate translation: “The northern gate’s windows”

### chambers

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

### corresponded to the gate that faced east

“were like those of the eastern gate” or “were like those of the eastern gate of the outer courtyard”

### Translation Words - ULT

- to
- the gate

#### ULT

**22** Its windows, portico, chambers, and its palm trees corresponded to the gate that faced east. Seven steps went up to it and to its portico.

## Ezekiel 40:23

### inner courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### in front of the gate facing north

“directly across from the northern gate” or “across the outer courtyard from the northern gate”

### the gate facing north

“the gate on the northern side of the outer courtyard”

### just as also there was a gate to the east

“just as there was a eastern gate to the inner courtyard” or “just as there was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the eastern gate”

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### one hundred cubits

about 54 meters

### Translation Words - ULT

- [There was a gate](#)
- [the gate](#)
- [from one gate to the other gate](#)
- [courtyard](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> There was a gate to the inner courtyard in front of the gate facing north, just as also there was a gate to the east; the man measured from one gate to the other gate—one hundred cubits in distance.

## Ezekiel 40:24

### measured the same as the other outer gates

“had the same measurements as the northern and eastern gates”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Next the man brought me to the [gate](#) of the southern entrance, and its walls and portico measured the same as the other outer gates.

## Ezekiel 40:25

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### fifty cubits

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> There were closed windows in the gateway and its portico just as at that gate. The south gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 40:26

### portico

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#)

### on either side

“on both sides”

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> There were seven steps up to the gate and its portico, and there were carvings of palm trees on the walls on either side.

## Ezekiel 40:27

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### one hundred cubits

about 54 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [There was a gate](#)
- [the gate](#)
- [courtyard](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [There was a gate](#) to the inner [courtyard](#) on the southern side, and the man measured from that gate to [the gate](#) of the south entrance—one hundred cubits in distance.

## Ezekiel 40:28

### inner courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### by way of its southern gate

“through its southern gate”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)
- [gates](#)
- [gate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then the man brought me to the inner [courtyard](#) by way of its southern [gate](#), which had the same measurements as the other [gates](#).



## Ezekiel 40:29

### chambers

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:7](#).

### porticos

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### measured the same

“had the same measurements”

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### fifty cubits

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

### five cubits

about 2.7 meters

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Its chambers, walls, and porticos measured the same as the other gates; there were windows all around in the portico. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 40:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> There were also porticos all around the inner wall; these were twenty-five cubits in length and five cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 40:31

### This portico faced the outer courtyard

“The portico’s entrance was towards the outer courtyard”

### with carved palm trees

“and it had carvings of palm trees”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> This portico faced the outer [courtyard](#) with carved palm trees on its walls and eight steps going up to it.

## Ezekiel 40:32

### to the inner courtyard by the eastern way

“to the east side of the inner courtyard”

### Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard
- as the other gates

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then the man brought me to the inner courtyard by the eastern way and measured the gate, which had the same measurements as the other gates.

## Ezekiel 40:33

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### fifty cubits

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The inner gate and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 40:34

### Its portico faced the outer courtyard

The entrance of its portico was towards the outer courtyard

### Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

## Ezekiel 40:35

### measured the same

“had the same measurements”

### Translation Words - ULT

- gate

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Next the man brought me to the northern gate and measured it; it measured the same as the other gates.

## Ezekiel 40:36

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### fifty cubits

about 27 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### twenty-five cubits

about 13.5 meters

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Its chambers, walls, and portico measured the same as the other gates, and there were windows all around. The gateway and its portico measured fifty cubits in length and twenty-five cubits in width.



## Ezekiel 40:37

### Its portico faced the outer courtyard

“The entrance of its portico was toward the outer courtyard”

### on either side of it

“on both sides of it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Its portico faced the outer courtyard; it had palm trees on either side of it and eight steps going up it.

## Ezekiel 40:38

### by each of the inner gateways

“in each of the inner gates”

### they rinsed the burnt offerings

Here, the word **they** could mean: (1) the people who were bringing offerings or (2) the priests who killed the animals.

### the burnt offerings

the animals that would be killed and burned as offerings

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by each of the inner gateways](#)

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> There was a room with a door [by each of the inner gateways](#). This was where they rinsed the burnt offerings.

## Ezekiel 40:39

### There were two tables on each side of each portico

there were four tables—two on each side of each portico

### the burnt offering was slaughtered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they killed the burnt offering” or “they killed the animals that they would burn as an offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of each

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> There were two tables on each side of each portico, on which the burnt offering was slaughtered, and also the sin offering and the guilt offering.

## Ezekiel 40:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the gate
- the gate's

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> By the wall of the courtyard, going up to the gate to the north, there were two tables. Also on the other side there were two tables at the gate's portico.

## Ezekiel 40:41

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by the gate](#)

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> There were four tables on either side [by the gate](#); they slaughtered animals on the eight tables.

## Ezekiel 40:42

### There were four tables of cut stone

These were apparently different tables than the eight tables on which the sacrifices were killed. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "There were also four tables of cut stone" or "There were four other tables made of cut stone" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### of cut stone

"that were made out of stone that had been cut"

### cubits

See how you translated these "long" cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### one and a half cubits

about 0.8 meter (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### one cubit

about one-half meter

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> There were four tables of cut stone for the burnt offerings, one and a half cubits in length, one and a half cubits in width, and one cubit tall. On them they laid the tools with which they slaughtered the burnt offerings for the sacrifices.

## Ezekiel 40:43

### Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth in length were fastened in the portico all around

“All around the portico, people had attached hooks that were a handbreadth long and had two prongs each”

### Two-pronged hooks

something that has two long curved points, which people can hang things on

### a handbreadth in length

about 8 centimeters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### the flesh of the offerings would be put on the tables

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they would put the flesh of the offerings on the tables” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in the](#)
- [the flesh](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Two-pronged hooks a handbreadth in length were fastened [in the](#) portico all around, and [the flesh](#) of the offerings would be put on the tables.

## Ezekiel 40:44

### the inner gate

This is the inner gate on the north.

### singers' chambers

"rooms for singers." However, some ancient and modern versions read only "chambers" without the reference to singers.

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> On the outside of the inner [gate](#), within the inner [courtyard](#), were singers' chambers, one on the north [side](#) facing south, and the other on the south side [facing](#) north.

### one on the north side facing south, and the other on the south side facing north

The word "chamber" or "room" is understood from the previous phrase. The phrase "facing south" means that its door is on its south side, and "facing north" means that its door is on its north side. Alternate translation: "one room on the north side facing south, and the other room on the south side facing north" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [gate \(2\)](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [side](#)
- [facing](#)



## Ezekiel 40:45

### This room facing south

This refers to the chamber on the north side of the inner courtyard.  
Alternate translation: "This room whose door is on its south side" or "This room on the north side of the inner courtyard"

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Then the man said to me, "This room facing south **is** for **the priests** who **are** on duty **in the temple**."

### who are on duty in the temple

"who are working in the temple" or "who are responsible for guarding the temple"

### Translation Words - ULT

- is
- the priests
- are
- in the temple

## Ezekiel 40:46

### General Information:

The man continues speaking to Ezekiel in the vision.

### The room facing north

This refers to the room on the south side of the inner courtyard. The door of the room was on the north side of the room. Alternate translation: "This room whose door is on its north side" or "This room on the south side of the inner courtyard"

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> The room facing north is for the priests on duty at the altar. These are the sons of Zadok who come near to Yahweh to serve him; they are among the sons of Levi."

### the priests on duty at the altar

"the priests who were offering sacrifices on the altar"

### come near to Yahweh to serve him

"approach Yahweh in his temple in order to serve him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- is
- the priests
- at the altar
- These are
- the sons
- the sons
- of Zadok
- Yahweh
- of Levi

## Ezekiel 40:47

### he measured

“the man measured”

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### one hundred cubits

about 54 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### with the altar

“and the altar was”

### the house

This refers to the temple.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the courtyard](#)
- [with the altar](#)
- [the house](#)

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> Next he measured [the courtyard](#)—one hundred cubits in length and one hundred cubits in width in a square, [with the altar](#) in front of [the house](#).

## Ezekiel 40:48

### portico

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### the house

this refers to the temple

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### fourteen cubits

about 7.5 meters

### three cubits

about 1.6 meters

## Translation Words - ULT

- [of the house](#)
- [of it were](#)

### ULT

**48** Then the man brought me to the portico [of the house](#) and measured its doorposts—they were five cubits thick on either side. The entryway itself was fourteen cubits in width, and the walls on each side [of it were](#) three cubits in width. <sup>[2]</sup>

**Ezekiel 40:49****twenty cubits**

about 11 meters

**eleven cubits**

about 6 meters

**columns**

pieces of stone that were tall and narrow and supported the roof of the building

**Translation Words - ULT**

- stood

**ULT**

**49** The length of the portico was twenty cubits, and its depth was eleven cubits. There were steps that went up to it and columns that **stood** on either side of it.

[3][4]

40:6 <sup>[1]</sup>, the Hebrew text reads in addition: . Many modern versions, however, leave this expression out, because it seems to be a repetition of preceding text.

40:48 <sup>[2]</sup>, the Hebrew text reads , but this seems to be a mistake, judging from the preceding words in this verse.

40:49 <sup>[3]</sup>, some ancient and modern versions read .

40:49 <sup>[4]</sup>, some ancient and modern versions read .

## Ezekiel 41

### Ezekiel 41 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on the courtyard of the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## Ezekiel 41:1

### General Information:

The man in Ezekiel's vision ([Ezekiel 40:3](#)) continues to show Ezekiel around the temple.

### the temple's holy place

the room in the temple in front of the "most holy place"

### six cubits in width on either side

These cubits were the "long" cubits ([Ezekiel 40:5](#)), 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). "they were six cubits in width on both sides"

### six cubits

about 3.2 meters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the temple's holy place](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the man brought me into [the temple's holy place](#) and measured the doorposts—six cubits in width on either side. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 41:2

### ten cubits

about 5.4 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### the dimensions

“the size”

### forty cubits

about 22 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### twenty cubits

about 11 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The width of the doorway was ten cubits; the wall on each side was five cubits in length. Then the man measured the dimensions of the holy place—forty cubits in length and twenty cubits in width.



## Ezekiel 41:3

### two cubits

about 1.1 meter (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### six cubits

about 3.2 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### seven cubits

about 3.8 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then the man went into the very holy place and measured the posts of the doorway—two cubits, and the doorway was six cubits in width. The walls on either side were seven cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 41:4

### twenty cubits

about 11 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the front of](#)
- [the temple hall](#)
- [the most holy](#)
- [place](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then he measured the room's length—twenty cubits. Its width—twenty cubits to [the front of the temple hall](#). Then he said to me, "This is [the most holy place](#)."

## Ezekiel 41:5

### the house

the temple

### six cubits

about 3.2 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### four cubits

about 2 meters

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the house](#)
- [the house](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the man measured the wall [of the house](#)—it was six cubits thick. The width of each side room around [the house](#) was four cubits in width.

**Ezekiel 41:6****three levels**

“three stories”

**There were ledges around the wall of the house**

“The house had ledges all around for the side rooms all around.”  
This way the side rooms could rest on the ledge of the wall.

**to support**

“so that the ledges could support”

**for there was no support put in the wall of the house**

“for there were no supports in the wall of the house.” The people who built the temple did not want stones or wood that would support the side rooms to be sticking out from the wall of the sanctuary.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [house](#)
- [of the house](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> There were side rooms on three levels, one room above another, thirty rooms on each level. There were ledges around the wall of the [house](#), to support all of the side rooms, for there was no support put in the wall [of the house](#).

## Ezekiel 41:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- house
- house
- the

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So the side rooms widened and went around going up, for the house went around higher and higher all around; the rooms widened as the house went up, and a stairway went up to the highest level, through the middle level.

## Ezekiel 41:8

### a raised part

a platform

### chambers

small rooms

### a full stick

Translate “stick” as in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### six cubits

about 3.2 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then I saw a raised part all around [the house](#), the foundation for the side chambers; it measured a full stick in height—six cubits.

## Ezekiel 41:9

### five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the outside of these rooms](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The width of the wall of the side rooms on the outside was five cubits. There was an open space to [the outside of these rooms](#) in the sanctuary.

## Ezekiel 41:10

### the priests' outer side rooms

“the side rooms of the priests that were further out from the sanctuary”

### twenty cubits

about 11 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### cubits

See how you translated these “long” cubits in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [On the](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [On the](#) other side of this open space were the priests' outer side rooms; this space was twenty cubits in width all around the sanctuary.



## Ezekiel 41:11

### five cubits

about 2.7 meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### The width of this open area was five cubits all around

“The entire space between the chambers and the temple was five cubits wide, all around the temple”

#### ULT

**11** There were doors into the side rooms from another open space—one doorway was on the north side, and the other on the south side. The width of this open area was five cubits all around.

## Ezekiel 41:12

### The building that faced the courtyard on the west side was seventy cubits in width

This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "There was a building on the west side of the temple area, and its entrance was towards the courtyard. It was seventy cubits in width"

### seventy cubits ... five cubits ... ninety cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). "70 cubits...5 cubits...90 cubits" or "about 38 meters ... about 2.7 meters ... about 49 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [faced](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The building that [faced](#) the courtyard on the west side was seventy cubits in width. Its wall measured five cubits thick all around, and it was ninety cubits in length.

## Ezekiel 41:13

### one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). “100 cubits” or “about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the](#)

#### ULT

**13** Then the man measured [the](#) sanctuary—one hundred cubits in length. The separated building, its wall, and the courtyard also measured one hundred cubits in length.

## Ezekiel 41:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the front
- of the courtyard

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> The width of the front of the courtyard in front of the sanctuary was also one hundred cubits.

## Ezekiel 41:15

### the galleries

“the balconies.” The balconies were places that were built higher up than the rest of the building. People could go into balconies and look down on the main floor of the building.

### one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). “100 cubits” or “about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### the portico

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [side](#)
- [and the](#)

#### ULT

**15** Then the man measured the length of the building behind the sanctuary, to its west, and the galleries on either [side](#) —one hundred cubits. The holy place [and the](#) portico,

## Ezekiel 41:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- including
- and the galleries

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> the inner walls and the windows, including the narrow windows, and the galleries all around on three levels, were all paneled in wood.

## Ezekiel 41:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sanctuary](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Above the entryway to the inner [sanctuary](#) and spaced along the walls there was a measured pattern.

## Ezekiel 41:18

### was decorated

“was made beautiful”

### cherubim

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:3](#).

### cherub

This is the singular form of “cherubim.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:9](#).

## Translation Words - ULT

- [cherubim](#)
- [each cherub](#)
- [and each cherub](#)
- [and...each cherub](#)
- [faces](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> It was decorated with [cherubim](#) and palm trees; with a palm tree between [each cherub](#), and [each cherub](#) had two [faces](#):



## Ezekiel 41:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the face
- side
- of a man
- the entire house

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> the face of a man looked toward a palm tree on one side, and the face of a young lion looked toward a palm tree on the other side. They were carved all around the entire house.

## Ezekiel 41:20

### the house

“the temple”

### Translation Words - ULT

- cherubim
- of the house

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> From the ground to above the doorway, cherubim and palm trees were carved on the outer wall of the house.

## Ezekiel 41:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the holy
- place
- Their appearance

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The gate posts of the holy place were square. Their appearance was like the appearance of

## Ezekiel 41:22

### the wooden altar in front of the holy place, which was

These words are the end of the sentence that begins with the words "Their appearance was like the appearance of" in verse 21. This sentence could mean: (1) as it is translated in the ULT or (2) "The appearance of one was like the appearance of the other. The wooden altar in front of the holy place was." The abstract noun "appearance" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "They appeared the same way the wooden altar in front of the holy place appeared. They were" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### three cubits ... two cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: "about 1.6 meters ... about 1.1 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [altar in front of the holy place](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> the wooden [altar in front of the holy place](#), which was three cubits high and two cubits in length on each side. Its corner posts, base, and frame were made of wood. Then the man said to me, "This is the table that stands before [Yahweh](#)." [2]

## Ezekiel 41:23

### There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place

“The holy place and the most holy place both had two doors”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- double doors
- for the holy place
- and the most holy place

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> There were double doors for the holy place and the most holy place.

## Ezekiel 41:24

### These doors had two hinged door panels each

“Each door had two parts that were on hinges.” Hinges connect doors to the wall and allow the doors to swing.

### two panels for one door and two panels for the other

“both of the doors for both the holy place and the most holy place had two parts”

### Translation Words - ULT

- These doors had
- door
- for the other

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> These doors had two hinged door panels each, two panels for one door and two panels for the other.

## Ezekiel 41:25

### just as the walls were decorated

“just as the walls also had carvings of cherubim and palm trees”

### portico

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- on the doors
- of
- the holy place
- were cherubim

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Carved on them—on the doors of the holy place—were cherubim and palm trees just as the walls were decorated, and there was a wooden roof over the portico at the front.

## Ezekiel 41:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the house

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> There were narrow windows and palm trees on either side of the portico. These were the side rooms of the house, and they also had overhanging roofs.

41:1 <sup>[1]</sup>, most ancient copies and some modern versions add .

41:22 <sup>[2]</sup>, some modern versions have .



## Ezekiel 42

### Ezekiel 42 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focused on the storerooms for keeping the holy things of the temple. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

## Ezekiel 42:1

### the outer courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [out](#)
- [courtyard](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Next the man sent me [out](#) to the outer [courtyard](#) on the north side, and he brought me to rooms in front of the outer courtyard and the northern outer wall.

## Ezekiel 42:2

### one hundred cubits ... fifty cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “100 cubits...50 cubits” or “about 54 meters ... about 27 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Those rooms were one hundred cubits along [their](#) front and fifty cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 42:3

### twenty cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “20 cubits” or “about 11 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Some of those rooms faced the inner courtyard

“Some of those rooms were toward the inner courtyard” or “The entrance of some of those rooms was toward the inner courtyard”

### inner courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### were open to them

“looked out onto the inner courtyard”

### having a walkway

“because there was a place where one could walk along the rooms”

### Some of the rooms looked out onto the outer courtyard

“Some of the rooms were toward the outer courtyard” or “The entrance of some of the rooms was toward the outer courtyard”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)
- [courtyard](#) (2)
- [Some of](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Some of those rooms faced the inner [courtyard](#) and were twenty cubits away from the sanctuary. There were three levels of rooms, and the ones above looked down on the ones below and were open to them, having a walkway. [Some of](#) the rooms looked out onto the outer [courtyard](#).

## Ezekiel 42:4

### ten cubits ... one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “10 cubits...100 cubits” or “about 5.4 meters ... about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> A passage ten cubits in width and one hundred cubits in length ran in front of the rooms. The rooms' doors were toward the north. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 42:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- took away from them

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But the upper halls were smaller, for the walkways **took away from them** more space than they did in the lowest and middle levels of the building.

## Ezekiel 42:6

### smaller in size compared to the rooms

“smaller than the rooms”

### Translation Words - ULT

- columns
- did have columns
- unlike the courtyards

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For the halls on the third story had no columns, unlike the courtyards, which did have columns. So the highest level's rooms were smaller in size compared to the rooms in the lowest and middle levels.

## Ezekiel 42:7

### fifty cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “50 cubits” or “about 27 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)
- [in front of](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The outside wall ran along the rooms toward the outer [courtyard](#), the courtyard that was [in front of](#) the rooms. That wall was fifty cubits in length.



## Ezekiel 42:8

### fifty cubits ... one hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “50 cubits...100 cubits” or “about 27 meters ... about 54 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)
- [the rooms facing](#)
- [the sanctuary](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The length of the rooms of the outer [courtyard](#) was fifty cubits, and [the rooms facing the sanctuary](#) were one hundred cubits in length.

## Ezekiel 42:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> There was an entrance to the lowest rooms from the east side, coming from the outer courtyard.

## Ezekiel 42:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- front of
- of
- courtyard

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Along the wall of the outer courtyard on the eastern side of the outer courtyard, in front of the sanctuary's inner courtyard, there were also rooms  
[2]

## Ezekiel 42:11

### They were as the appearance of the rooms on the northern side

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb.  
Alternate translation: “The way the rooms on the northern side appeared was the way these rooms appeared” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> with a walkway in front of them. They were as the appearance of the rooms on the northern side. They had the same length and breadth and the same exits and arrangements and doors.

## Ezekiel 42:12

### at its head

“at its beginning”

### Translation Words - ULT

- at its head

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> On the south side were doors into rooms that were just the same as on the north side. A passage on the inside had a door [at its head](#), and the passage opened into the various rooms. On the east side there was a doorway into the passage at one end.

## Ezekiel 42:13

### the food offering

the grain or flour that the people offered to show that they were thankful to God

### Translation Words - ULT

- are in front of
- are holy
- the most holy food
- holy things
- the most (2)
- a holy place
- this
- the priests
- to Yahweh
- is

### ULT

**13** Then the man said to me, “The northern rooms and the southern rooms that **are in front of** the outer courtyard **are holy** rooms where **the priests** who work nearest to **Yahweh** may eat **the most holy food**. They will put **the most holy things** there—the food offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering—for **this is a holy place**.”

## Ezekiel 42:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- When the priests
- go out
- place
- court
- are holy
- the people

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> When the priests enter there, they must not go out of the holy place to the outer court, without laying aside the clothes in which they served, since these are holy. So they must dress in other clothes before going near the people.”

## Ezekiel 42:15

### to the gate that faced the east

“out to the east gate” or “out through the east gate”

### Translation Words - ULT

- house
- out
- to the gate
- faced

### ULT

**15** The man completed measuring the inner house and then took me out to the gate that faced the east and measured all the surrounding area there.



## Ezekiel 42:16

### He measured

The word “he” refers to the man who looked like bronze ([Ezekiel 40:3](#)).

### measuring stick

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#).

### five hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “500 cubits” or “about 270 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [side](#)

#### ULT

**16** He measured the east [side](#) with a measuring stick—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[3]</sup>

## Ezekiel 42:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- side

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> He measured the north side—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[4]</sup>

## Ezekiel 42:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- side

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> He also measured the south side—  
five hundred cubits with the measuring  
stick. <sup>[5]</sup>

## Ezekiel 42:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [side](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> He also turned and measured the west [side](#)—five hundred cubits with the measuring stick. <sup>[6]</sup>

## Ezekiel 42:20

### It had a wall around it

“The house had a wall all around it”

### five hundred cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “500 cubits” or “about 270 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### common

not holy

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sides](#)
- [the holy](#)

### ULT

**20** He measured it on four [sides](#). It had a wall around it that was five hundred cubits in length, and five hundred cubits in width, to separate [the holy](#) from that which is common.

42:4 <sup>[1]</sup> . Ancient Hebrew copies and some modern versions read .

42:10 <sup>[2]</sup> . However, some ancient copies and most modern versions read .

42:16 <sup>[3]</sup> , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error.

42:17 <sup>[4]</sup> which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error.

42:18 <sup>[5]</sup> , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error.

42:19 <sup>[6]</sup> , which some ancient and most modern versions read, Hebrew reads , which seems to be an error.

## Ezekiel 43

### Ezekiel 43 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. God entered the temple. He told the people not to defile the temple by being idol worshipers or by having the funerals of their kings in the temple courtyard. He also told them what offerings to make each day. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## Ezekiel 43:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- opened
- the gate

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The man then brought me to [the gate](#) that [opened](#) to the east.

## Ezekiel 43:2

### Behold!

The word “Behold” here alerts the reader to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### many waters

This simply means “a lot of water.” It could refer to a loud river or a large waterfall or the waves crashing at the ocean. All of these are very loud. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:24](#).

### the earth shone with his glory

“the earth was full of bright light from his glory”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The glory of](#)
- [the God](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Behold! [The glory of the God of Israel](#) came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory.



## Ezekiel 43:3

### It was

“The glory of God coming from the east was”

### It was according to the appearance of the vision that I saw, according to the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city

This could mean: (1) the second phrase beginning with “according to” explains the meaning of the first phrase beginning with “according to.” Alternate translation: “It was according to the appearance of the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city” or (2) the first phrase refers to the vision that Ezekiel had just seen of God’s glory. Alternate translation: “The appearance of this vision that I saw was according to the vision that I saw when he had come to destroy the city”

### according to the appearance of the vision

The abstract noun “appearance” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “just like what appeared in the vision” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### according to the vision

“like the vision”

### when he had come to destroy the city

“when the God of Israel had come to destroy the city.” If the earlier Hebrew reading “when I had come to destroy the city” is used, then “destroy the city” is a synecdoche for “prophesy that the city will be destroyed.” Alternate translation: “when I had come to prophesy that the city will be destroyed” or “when I had come to prophesy that the God of Israel will destroy the city” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and I fell](#)
- [my face](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> It was according to the appearance of the vision that I saw, according to the vision that I saw when he had come <sup>[1]</sup> to destroy the city, and the visions were like the vision that I saw at the Kebar Canal—[and I fell to my face](#).

## Ezekiel 43:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the house
- of the gate
- opened to

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So the glory of Yahweh came to the house by way of the gate that opened to the east.

## Ezekiel 43:5

### Behold

Your language may have a different word to show that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then the Spirit
- court
- The glory
- of Yahweh
- the house

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner court. Behold! The glory of Yahweh was filling the house.

## Ezekiel 43:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [standing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The man was [standing](#) beside me, and I heard someone else speaking to me from the house.

## Ezekiel 43:7

### the corpses of their kings

The idols that the people's kings worshiped are spoken of as if they are corpses because the idols are not alive. Alternate translation: "the lifeless idols that their kings worshiped" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- the people
- of man
- of their kings
- of my throne
- for
- of Israel
- of Israel
- The house
- my holy
- name

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He said to me, "Son of man, this is the place of my throne and the place for the soles of my feet, where I will live in the midst of the people of Israel forever. The house of Israel will no longer profane my holy name—they or their kings—with their faithlessness or with the corpses of their kings at their high places.

## Ezekiel 43:8

### They profaned

“The Israelites profaned”

### disgusting actions

“the disgusting things they did.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:9](#).

### consumed them with my anger

The phrase “consumed” here means “completely destroyed.” Alternate translation: “completely destroyed them because I was angry” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my holy](#)
- [name](#)
- [with their disgusting actions](#)
- [so I consumed them](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They will no longer profane my holy name by putting their threshold next to my threshold, and their gateposts next to my gateposts, with nothing but a wall between me and them. They profaned [my holy name with their disgusting actions](#), so I consumed them with my anger.

## Ezekiel 43:9

### the corpses of their kings

The idols that the people's kings worshiped are spoken of as if they are corpses because the idols are not alive. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:7](#). Alternate translation: "the lifeless idols that their kings worshiped" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of their kings](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now let them remove their faithlessness and the corpses [of their kings](#) from before me, and I will live in their midst forever.

## Ezekiel 43:10

### this description

“this pattern” or “this plan”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of man
- the house
- about this house
- of Israel
- will be ashamed
- iniquities

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Son of man, you yourself must tell the house of Israel about this house so they will be ashamed of their iniquities. They should think about this description.



## Ezekiel 43:11

### before their eyes

Here the Israelites are referred to by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:6](#). Alternate translation: “before them” or “before the Israelite people” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### will keep to all its design

“will keep its pattern”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ashamed of](#)
- [house](#)
- [rules](#)
- [Then write this down](#)

### ULT

**11** For if they are [ashamed of](#) all that they have done, then reveal to them the design of the [house](#), its details, its exits, its entrances, and all its designs, all its decrees and [rules](#). [Then write this down](#) before their eyes so they will keep to all its design and all its rules, so as to obey them.

## Ezekiel 43:12

### the regulation

“the instruction” or “the rule”

### the surrounding border

The word “border” probably refers to the wall that goes all the way around the temple.

### most holy

“absolutely holy”

### Behold!

“This is important!” Your language may have a way of indicating that the words that follow are important.

### Translation Words - ULT

- regulation
- is the regulation
- the house
- for the house
- From the peak of the hill
- most holy
- it will be

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> This is the regulation for the house: From the peak of the hill to all the surrounding border around it, it will be most holy. Behold! This is the regulation for the house.

## Ezekiel 43:13

### a cubit

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 54 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### The border around its surrounding edge

“The border going around its edge”

### one span

A span was 23 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. Alternate translation: “about 23 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### This will be the base of the altar

“These will be the measurements of the base of the altar”

### the base of the altar

“the bottom supporting the altar” or “the foundation of the altar”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the altar
- of the altar

### ULT

**13** These will be the measurements of [of the altar](#) in cubits—that cubit being a regular cubit and a handbreadth in length. So the gutter around the altar will be a cubit deep, and its width will also be a cubit. The border around its surrounding edge will be one span. This will be the base [of the altar](#).

## Ezekiel 43:14

### two cubits ... four cubits

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 1.1 meters ... about 2.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### ledge

a narrow and flat surface that sticks out from a wall

### Translation Words - ULT

- [at the ground level](#)

### ULT

**14** From the gutter [at the ground level](#) up to the lower ledge of the altar is two cubits, and that ledge itself is one cubit in width. Then from the small ledge up to the large edge of the altar, it is four cubits, and the large edge is a cubit in width.

## Ezekiel 43:15

### The hearth

the place where sacrifices were either cooked or burnt up with fire

### four cubits

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 2.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### horns

The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar.

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The hearth on the altar for the burnt offerings is four cubits high, and there are four horns pointing upward on the hearth.

## Ezekiel 43:16

### twelve cubits

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 2.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

#### ULT

**16** The hearth is twelve cubits in length and twelve cubits in width, a square.

## Ezekiel 43:17

### fourteen cubits ... a half cubit ... a cubit

Each “long cubit” was about 54 centimeters. You may choose not to include this information if you give modern measurements instead of “cubits” as the UST does. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 7.6 meters ... about 27 centimeters ... about 54 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### with its steps facing east

“with steps on the east side of the altar” or “and the altar’s steps are on its east side”

#### ULT

**17** Its border is fourteen cubits in length and fourteen cubits in width on each of its four sides, and its rim is a half cubit in width. The gutter is a cubit in width all around with its steps facing east.”

## Ezekiel 43:18

### he said

“Yahweh said”

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### the regulations

“the rules” or “the instructions”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [for the altar](#)
- [the burnt offering onto it](#)
- [blood on it](#)

### ULT

**18** Next he said to me, “[Son of man, the Lord](#) Yahweh says this: These are the regulations [for the altar](#) on the day they make it, for raising [the burnt offering onto it](#), and for sprinkling [blood on it](#).”



## Ezekiel 43:19

### You will

The word “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### ULT

**19** You will give a bull from the cattle as a sin offering for the Levitical priests who are the descendants of Zadok, those who come near to me to serve me —this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a bull
- from the cattle
- for the Levitical
- priests
- the descendants
- of Zadok
- who
- this is the Lord

## Ezekiel 43:20

### Then you will take

The word “you” is singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Forms of You](#))

### four horns

The horns were the parts of the altar at the four corners of the altar that stuck up above the rest of the altar. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [make atonement](#)

#### ULT

**20** Then you will take some of its blood and place it on the altar's four horns and the four sides of its edge and on the surrounding rim; you will cleanse it and [make atonement](#) for it.

## Ezekiel 43:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the
- sanctuary

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then take the bull for the sin offering and burn it in the appointed part of the temple area outside of the sanctuary.

## Ezekiel 43:22

### you will offer

The word “you” and the command refer to Ezekiel and so are singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests will cleanse](#)
- [they cleansed it](#)
- [the altar](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then on the second day you will offer a male goat without blemish from the goats as a sin offering; [the priests will cleanse the altar](#) just as [they cleansed it](#) with the bull.

## Ezekiel 43:23

### you finish ... offer

All instances of “you” and the commands refer to Ezekiel and so are singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [its](#)
- [bull](#)
- [the cattle](#)
- [from the flock](#)

### ULT

**23** When you finish [its](#) cleansing, offer an unblemished [bull](#) from [the cattle](#) and an unblemished ram [from the flock](#).

## Ezekiel 43:24

### Offer them before Yahweh

The altar on which they will sacrifice the bull and ram is in front of the temple, where the presence of Yahweh dwells.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- the priests
- a burnt offering

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Offer them before Yahweh; the priests will throw salt onto them and raise them up as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

## Ezekiel 43:25

### You must prepare

This is spoken to Ezekiel and so the word “You” is singular. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:19](#). (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as a sin offering](#)
- [bull](#)
- [the cattle](#)
- [from the flock](#)

### ULT

**25** You must prepare a male goat [as a sin offering](#) daily for seven days, and the priests must also prepare an unblemished [bull](#) of [the cattle](#) and unblemished ram [from the flock](#).

## Ezekiel 43:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- for the altar
- purify
- they must consecrate it

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They must atone for the altar for seven days and purify it, and in this way they must consecrate it.



## Ezekiel 43:27

### it will come about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the instructions. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### your burnt offerings ... your peace offerings ... accept you

The words “your” and “you” are second person plural and refer to the people of Israel in general. (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### will accept you

“will gladly receive you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [burnt offerings](#)
- [on the altar](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> They must complete these days, and on the eighth day and onward it will come about that [the priests](#) will prepare your [burnt offerings](#) and your peace offerings [on the altar](#), and I will accept you—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.”

43:3 <sup>[1]</sup> which some Hebrew manuscripts and some ancient and many modern versions have, the other Hebrew manuscripts have .

## Ezekiel 44

### Ezekiel 44 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. Foreigners and the Levites who have worshiped idols are not allowed in the temple. The priests alone will do the temple work. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

## Ezekiel 44:1

### to the outer sanctuary gate that faced east

“to the outer sanctuary gate on the east side of the temple”

### Translation Words - ULT

- back
- sanctuary
- gate

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the man brought me **back** to the outer **sanctuary gate** that faced east; it was closed tightly.

## Ezekiel 44:2

### it will not be opened

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will open it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the God of Israel

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate](#)
- [the God](#)
- [of Israel](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [Yahweh](#) said to me, “This [gate](#) has been sealed shut; it will not be opened. No man will go through it, for [Yahweh, the God of Israel](#), has come through it, so it has been closed tightly.”

## Ezekiel 44:3

### He will enter by way of the gate's portico and go out the same way

He will enter the courtyard through another gate and then sit in the portico of the east gate and eat.

### portico

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. In this case, the portico opens into the courtyard and is between the entrance to the temple and the inside of the gate. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### before Yahweh

“in front of Yahweh” or “in the presence of Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- ruler of Israel
- food
- Yahweh
- of the gate's
- go out the same way

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The ruler of Israel will sit in it to eat food before Yahweh. He will enter by way of the gate's portico and go out the same way.”

## Ezekiel 44:4

### Then he

This could mean: (1) “Then the man” or (2) “Then Yahweh.”

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that Ezekiel was surprised by what he saw.

### the glory of Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#).

### I fell to my face

“I bowed down to the ground” or “I lay on the ground.” Ezekiel did not fall by accident. He went down to the ground to show that he respected and feared Yahweh. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 1:28](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- my face
- gate
- the front
- the house
- the glory
- of Yahweh
- of Yahweh
- and I fell

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then he brought me by way of the northern gate to the front of the temple, and I looked, and behold, the glory of Yahweh filled the house of Yahweh, and I fell to my face.

## Ezekiel 44:5

### set your heart

“pay attention to” or “think about.” Translate as you translated “fix your mind on” in [Ezekiel 40:4](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

### all its regulations

“all the instructions about the house of Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- of Yahweh
- Son
- of man
- your heart
- Think about
- to
- of the
- house
- the house’s
- regulations

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Yahweh said to me, “Son of man, set **your heart** and look with your eyes and listen with your ears **to** all that I am declaring to you, to all the statutes **of the house of Yahweh** and all its **regulations**. **Think about the house’s** entrance and exits.

## Ezekiel 44:6

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then say to the rebellious ones, [the house of Israel](#), ‘[The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you, [house of Israel](#)—

### Let all of your disgusting actions be enough for you

“Your disgusting actions have been more than enough for you” or “You have done far too many disgusting deeds”

### disgusting actions

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)
- [house of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [The Lord](#)



## Ezekiel 44:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- that you
- foreigners
- with uncircumcised
- hearts
- flesh
- in my sanctuary
- profaning
- house
- food
- my covenant

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> that you brought foreigners with uncircumcised hearts and uncircumcised flesh to be in my sanctuary, profaning my house, while you were offering me food, fat and blood—you have broken my covenant by all your disgusting actions.

## Ezekiel 44:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- carried out
- holy things
- but you appointed others to
- my holy place

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> You have not **carried out** your duties regarding my **holy things**, **but you appointed others to** take up your duties, and you assigned them to care for **my holy place**.

## Ezekiel 44:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Lord
- foreigner
- of those
- my holy place
- uncircumcised
- in heart
- flesh
- the people
- the people (2)
- the people
- of Israel

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The Lord Yahweh says this: No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and flesh, from any of those who live among the people of Israel, may enter my holy place.

## Ezekiel 44:10

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

**went far from me ... wandered away from me,  
going after their idols**

The way a person lives is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: “stopped worshiping me ... stopped doing what I wanted them to do. Instead, they worshiped their idols” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

**10** Yet the Levites went far from me—  
they wandered away from me, going  
after their idols—but they will pay for  
their sin.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yet the Levites](#)
- [they](#)
- [their sin](#)

## Ezekiel 44:11

### are servants in my sanctuary

“will be the servants in my temple”

### watching the gates of the house

“performing guard duty at the gates of the house”

### they will stand before the people and serve them

“these Levites will stand before the people, so that they can serve the people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- servants
- my sanctuary
- the gates
- in the house
- of the house
- the people's
- and they will stand

#### ULT

**11** They are **servants** in **my sanctuary**, watching **the gates of the house** and serving **in the house** and they slaughter the burnt offerings and **the people's** sacrifices, **and they will stand** before the people and serve them.

## Ezekiel 44:12

### became stumbling blocks for sin for the house of Israel

A person who causes another person to sin is spoken of as if he were something on a path over which people stumble. Alternate translation: “became people who caused the house of Israel to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will lift up my hand to swear an oath

In those days a person would raise his right hand to show that he realized that God would punish him if he did not do what he swore to do. See how you translated these words in [Ezekiel 20:6](#). Alternate translation: “I will solemnly swear” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### against them

“that I will punish them”

### this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: “this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### they will bear their punishment

The abstract noun “punishment” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “I will certainly punish them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they performed
- for sin
- their punishment
- for the house
- of Israel
- my hand
- this is the Lord

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But because they performed the sacrifices before their idols, they became stumbling blocks for sin for the house of Israel. Therefore I will lift up my hand to swear an oath against them —this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration —they will bear their punishment.

## Ezekiel 44:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### They

the Levites ([Ezekiel 44:10](#))

### They will not come near

“I will not permit them to come near.” Yahweh does not want them to come to him the way a servant comes to a king to receive commands, as the descendants of Zadok will do ([Ezekiel 40:46](#)).

### will bear their reproach and their guilt

“will be ashamed and suffer when I punish them”

### disgusting actions

“the disgusting things you do.” God was angry because the people were worshiping idols and false gods. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priests](#)
- [most holy](#)
- [my holy things](#)
- [things](#)

### ULT

**13** They will not come near me to act as my [priests](#) or to approach any of my [holy things](#), the [most holy things](#). Instead, they will bear their reproach and their guilt for the disgusting actions that they have done.

## Ezekiel 44:14

### keepers

people who guard or take care of something

### that is done in it

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that they need to do in it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [as keepers](#)
- [in the house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But I will place them [as keepers](#) of the work [in the house](#), for all of its duties and everything that is done in it.



## Ezekiel 44:15

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### those sons of Zadok who fulfilled

“who are descendants of Zadok and fulfilled”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then the Levitical
- priests
- those sons
- the people
- of Zadok
- fulfilled the
- my sanctuary
- of Israel
- this is the Lord

### ULT

**15** Then the Levitical priests, those sons of Zadok who fulfilled the duties of my sanctuary when the people of Israel were wandering away from me—they will come near me to worship me. They will stand before me to offer me the fat and the blood—this is the Lord Yahweh’s declaration.

## Ezekiel 44:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my sanctuary](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> They will come to [my sanctuary](#); they will approach my table to worship me and to fulfill their duties to me.

## Ezekiel 44:17

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

### So it will be that

“So”

### the inner courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### linen

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 9:2](#).

### wool

cloth or clothing made of the soft hair of sheep

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the gates of](#)
- [the gates](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [of the courtyard](#)
- [and its house](#)

### ULT

**17** So it will be that when they come to [the gates of the inner courtyard](#), they will have to dress in linen clothes, for they must not come in wool inside [the gates of the courtyard and its house](#).

## Ezekiel 44:18

### turbans

A turban is a head covering that is that is made of a long cloth wrapped around the head.

### Translation Words - ULT

- their heads
- dress in clothes that

### ULT

**18** There should be linen turbans on their heads and linen underclothes on their hips. They must not dress in clothes that make them sweat.

## Ezekiel 44:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about how the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests are to do their duties.

### outer courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard
- courtyard
- the people
- people
- in a holy
- make
- holy

### ULT

**19** When they go out to the outer courtyard, to the outer courtyard in order to go to the people, they must take off the clothes they wore when they served; they must take them off and lay them down in a holy room, so they do not make other people holy by contact with their special clothing.

## Ezekiel 44:20

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

### must trim the hair of their heads

must keep their hair neat

### Translation Words - ULT

- their heads
- their heads

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Also they must neither shave **their heads** nor allow their hair to hang loosely, but they must trim the hair of their heads.

## Ezekiel 44:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest
- wine
- court

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> No priest may drink wine when he comes to the inner court,

## Ezekiel 44:22

### widow

a woman whose husband has died

### from the line of the house of Israel

“who is a descendant of the people of Israel”

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [only](#)
- [a virgin](#)
- [from the line of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> nor take a widow or a divorced woman as a wife for himself, but [only a virgin from the line of the house of Israel](#) or a widow who was previously married to a priest.



## Ezekiel 44:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

### Translation Words - ULT

- my people
- holy
- they will make them know

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For they will teach my people the difference between the holy and the profane; they will make them know the unclean from the clean.

## Ezekiel 44:24

### In a dispute they will stand to judge with my decrees

“When people are arguing, they will be the ones who decide who is right by applying my laws”

### Translation Words - ULT

- they will stand
- to judge
- they must be just
- will keep
- law
- they will celebrate
- my holy
- Sabbaths

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> In a dispute they will stand to judge with my decrees; they must be just. They will keep my law and my statutes in every feast, and they will celebrate my holy Sabbaths.

## Ezekiel 44:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the dead person
- his father
- son
- brother

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They must not defile themselves by going near to a dead person; however, if the dead person was his father or mother, son or daughter, brother or unmarried sister, then they may defile themselves.

## Ezekiel 44:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> After a priest has become unclean, they will count off a period of seven days for him.

## Ezekiel 44:27

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he enters the holy place](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [a sin offering](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> On the day [he enters the holy place](#), into the inner [courtyard](#) to serve in the holy place, he must bring [a sin offering](#) for himself—[this is the Lord Yahweh's](#) declaration.

## Ezekiel 44:28

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

### you

The word “you” refers to the people of Israel and so is plural. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### property

land that a person owns and uses to provide for the needs of his family

### in Israel

“in the land of Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their inheritance](#)
- [in Israel](#)

### ULT

**28** This will be their inheritance: I am [their inheritance](#), and you must give them no property [in Israel](#); I will be their property!

## Ezekiel 44:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- will eat
- the food offerings
- devoted to Yahweh
- in Israel

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> They will eat the food offerings, the sin offerings, the guilt offerings, and everything devoted to Yahweh in Israel, will be theirs.

## Ezekiel 44:30

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel about the descendants of Zadok who serve as priests.

### every contribution, anything from all of your contributions

“every gift of whatever kind from all your gifts” or “all gifts of every sort of all of your gifts”

### so that blessing may rest on your house

This phrase means “so that I will bless your family and everything that belongs to you.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the firstfruits](#)
- [contribution](#)
- [anything](#)
- [will belong to the priests](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [blessing](#)
- [your house](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The best of [the firstfruits](#) of all things and every [contribution](#), [anything](#) from all of your contributions [will belong to the priests](#), and you will give the first of your dough to [the priests](#) so that [blessing](#) may rest on [your house](#).



## Ezekiel 44:31

### or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "or any creature that a bird or a wild animal has torn apart" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The priests](#)
- [eat](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [The priests](#) will not [eat](#) any carcass or animal torn by a beast, whether bird or beast.

## Ezekiel 45

### Ezekiel 45 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There should be an area around the temple complex for the homes of the priests and Levites who work at the temple. People should celebrate the festivals. (See: [temple, house, house of God](#) and [priest, priesthood](#))

## Ezekiel 45:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### twenty-five thousand cubits in length ... ten thousand cubits in width

Each cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits long...10,000 cubits wide” or “about 13.5 kilometers long ... about 5.4 kilometers wide” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### all its area round about

“all of the area inside of the borders around it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [as an inheritance](#)
- [an offering](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [a holy](#)
- [will be holy](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When you cast lots to divide up [the land as an inheritance](#), you must make [an offering to Yahweh](#); this offering will be [a holy part of the land](#), twenty-five thousand cubits in length, and ten thousand cubits in width. It [will be holy](#), all its area round about. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 45:2

### five hundred cubits ... fifty cubits in width

Each cubit was about 54 centimeters. Alternate translation: "500 cubits...50 cubits wide" or "about 270 meters ... about 27 meters wide" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the holy place](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> From this there will be a five hundred cubits by five hundred cubits square surrounding [the holy place](#), with a surrounding border fifty cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 45:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### this area

the temple and the border surrounding it

### a portion

“a portion of land”

### twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers ... about 5.4 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the sanctuary](#)
- [the most holy](#)
- [place](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> From this area you will measure a portion that is twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand in width; it will be [the sanctuary, the most holy place](#).

## Ezekiel 45:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a holy place
- in the land
- for the priests
- who serve Yahweh
- Yahweh
- their houses
- holy place
- and a holy
- area for

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> It will be a holy place in the land for the priests who serve Yahweh, who come near Yahweh to serve him. It will be a place for their houses and a holy area for the holy place.

## Ezekiel 45:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Levites
- who serve
- in the house

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So it will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand in width, and it will be for towns for the Levites who serve in the house.

## Ezekiel 45:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### five thousand cubits ... twenty-five thousand

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “5,000 cubits...25,000 cubits” or “about 2.7 kilometers ... about 13.5 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### reserved for the holy place

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you gave for the holy place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [reserved for](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [house](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You will designate an area for the city, five thousand cubits in width and twenty-five thousand in length, that will be next to the area [reserved for the holy place](#); this city will belong to all the [house of Israel](#).



## Ezekiel 45:7

### The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions

It is implied that Ezekiel is comparing the prince's land with the size of the land given to each of the tribes. Alternate translation: "The length will be the same as the length of one of the portions given to the tribes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### from the west to the east

It is implied that these are the western and eastern borders of the land of Israel. "from the western border of Israel at the sea to the eastern border at the Jordan River"

### Translation Words - ULT

- land
- reserved for
- of
- their
- place
- the holy

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The prince's land will be on both sides of the area reserved for the holy place and the city. It will be to their west and to their east. The length will correspond to the length of one of those portions, from the west to the east.

## Ezekiel 45:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the house of Israel.

### This land will be property for the prince in Israel

“This portion of the land will be the property of the prince among the people of Israel”

### Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- of Israel
- my people
- to the house
- for their tribes

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> This land will be property for the prince **in Israel**. My princes will no longer oppress **my people**; instead, they will give the land **to the house of Israel, for their tribes**.

## Ezekiel 45:9

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### It is enough for you

"You have done too many bad things" or "You have been acting badly for far too long"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [justice](#)
- [my people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: It is enough for you, princes [of Israel](#)! Remove violence and strife; do [justice](#) and righteousness! Quit your evictions of [my people](#)!—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.

## Ezekiel 45:10

### scales

an instrument that was used to weigh things that people sold or bought

### ULT

**10** You must have accurate scales, accurate ephahs, and accurate baths!

## Ezekiel 45:11

### so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer

“so that ten baths will be the same amount as a homer”

### homer

about 220 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

#### ULT

**11** The ephah and the bath will be the same amount, so that a bath will be a tenth of a homer; the ephah will be a tenth of a homer. Their measure will be corresponding to the homer.

## Ezekiel 45:12

### shekel

about 11 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### gerahs

about 0.55 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### mina

about 660 grams (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The shekel will be twenty gerahs;  
sixty shekels will make a mina for you.

## Ezekiel 45:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### for every homer of wheat

It is implied that this is the amount of wheat that the people harvest.  
Alternate translation: "for every homer of wheat from the harvest"  
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

**13** This is the contribution that you must present: A sixth of an ephah for every homer [of wheat](#), and you will give a sixth of an ephah for every homer of [barley](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of wheat](#)
- [barley](#)

## Ezekiel 45:14

### The regulation offering of oil will be a tenth of a bath

“You must offer one tenth of a bath of oil”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [The regulation offering](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [The regulation offering](#) of oil will be a tenth of a bath for every cor (which is ten baths), or for every homer, since a homer is also ten baths.



## Ezekiel 45:15

### the watered regions of Israel

“the parts of Israel that get a good amount of water”

### will be used for

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will use for” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sheep or goat](#)
- [the flock](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [will be used for](#)
- [any burnt offering](#)
- [to make atonement](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> One [sheep or goat](#) from [the flock](#) for every two hundred animals from the watered regions [of Israel will be used for any burnt offering](#) or peace offering [to make atonement](#) for the people—[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh’s declaration.

## Ezekiel 45:16

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- people
- of the land
- in Israel

### ULT

**16** All the [people of the land](#) will give this contribution to the prince [in Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 45:17

### the fixed festivals

the festivals that happen at the same time every year or month or week

### the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the Israelites, the descendants of Jacob over many years. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 3:1](#). Alternate translation: “the Israelites” or “the Israelite people group” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the prince's](#)
- [the grain offerings](#)
- [celebrations](#)
- [and on the Sabbath days](#)
- [house](#)
- [on behalf of the house](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the grain offerings](#)
- [atonement](#)

### ULT

**17** It will be [the prince's](#) responsibility to furnish animals for the burnt offerings, [the grain offerings](#), and the drink offerings at the festivals and the new moon [celebrations, and on the Sabbath days](#)—all the fixed festivals of the [house of Israel](#). He will provide for the sin offerings, [the grain offerings](#), the burnt offerings, and the peace offerings for [atonement on behalf of the house of Israel](#).

## Ezekiel 45:18

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in

[Ezekiel 6:11](#). Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### ULT

**18** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: In the first month, on the first day of the month, you will take an unblemished [bull from the herd](#) and perform a [sin offering for the sanctuary](#).

### In the first month, on the first day of the month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### you will take

The word "you" is singular and refers to whoever is the prince in Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [from the herd](#)
- [bull](#)
- [bull](#)
- [a sin offering](#)
- [for the sanctuary](#)

## Ezekiel 45:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The priest
- the house
- the altar
- gate
- court

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> The priest will take some of the blood of the sin offering and place it on the doorposts of the house and on the four corners of the border of the altar, and on the doorposts of the gate to the inner court.

## Ezekiel 45:20

### on the seventh of the month

“on the seventh day of the first month” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### for each person’s sin by accident or ignorance

“for each person who had sinned without meaning to or because he did not know he was sinning” or “for each person who had sinned by accident or because he did not know what was right”

#### ULT

**20** You will do this [on the](#) seventh of the month for each person’s sin by accident or ignorance; in this way you will atone for the temple.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on the](#)

## Ezekiel 45:21

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### for you

The word “you” is plural and refers to the prince and the rest of the people of the house of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a festival
- You will
- eat
- unleavened bread

### ULT

**21** In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month, there will be for you a festival, a seven-day festival. You will eat unleavened bread.

## Ezekiel 45:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the prince
- the people
- of the land
- a bull
- as a sin offering

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> On that day, the prince will prepare for himself and for all the people of the land a bull as a sin offering.



## Ezekiel 45:23

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### Seven bulls and seven unblemished rams

“Seven bulls and seven rams that are completely healthy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt offering
- for Yahweh
- bulls
- rams
- sin offering

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For the seven days of the festival, the prince will prepare a burnt offering for Yahweh: Seven bulls and seven unblemished rams each day for seven days, and a male goat each day as a sin offering.

## Ezekiel 45:24

### food offering

This is also called a "grain offering."

### an ephah

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "twenty-two liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### a hin

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "four liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### each ephah

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "each twenty-two liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the prince will perform a food offering](#)
- [of oil](#)

#### ULT

**24** Then the prince will perform a food offering of an ephah for each bull and an ephah for each ram with a hin of oil for each ephah.

## Ezekiel 45:25

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of October. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### at the festival

This is a different festival from the festival Ezekiel was describing before.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [at the festival](#)

### ULT

**25** In the seventh month on the fifteenth day of the month, [at the festival](#), the prince will perform offerings on these seven days: Sin offerings, burnt offerings, food offerings, and offerings of oil.

45:1 <sup>[1]</sup>, which the Hebrew text and some modern versions have, some ancient copies and many modern versions have .

## Ezekiel 46

### Ezekiel 46 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. This chapter focuses on many of the temple's rules. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## Ezekiel 46:1

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in

[Ezekiel 6:11](#). Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### The gate of the inner courtyard, facing east

"the gate on the east side of the inner courtyard" or "the eastern gate of the inner courtyard"

### inner courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [The gate of](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [but on the Sabbath](#)
- [of the new moon it will be](#)

### ULT

**1** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [The gate of](#) the inner [courtyard](#), facing east, will be shut for the six days of work, [but on the Sabbath](#) it will be opened, and on the day [of the new moon it will be](#) opened.

## Ezekiel 46:2

### inner gate

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:19](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- The prince
- of the gate
- the inner gate
- inner gate
- but the gate
- while the priests perform
- burnt offering
- will worship
- and go out

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The prince will enter the outer courtyard by the way of the gate and its portico from outside, and he will stand before the doorposts of the inner gate while the priests perform his burnt offering and peace offering. Then he will worship at the threshold of the inner gate and go out, but the gate will not be shut until evening.

## Ezekiel 46:3

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### before Yahweh

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 43:24](#).

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The people of the land will also worship before Yahweh at the entrance to this gate on the Sabbaths and new moons.

### Translation Words - ULT

- The people
- of the land
- will also worship
- Yahweh
- gate
- Sabbaths and new moons

## Ezekiel 46:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the prince
- to Yahweh
- on the Sabbath
- lambs

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The burnt offering that the prince offers to Yahweh on the Sabbath day will be six unblemished lambs and an unblemished ram.



## Ezekiel 46:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The grain offering
- and the grain offering
- will be what he wishes
- of oil

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The grain offering with the ram will be an ephah, and the grain offering with the lambs will be what he wishes to give, and a hin of oil with each ephah of grain.

## Ezekiel 46:6

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### unblemished

perfectly healthy and normal

### Translation Words - ULT

- of
- bull from a herd
- the new moon
- bull from a herd
- lambs

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> On the day of the new moon he must offer an unblemished bull from a herd, six lambs, and an unblemished ram.

## Ezekiel 46:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- a grain offering
- he wishes
- of oil for every ephah of grain

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He must make a grain offering of an ephah for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and what he wishes to give for the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah of grain.

## Ezekiel 46:8

### portico

covering in front of an entrance with columns or posts for support. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When the prince](#)
- [of the gate](#)
- [he must leave](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [When the prince](#) enters by the way of [the gate](#) and its portico, [he must leave](#) by the same way.

## Ezekiel 46:9

### before Yahweh

“in front of Yahweh” or “in the presence of Yahweh.” See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 44:3](#).

### appointed festivals

Translate as you translated “appointed feasts” in [Ezekiel 36:37](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [of the land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [at](#)
- [gate](#)
- [gate \(2\)](#)
- [gate \(3\)](#)
- [the gate](#)
- [must leave](#)
- [go](#)
- [out](#)
- [may turn back](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But when [the people of the land](#) come before [Yahweh at](#) the appointed festivals, anyone entering through the north [gate](#) to worship [must leave](#) through the south [gate](#); and anyone entering through the south [gate](#) must leave through the north gate. No one [may turn back](#) to [the gate](#) through which he entered, for he must [go out](#) straight ahead.

## Ezekiel 46:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [leave](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> The prince must be in their midst; when they go in, he must go in, and when they leave, he must [leave](#).

## Ezekiel 46:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the grain offering
- and whatever he wishes
- of oil

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> At the festivals, the grain offering must be an ephah of grain for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and whatever he wishes to give with the lambs, and a hin of oil for every ephah.

## Ezekiel 46:12

### the gate facing east will be opened for him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Levites will open the gate facing east for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the gate facing east

“the eastern gate” or “the gate on the east side of the courtyard”

### Translation Words - ULT

- the prince
- a freewill offering
- offering
- either a burnt offering
- burnt offering
- to Yahweh
- the gate
- the gate
- on the Sabbath
- must go out
- he has gone out

### ULT

**12** When the prince gives a freewill offering, either a burnt offering or a peace offering to Yahweh, the gate facing east will be opened for him. He will offer his burnt offering or his peace offering as he does it on the Sabbath day. Then he must go out, and after he has gone out the gate will be shut.



## Ezekiel 46:13

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the princes of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- old
- as a burnt offering
- Yahweh

### ULT

**13** In addition, you will give an unblemished lamb one year **old as a burnt offering** to **Yahweh** daily; you will do this morning after morning.

## Ezekiel 46:14

### to moisten

“which will soak”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a grain offering
- the grain offering
- of oil
- for Yahweh

### ULT

**14** You will give a grain offering with it morning after morning, a sixth of an ephah and a third of a hin of oil to moisten the flour of the grain offering for Yahweh, according to a permanent statute.

## Ezekiel 46:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the grain offering
- burnt offering

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> They will prepare the lamb, the grain offering, and the oil morning after morning, a permanent burnt offering.

## Ezekiel 46:16

### The Lord Yahweh says this

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to remind Ezekiel and the people that what he is saying is important. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 6:11](#). Alternate translation: "I, the Lord Yahweh, say this" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [If the prince](#)
- [of his sons](#)
- [of his sons](#)
- [inheritance](#)
- [an inheritance](#)

### ULT

**16** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: [If the prince](#) gives a gift to any [of his sons](#), it is his [inheritance](#). It will be the property of [his sons](#), it is [an inheritance](#).

## Ezekiel 46:17

### year of liberty

This is the year that a servant gains freedom. This is also called the "Year of Jubilee."

### Translation Words - ULT

- and then it will return
- His inheritance
- his sons

### ULT

**17** But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, then it will be that servant's until the year of liberty, and then it will return to the prince. His inheritance will certainly be for his sons.

## Ezekiel 46:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- The prince
- the people's
- my people
- he must provide for
- his sons

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> The prince will not take the people's inheritance away from their own property; he must provide for his sons from his own property so that my people will not be scattered, each man from his own property."

## Ezekiel 46:19

### which faced north

“which had their main entrances to the north”

### behold!

Ezekiel saw something interesting.

### Translation Words - ULT

- gate
- the holy
- the priests

### ULT

**19** Next the man brought me through the entrance at the gate to the holy rooms for the priests, which faced north and behold! There was a place toward the west.

## Ezekiel 46:20

### outer courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the priests](#)
- [the grain offering](#)
- [bring](#)
- [courtyard](#)
- [for then the people](#)
- [would be consecrated](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> He said to me, "This is the place where [the priests](#) must boil the guilt offering and the sin offering and where they must bake [the grain offering](#). They must not [bring](#) the offerings into the outer [courtyard](#), for then [the people](#) would be consecrated."



## Ezekiel 46:21

### outer courtyard

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 10:5](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then he brought me
- courtyard
- of that
- courtyard
- of the courtyard
- there was a
- court
- and he led me past

### ULT

**21** Then he brought me to the outer courtyard and he led me past the four corners of that courtyard, and I saw that in every corner of the courtyard there was a another court.

## Ezekiel 46:22

### forty cubits ... thirty

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “40 cubits...30 cubits” or “about 21.6 meters ... about 16.2 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [courtyard](#)
- [of the outer](#)

### ULT

**22** In the four corners [of the outer courtyard](#) there were four small courtyards, forty cubits in length and thirty in width. There were the same dimensions for all four of the courtyards. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 46:23

### cooking hearths

places where people can build fire and cook food

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> There was a row made of stone all around the four of them, and cooking hearths were under the stone row.

## Ezekiel 46:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- are the
- the temple
- servants
- the people's
- sacrifices

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The man said to me, "These are the places where the temple servants will boil the people's sacrifices."

46:22 <sup>[1]</sup> is unclear. It is translated in this way by some ancient and some modern versions. However, other modern versions translate it differently.

## Ezekiel 47

### Ezekiel 47 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There was a river flowing from the temple. The land was to be divided among the tribes. The landscape of Jerusalem will have changed in a significant way. (See: [temple](#), [house](#), [house of God](#))

## Ezekiel 47:1

### to the right of the altar

This is the right side of the altar when a person looks at it while they are facing east, so it is on the south side of the altar. Alternate translation: “on the south side of the altar”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then the man took me back
- to the temple
- the house
- the temple
- the temple (2)
- flowing out
- the front of
- of the altar

### ULT

**1** Then the man took me back to the entrance to the temple, and there was water flowing out from under the temple threshold of the house toward the east—for the front of the temple faced east—and the water was flowing down the south side of the temple, to the right of the altar.

## Ezekiel 47:2

### the gate facing east

“the eastern gate” or “the eastern gate of the outer wall”

### Translation Words - ULT

- he brought me
- gate
- the gate (2)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So he brought me out through the northern gate and led me around to the gate facing east, and there the water was flowing from this gate on its south side.

## Ezekiel 47:3

### measuring line

a string or a rope that people use to measure longer distances

### one thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. Alternate translation: "1,000 cubits" or "about 540 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in his hand](#)
- [brought me through](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> As the man was going toward the east, there was a measuring line [in his hand](#); he measured off one thousand cubits and [brought me through](#) the water to ankle-deep water.



## Ezekiel 47:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and brought me through
- and brought me

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then he measured one thousand cubits again and brought me through the water to knee-deep water; and he measured another thousand cubits and brought me to hip-deep water.

## Ezekiel 47:5

### a river that could not be crossed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “a river that no one could cross on foot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Next he measured off another thousand cubits, but it was a river that I could not cross through because the water had risen and was deep enough to swim in—it was a river that could not be crossed.

## Ezekiel 47:6

### Son of man

“Son of a human being” or “Son of humanity.” God calls Ezekiel this to emphasize that Ezekiel is only a human being. God is eternal and powerful, but humans are not. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: “Mortal person” or “Human”

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The man said to me, “[Son of man](#), do you see this?” and he brought me out and had me walk [back](#) along the riverbank.

### do you see this?

Yahweh is commanding Ezekiel to think about what he has just seen. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 8:15](#). Alternate translation: “think about this.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [of man](#)
- [back](#)

## Ezekiel 47:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> As I walked back, there the riverbank had many trees on this side and also the other side.

## Ezekiel 47:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- out
- to the Arabah

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The man said to me, "This water is going **out** to the eastern territory and down **to the Arabah**; this water flows into the Salt Sea and will make it fresh.

## Ezekiel 47:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- creature
- living
- live

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> It will be that every living creature that swarms will live where the water goes; there will be many fish, for these waters flow there. It will make the salt water fresh. Everything will live wherever the river goes.

## Ezekiel 47:10

### Then it will happen

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:7](#).

### En Gedi

This is the name of a very large spring on the western side of the Salt Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a place to dry out the fishing nets

“a place for people to dry out their fishing nets”

### En Eglaim

This is the name of a large spring on the eastern side of the Salt Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of En](#)
- [Gedi](#)
- [will stand](#)

### ULT

**10** Then it will happen that fishermen [of En Gedi will stand](#) by the water, and there will be a place to dry out the fishing nets by En Eglaim. There will be many kinds of fish in the Salt Sea, like the fish in the Great Sea for their abundance.

## Ezekiel 47:11

### swamps

places with shallow water and trees growing in deep mud

### marshes

places with shallow water and grasses growing in deep mud

### ULT

**11** But the Salt Sea's swamps and marshes will not be made fresh; they will be for providing salt.



## Ezekiel 47:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and their fruit
- Their fruit
- the sanctuary
- flows

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Beside this river on its banks, on both sides, all kinds of trees will grow that bear food. Their leaves will not wither and their fruit will never fail to grow. Each month the trees will bear fruit, because the water from the sanctuary flows to them. Their fruit will be for food, and their leaves will be for healing.

## Ezekiel 47:13

### Joseph will have two portions

The person is a metonym for his descendants. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Joseph will receive two areas of land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [you divide](#)
- [the land up](#)
- [tribes](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Joseph](#)

### ULT

**13** [The Lord](#) Yahweh says this: This will be the way that [you divide the land up](#) for the twelve [tribes of Israel](#): [Joseph](#) will have two portions.

## Ezekiel 47:14

### I lifted up my hand and swore

In those days a person would raise his right hand to show that he realized that God would punish him if he did not do what he swore to do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my hand](#)
- [to your fathers](#)
- [land](#)
- [will come to](#)
- [as an inheritance](#)

### ULT

**14** You are to divide equally what I lifted up [my hand](#) and swore to give [to your fathers](#). This [land will come to you as an inheritance](#).

## Ezekiel 47:15

### boundary

the end of an area of land

### Hethlon ... Zedad

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the land](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> This will be the boundary [of the land](#) on the north side from the Great Sea by way of Hethlon, and then to Zedad. <sup>[1]</sup>

## Ezekiel 47:16

### **Berothah ... Sibraim ... Hazer Hattikon ... Hauran**

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### **ULT**

**16** Then the boundary will go to Berothah, to Sibraim, which is between Damascus and Hamath, and then to Hazer Hattikon, which is beside the boundary of Hauran.

## Ezekiel 47:17

### Hazar Enan

the name of a town (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### border

where two areas of land meet

### ULT

**17** So the boundary will go from the sea to Hazar Enan on the border with Damascus and Hamath to the north. This will be the north side.

## Ezekiel 47:18

### Hauran

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [along the Jordan River](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [the land](#)
- [of Israel](#)

### ULT

**18** On the east side the boundary will run between Hauran and Damascus, [along the Jordan River](#) between [Gilead](#) and [the land of Israel](#). You will measure from the border to the eastern sea. This will be the eastern border. <sup>[2]</sup>

## Ezekiel 47:19

### Tamar ... Meribah Kadesh

These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the brook of Egypt

a very large ravine in the northeast part of the Sinai

#### ULT

**19** Then on the south side the boundary will run from Tamar as far as the waters of Meribah Kadesh, then along the brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. This will be the boundary on the south side.



## Ezekiel 47:20

### Hamath

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then the boundary on the west side will be the Great Sea to a point opposite Lebo Hamath. This will be the west side.

## Ezekiel 47:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- land
- for the tribes
- of Israel

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> In this way you will divide this land for yourselves, for the tribes of Israel.

## Ezekiel 47:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the inheritances
- for inheritances
- to children
- and who
- of Israel
- of Israel
- the tribes

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So you will distribute the inheritances for yourselves and for the foreigners in your midst, those who have given birth to children in your midst and who are, with you, like the native born people of Israel. You will cast lots for inheritances among the tribes of Israel.

## Ezekiel 47:23

### Then it will happen that

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 21:7](#).

### this is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "this is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [an inheritance](#)
- [this is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then it will happen that the foreigner will be with the tribe among whom he is living. You must give him [an inheritance](#) —[this is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration."

47:15 <sup>[1]</sup> , but some modern versions imitate 48:1 and add .

47:18 <sup>[2]</sup> . However, some ancient and modern versions read .

## **Ezekiel 48**

### **Ezekiel 48 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Instructions for the new temple and city continue in this chapter. There is more dividing of the land between the tribes in this chapter as well.

**Ezekiel 48:1****one portion of land**

“one piece of the land that you will distribute”

**boundary will run ... boundary will go**

“boundary will be ... boundary will be”

**Hethlon**

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:15](#).

**Lebo Hamath**

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:15](#) or [Ezekiel 47:20](#)

**Hazar Enan**

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:17](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [are the names](#)
- [of the tribes](#)
- [and](#)
- [and \(2\)](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> These [are the names of the tribes](#). The tribe of Dan will receive one portion of land; its boundary will run along the northern boundary of Israel by way of Hethlon [and](#) Lebo Hamath. Its boundary will go on to Hazar Enan and along the border with Damascus to the north [and](#) then on to Hamath. Dan's boundary will go from east all the way to the Great Sea.

## Ezekiel 48:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Asher

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Adjoining the border of Dan, from the east side to the west, Asher will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Asher
- Naphtali

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Adjoining the border of Asher from the east side to the west, Naphtali will have one portion.



## Ezekiel 48:4

### one portion

Translate as you translated "one portion of land" in [Ezekiel 48:1](#).

### from the east side to the west

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 48:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Naphtali](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Adjoining the border [of Naphtali](#) from the east side to the west, Manasseh will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Adjoining the border of Manasseh from the east side to the west, Ephraim will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Ephraim
- Reuben

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Adjoining the border of Ephraim from the east side to the west, Reuben will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Reuben
- Judah

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Adjoining the border of Reuben from the east side to the west, Judah will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:8

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

### twenty-five thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with Judah](#)
- [and the temple](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The offering of land that you will make will be along the border [with Judah](#) and extend from the east side to the west side; it will be twenty-five thousand cubits in width. Its length will correspond to one tribe’s portion from the east side to the west side, [and the temple](#) will be in the middle of it.

## Ezekiel 48:9

### twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers...5.4 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> This land that you will offer up to [Yahweh](#) will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 48:10

### The priests will have land assigned to them

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The leaders of the Israelites will assign land to the priests” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers...5.4 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of this holy portion](#)
- [of land](#)
- [The priests](#)
- [with the holy place](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**10** These will be the assignments [of this holy portion of land](#): [The priests](#) will have land assigned to them measuring twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the north side; ten thousand cubits in width on the west side; ten thousand cubits in width on the east side; and twenty-five thousand cubits in length on the south side, [with the holy place of Yahweh](#) in the middle of it.

## Ezekiel 48:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- This will be for the consecration
- of the priests
- of the line
- when the people
- of Zadok
- have served
- of Israel
- the Levites did

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> This will be for the consecration of the priests of the line of Zadok, who have served me faithfully and who did not go astray when the people of Israel went astray, as the Levites did.



## Ezekiel 48:12

### The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land

“This smaller portion within the holy portion of the land will belong to these priests, a portion that is more holy than the rest of the holy portion of the land”

### Translation Words - ULT

- most holy
- of this
- land
- of the Levites

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The offering for them will be a portion of this most holy land, extending to the border of the Levites.

## Ezekiel 48:13

### twenty-five thousand cubits ... ten thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits...10,000 cubits” or “13.5 kilometers...5.4 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [The Levites' land](#)
- [with the priests' land](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> [The Levites' land](#) along the border [with the priests' land](#) will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width. The entire length of the two tracts of land will be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and twenty thousand cubits in width.

## Ezekiel 48:14

### this firstfruits

“this land which is the firstfruits.” Here “firstfruits” probably means the best things among all the offerings set aside to give to God. This land is spoken of in that way, as land set aside for Yahweh’s use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [this firstfruits](#)
- [of the land of Israel](#)
- [all is holy](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**14** They must not sell it or exchange it; none of [this firstfruits of the land of Israel](#) must ever be separated from these tracts, for it [all is holy to Yahweh](#).

## Ezekiel 48:15

### five thousand cubits ... twenty-five thousand cubits

“5000 cubits...25,000 cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “almost 2.3 kilometers ... about 13.5 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### will be for the collective use of the city

“will be an area that all the people of the city will share and use”

### the houses, and the pastureland

“as a place for houses and for an open space”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will be](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The remaining land, five thousand cubits in width and twenty-five thousand cubits in length, [will be](#) for the collective use of the city, the houses, and the pastureland; the city will be in its midst.

## Ezekiel 48:16

### 4,500 cubits

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 2.4 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### ULT

**16** These will be the city’s measurements: The north side will be 4,500 cubits in length; the south side will be 4,500 cubits in length; the east side will be 4,500 cubits in length; and the west side will be 4,500 cubits in length.

## Ezekiel 48:17

### 250 cubits

“two hundred and fifty cubits.” A cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 135 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### ULT

**17** There will be pasture for the city toward the north, 250 cubits deep; to the south, 250 cubits deep; to the east, 250 cubits deep, and to the west, 250 cubits deep.

## Ezekiel 48:18

### ten thousand cubits

“10,000 cubits.” A cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 5.4 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### its produce

“the food that grows there”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the holy](#)
- [the holy](#)
- [offering](#)
- [offering](#) (2)

### ULT

**18** The remaining area [of the holy offering](#) will stretch for ten thousand cubits to the east and ten thousand cubits to the west. It will stretch along the border of [the holy offering](#), and its produce will be food for those working in the city.

## Ezekiel 48:19

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the tribes
- of Israel
- will farm that land

### ULT

**19** The people who work in the city,  
people belong to all the tribes of Israel,  
will farm that land.



**Ezekiel 48:20****twenty-five thousand cubits**

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

**In this way you will make the holy offering of land, together with the land for the city.**

“You will offer the holy offering and also the property of the city”

**you**

This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**the holy offering**

the land that the people of Israel gave to Yahweh for the Levites, the priests, and the temple

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the holy](#)
- [of land, together](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> All the land offering will measure twenty-five thousand cubits by twenty-five thousand cubits. In this way you will make [the holy](#) offering [of land, together](#) with the land for the city.

## Ezekiel 48:21

### the holy offering

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 48:18](#).

### twenty-five thousand cubits

Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “25,000 cubits” or “about 13.5 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [on either side](#)
- [from boundary](#)
- [of the holy](#)
- [and the holy place](#)
- [offering](#)
- [of land](#)
- [holy offering](#)
- [In the middle will be the holy offering](#)
- [of the temple](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> The rest of the land [on either side of the holy offering](#) and the city area will be for the prince. The prince’s tract [of land](#) to the east will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits [from boundary](#) of the [holy offering](#) to the eastern border —and his tract to the west will extend for twenty-five thousand cubits to the western border. [In the middle will be the holy offering, and the holy place of the temple](#) will be in its midst.

## Ezekiel 48:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Levites
- of Judah
- of Benjamin

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> The land extending from the property of the Levites and the area of the city in its midst will be for the prince; it will be between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin—this land will be for the prince.

## Ezekiel 48:23

### one portion

Translate as you translated "one portion of land" in [Ezekiel 48:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tribes](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> As for the remaining [tribes](#), their portions will also run from the eastern side to the west side. [Benjamin](#) will receive one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Benjamin

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Adjoining the border of Benjamin from the east side to the west, Simeon will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Issachar](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Adjoining the border of Simeon from the east side to the west, [Issachar](#) will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Issachar

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Adjoining the border of Issachar from the east side to the west, Zebulun will have one portion.

## Ezekiel 48:27

### General Information:

Yahweh continues giving Ezekiel his message to the people of Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land of Gad](#)

### ULT

**27** To the south of Zebulun's boundary, running from the east side to the west side, will be [the land of Gad](#)—one portion.



## Ezekiel 48:28

### Tamar ... Meribah Kadesh

names of towns. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the brook of Egypt

a very large ravine in the northeast part of the Sinai. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 47:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Gad

#### ULT

**28** The southern boundary of Gad will extend from Tamar to the waters of Meribah Kadesh, and farther to the brook of Egypt, and then to the Great Sea.

## Ezekiel 48:29

### you

This is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### cast lots

See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 45:1](#).

### This is the Lord Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 5:11](#). Alternate translation: "This is what the Lord Yahweh has declared" or "This is what I, the Lord Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [of the tribes](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [This is the Lord](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> This is [the land](#) for which you will cast lots; it will be the inheritance [of the tribes of Israel](#). These will be their portions. [This is the Lord](#) Yahweh's declaration.

## Ezekiel 48:30

### 4,500 cubits

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” Each long cubit was about 54 centimeters. See how you translated this in [Ezekiel 40:5](#). Alternate translation: “about 2.4 kilometers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> These will be the exits from the city:  
On the north side, which will measure  
4,500 cubits in length,

## Ezekiel 48:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gates
- will be
- gate
- gate
- gate
- for Levi
- named
- tribes
- of Israel
- Reuben
- Judah

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> will be three gates, named for tribes of Israel: one gate for Reuben, one gate for Judah, and one gate for Levi.

## Ezekiel 48:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gate
- gates
- gate
- gate
- for Joseph
- for Benjamin

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> On the east side, which will measure 4,500 cubits in length, will be three gates: one gate for Joseph, one gate for Benjamin, and one gate for Dan.

## Ezekiel 48:33

### 4,500 cubits

“four thousand five hundred cubits.” This is about 2.4 kilometers.  
(See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gates](#)
- [gate](#)
- [gate](#)
- [will be](#)
- [for Issachar](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> On the south side, which is 4,500 cubits in length, [will be](#) three [gates](#): one [gate](#) for Simeon, one [gate for Issachar](#), and one gate for Zebulun.

## Ezekiel 48:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- gates
- gate
- gate
- gate
- for Gad
- for Asher
- for Naphtali

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> On the west side, which will measure 4,500 cubits, will be three gates: one gate for Gad, one gate for Asher, and one gate for Naphtali.

## Ezekiel 48:35

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh Is](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> The distance around the city will be eighteen thousand cubits; from that day on, the city's name will be "[Yahweh Is There](#)."





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 24**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:5; 1:10; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:22; 1:26; 1:27; 1:28; 2:10; 7:23; 8:2; 9:8; 10:9; 10:10; 10:21; 10:22; 16:37; 16:41; 16:54; 21:15; 21:28; 21:30; 22:4; 22:20; 23:15; 26:17; 26:21; 27:2; 27:3; 27:10; 27:11; 27:27; 27:32; 27:35; 27:36; 28:4; 28:5; 28:7; 28:12; 28:16; 28:17; 28:22; 28:26; 29:12; 29:16; 30:3; 30:4; 30:9; 30:11; 30:14; 30:16; 30:19; 31:12; 31:14; 31:15; 32:12; 32:23; 32:24; 32:26; 33:11; 33:12; 33:13; 33:24; 33:29; 34:29; 35:3; 35:14; 36:3; 36:4; 38:23; 39:19; 39:23; 40:3; 41:22; 42:11; 43:3; 44:12)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Abstract Nouns*

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:10; 3:21; 6:4; 6:6; 6:8; 7:13; 7:19; 7:24; 10:13; 11:7; 11:15; 11:17; 12:7; 12:11; 12:19; 12:20; 12:23; 12:28; 13:9; 13:18; 13:21; 14:3; 14:5; 14:16; 14:18; 14:20; 14:22; 15:4; 16:5; 16:13; 16:20; 16:54; 16:55; 16:56; 16:57; 16:60; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:20; 17:21; 18:22; 18:24; 19:4; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 20:9; 20:14; 20:22; 20:29; 20:33; 20:34; 20:41; 20:47; 20:48; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:14; 21:24; 21:27; 21:29; 21:32; 22:24; 22:26; 23:3; 23:25; 23:29; 23:30; 23:42; 23:46; 24:8; 24:10; 24:11; 24:27; 25:3; 25:10; 26:2; 26:6; 26:10; 26:13; 26:14; 26:17; 27:25; 27:32; 27:33; 27:34; 28:13; 28:15; 28:22; 28:25; 29:5; 29:13; 30:4; 30:8; 30:11; 30:16; 30:21; 31:14; 31:17; 31:18; 32:4; 32:6; 32:15; 32:20; 32:22; 32:23; 32:24; 32:28; 32:31; 32:32; 33:6; 33:16; 33:21; 33:22; 33:24; 33:28; 33:32; 34:5; 34:8; 34:12; 34:22; 35:8; 35:9; 35:12; 36:4; 36:9; 36:10; 36:11; 36:19; 36:20; 36:25; 36:32; 36:35; 36:37; 36:38; 37:7; 37:9; 37:10; 38:8; 38:20; 39:7; 39:18; 40:1; 40:39; 40:43; 44:2; 44:14; 44:31; 45:6; 45:15; 46:12; 47:5; 48:10)

# Apostrophe

## Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

## Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

## Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

**Mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

**As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

**(Go back to: [Ezekiel 6:1](#); [21:16](#); [22:6](#); [22:10](#); [22:13](#))**



## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**  
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:19](#); [4:1](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [7:4](#); [7:10](#); [7:18](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:7](#); [8:10](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [10:3](#); [11:10](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#); [12:25](#); [13:5](#); [13:9](#); [13:14](#); [13:18](#); [14:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:8](#); [15:7](#); [16:20](#); [16:21](#); [16:32](#); [16:37](#); [16:46](#); [16:59](#); [16:62](#); [17:5](#); [17:21](#); [18:6](#); [18:11](#); [18:15](#); [19:14](#); [20:1](#); [20:12](#); [20:26](#); [21:19](#); [21:30](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [22:12](#); [22:16](#); [22:25](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:13](#); [23:17](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:28](#); [23:30](#); [23:49](#); [24:1](#); [24:5](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [24:23](#); [24:27](#); [25:4](#); [25:5](#); [26:1](#); [26:2](#); [26:6](#); [26:7](#); [28:22](#); [29:1](#); [29:5](#); [29:6](#); [29:10](#); [29:16](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#); [30:3](#); [30:6](#); [30:8](#); [30:18](#); [31:1](#); [31:8](#); [32:1](#); [32:5](#); [32:15](#); [32:17](#); [32:19](#); [32:25](#); [32:31](#); [33:12](#); [33:21](#); [33:25](#); [33:26](#); [33:29](#); [34:3](#); [34:12](#);

34:26; 34:27; 35:4; 35:10; 36:10; 36:11; 36:12; 37:6; 37:26; 38:2; 38:23; 39:1; 39:6; 39:12; 39:14; 39:16; 40:1; 40:42; 45:7; 45:13)

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day,” and “that they had brought with them.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were,” rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” and “Peter **was** the best hunter in the village.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

### A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
  - > \* Setting includes:
    - > \* where the story takes place
    - > \* when the story takes place
    - > \* who is present when the story begins
    - > \* what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about 30 years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

And Jesus himself was beginning about 30 years old. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli,

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he was **going through the grain fields**, and his **disciples were picking and eating the heads of grain**, rubbing them in their hands. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

**"When Abram was 86 years old,** Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother,** and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,** added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)  
[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 10:3](#))

## Biblical Distance

### Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

### Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.



## Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**.”

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits  
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: Ezekiel 40:5; 40:7; 40:9; 40:11; 40:14; 40:19; 40:21; 40:25; 40:27; 40:29; 40:33; 40:36; 40:42; 40:43; 40:47; 40:48; 41:1; 41:2; 41:3; 41:4; 41:5; 41:8; 41:9; 41:10; 41:11; 41:12; 41:13; 41:15; 41:22; 42:2; 42:3; 42:4; 42:7; 42:8; 42:16; 42:20; 43:13; 43:14; 43:15; 43:16; 43:17; 45:1; 45:2; 45:3; 45:6; 46:22; 47:3; 48:8; 48:9; 48:10; 48:13; 48:15; 48:16; 48:17; 48:18; 48:20; 48:21; 48:30; 48:33)

## Biblical Volume

### Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheke	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

### Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters<sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters<sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only 22 liters<sup>3</sup>.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] one bath  
[2] one homer  
[3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:11](#); [45:11](#); [45:24](#))

## Biblical Weight

### Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

### Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

### Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. <sup>1</sup>"

The footnote would look like:

█ <sup>[1]</sup> This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:10; 45:12](#))



## Doublet

### Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

### Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

### Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

### Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:4](#); [3:7](#); [3:19](#); [5:15](#); [9:4](#); [11:18](#); [14:6](#); [14:23](#); [16:3](#); [16:7](#); [16:22](#); [16:39](#); [16:47](#); [16:49](#); [17:17](#); [18:12](#); [20:19](#); [20:33](#); [23:29](#); [23:33](#); [25:14](#); [36:6](#); [36:19](#); [36:32](#); [38:10](#); [38:12](#); [38:13](#); [38:18](#); [39:4](#); [39:8](#); [39:9](#); [39:10](#); [39:21](#); [39:24](#))

## Ellipsis

### Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

### Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([<sup>1</sup>])

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:6](#); [22:29](#); [23:32](#); [23:38](#); [25:5](#); [34:4](#); [34:16](#); [40:44](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:17](#); [16:17](#); [16:32](#); [20:13](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [22:10](#); [22:31](#); [23:25](#); [32:23](#))

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.



(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, ‘**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.’”

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11:13](#); [26:2](#); [30:2](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

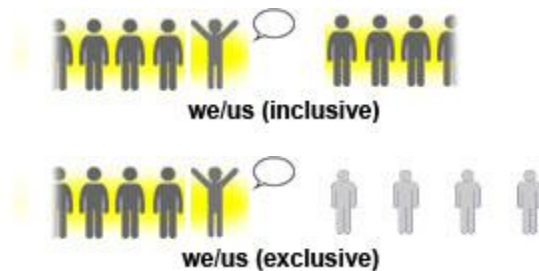
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:10](#); [33:21](#); [40:1](#))

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[Pronouns](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: Ezekiel 6:11; 7:2; 7:5; 11:8; 12:25; 13:8; 14:11; 15:8; 16:58; 18:23; 20:3; 21:7; 22:12; 23:34; 24:14; 25:14; 28:10; 29:20; 30:6; 31:8; 31:10; 31:18; 32:8; 33:17; 34:10; 34:11; 34:20; 35:14; 36:14; 37:14; 38:18; 39:5; 39:13; 39:20; 39:29; 43:19; 44:12; 44:27; 45:9; 45:18; 46:1; 46:16; 47:23; 48:29)

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 18:2](#); [23:40](#); [23:41](#); [29:8](#); [35:9](#); [43:19](#); [43:20](#); [43:22](#); [43:23](#); [43:25](#); [43:27](#); [45:18](#); [45:21](#); [48:20](#); [48:29](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

# Fractions

## Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

## Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

## Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

## Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

## Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

**A third** of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

**six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bmoney\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:11; 5:2](#))



## Hebrew Months

### Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

### List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Aviv** — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

**Sivan** — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

**Ab** — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

**Elul** — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

**Ethanim** — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

**Kislev** — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

**Tebeth** — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

**Shebat** — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

**Adar** — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

## Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
- (2) Use the names for months that people know.
- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**<sup>1</sup> you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:1](#); [8:1](#); [20:1](#); [24:1](#); [29:1](#); [29:17](#); [30:20](#); [31:1](#); [32:1](#); [33:21](#); [40:1](#); [45:18](#); [45:21](#); [45:25](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Ezekiel](#); [Ezekiel 1:3](#); [3:15](#); [6:14](#); [8:11](#); [8:14](#); [11:1](#); [11:13](#); [23:4](#); [23:11](#); [23:23](#); [23:42](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [27:8](#); [27:9](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [27:13](#); [27:14](#); [27:15](#); [27:17](#); [27:18](#); [27:19](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [27:23](#); [29:10](#); [29:14](#); [30:5](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#); [30:17](#); [38:2](#); [39:16](#); [47:10](#); [47:15](#); [47:16](#); [47:17](#); [47:18](#); [47:19](#); [47:20](#); [48:28](#))

## Hyperbole

### Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

### Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."



## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
  - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
  - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 22:4](#); [23:20](#); [23:23](#); [30:5](#); [30:11](#); [32:12](#); [34:8](#); [35:9](#))

## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

## Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

## Hypothetical Situation in the Future

**Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved.** But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

## Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](https://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:6](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

█ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

█ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

█ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

█ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

█ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

█ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

█ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

█ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

█ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

█ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

█ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

█ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 1:20; 1:28; 3:7; 3:16; 3:18; 3:20; 3:23; 6:1; 7:1; 7:27; 8:5; 8:17; 9:8; 10:17; 11:13; 11:14; 11:21; 12:1; 12:8; 12:17; 12:21; 12:22; 12:25; 12:26; 13:1; 13:3; 13:6; 13:17; 14:2; 14:16; 15:1; 16:1; 16:43; 16:60; 16:63; 17:1; 17:11; 17:19; 18:1; 18:2; 18:13; 18:20; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 19:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:9; 20:22; 20:43; 20:45; 20:48; 21:1; 21:6; 21:8; 21:13; 21:14; 21:16; 21:18; 21:25; 21:29; 22:1; 22:4; 22:14; 22:17; 22:23; 22:24; 23:1; 23:10; 23:17; 23:24; 23:37; 23:45; 23:46; 23:47; 23:49; 24:1; 24:12; 24:15; 24:20; 25:1; 25:15; 25:16; 26:1; 27:1; 28:1; 28:11; 28:18; 28:20; 29:1; 29:17; 30:1; 30:16; 30:20; 31:1; 31:15; 31:16; 31:17; 32:1; 32:17; 32:18; 33:1; 33:4; 33:6; 33:8; 33:13; 33:16; 33:22; 33:23; 33:25; 33:27; 34:1; 34:7; 34:9; 34:10; 34:23; 34:30; 35:1; 36:11; 36:16; 36:18; 37:9; 37:15; 38:1; 38:3; 39:23; 39:29; 40:4; 43:8; 44:4; 44:5; 44:30)



## Introduction of a New Event

### Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 30:20](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!  
**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot**

**speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:10; 28:9; 39:18](#))

## Litotes

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:27](#))



## Merism

### Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,  
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.  
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

### Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

### Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:47](#); [21:4](#); [29:10](#); [30:6](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page

in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

**(Go back to:** Ezekiel 2:4; 2:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:14; 3:17; 3:20; 4:8; 4:16; 4:17; 5:4; 5:7; 5:16; 7:3; 7:4; 7:8; 7:10; 7:15; 7:18; 7:23; 8:1; 9:9; Notes; 11:3; 11:5; 11:7; 11:11; 11:12; 11:16; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:24; 12:2; 12:3; 12:6; 12:11; 12:13; Notes; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:18; 13:20; 13:21; 13:22; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:7; 14:8; 14:10; 14:11; 14:13; 14:17; 14:19; 14:21; 15:7; Notes; 16:1; 16:3; 16:4; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:13; 16:15; 16:17; 16:20; 16:23; 16:25; 16:27; 16:30; 16:31; 16:32; 16:35; 16:36; 16:38; 16:40; 16:43; 16:44; 16:45; 16:46; 16:47; 16:49; 16:51; 16:53; 16:56; 16:57; 16:59; 16:60; Notes; 17:14; 17:20; 17:22; 17:24; 18:9; 18:17; 18:19; 18:23; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; Notes; 19:1; 19:5; 19:8; 19:10; 19:12; 19:13; 19:14; 20:6; 20:7; 20:8; 20:9; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:16; 20:18; 20:19; 20:21; 20:22; 20:30; 20:33; 20:37; 20:40; 20:41; 20:43; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:9; 21:10; 21:12; 21:14; 21:15; 21:23; 21:28; 21:29; 21:30; 21:31; 22:3; 22:4; 22:6; 22:10; 22:12; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16; 22:18; 22:20; 22:21; 22:22; 22:24; 22:26; 22:28; 22:30; 22:31; Notes; 23:1; 23:4; 23:5; 23:7; 23:8; 23:11; 23:13; 23:14; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:20; 23:22; 23:24; 23:25; 23:26; 23:27; 23:28; 23:30; 23:31; 23:32; 23:33; 23:35; 23:36; 23:38; 23:40; 23:42; 23:43; Notes; 24:6; 24:11; 24:12; 24:23; 24:24; 24:25; 24:27; 25:4; 25:7; 25:10; 25:13; 25:14; 26:2; 26:14; 26:16; 26:20; Notes; 27:4; 27:6; 27:8; 27:25; 27:26; 27:28; 27:31; 27:34; 28:2; 28:9; 28:14; 28:16; 28:23; 28:24; 29:6; 29:7; 29:8; 29:12; 29:13; 29:14; 29:15; 29:18; 29:19; 29:21; 30:3; 30:6; 30:7; 30:12; 30:13; 30:15; 30:18; 30:21; 31:15; Notes; 32:3; 32:7; 32:9; 32:10; 32:15; 32:16; 32:19; 32:22; 32:24; 32:25; 32:27; 32:30; 33:9; 33:10; 33:11; 33:15; 33:17; 33:18; 33:19; 33:24; Notes; 34:1; 34:2; 34:3; 34:4; 34:7; 34:9; 34:11; 34:12; 34:13; 34:14; 34:17; 34:18; 34:20; 34:22; 34:23; 34:25; 34:27; 34:31; 35:5; 35:7; 35:12; 35:15; 36:5; 36:7; 36:12; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:18; 36:25; 36:26; 36:27; 36:29; 36:30; 36:37; 36:38; Notes; 37:11; 37:12; 37:24; 38:4; 38:18; 38:19; 38:21; 39:2; 39:3; 39:4; 39:14; 39:16; 39:21; 39:24; 39:29; 43:7; 43:9; 44:10; 44:12; 48:14)



# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”  
or:  
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 1:24; 1:28; 2:5; 2:6; 2:8; 3:1; 3:4; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:14; 3:17; 3:22; 3:26; 4:3; 4:4; 4:6; 4:7; 4:16; 5:2; 5:4; 5:13; 5:16; 6:2; 6:3; 6:8; 6:11; 7:2; 7:7; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 8:6; 8:10; 8:12; 8:17; 9:7; 9:9; 11:5; 11:9; 11:10; 11:15; 11:19; 11:21; 12:2; 12:3; 12:6; 12:9; 12:14; 12:16; 12:24; 12:25; 12:27; 13:5; 13:9; 13:17; 13:21; 13:23; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:13; 14:17; 15:7; 16:1; 16:4; 16:6; 16:8; 16:9; 16:13; 16:15; 16:17; 16:20; 16:23; 16:25; 16:27; 16:30; 16:32; 16:35; 16:38; 16:39; 16:40; 16:42; 16:43; 16:44; 16:46; 16:47; 16:49; 16:51; 16:53; 16:56; 16:57; 16:59; 16:60; 17:2; 17:12; 17:14; 17:21; 18:2; 18:6; 18:10; 18:13; 18:15; 18:25; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 19:10; 20:5; 20:6; 20:9; 20:14; 20:15; 20:16; 20:22; 20:33; 20:39; 20:44; 20:46; 20:48; 21:4; 21:10; 21:13; 21:15; 21:16; 21:19; 21:22; 21:24; 21:27; 21:31; 22:2; 22:3; 22:10; 22:13; 22:15; 22:18; 22:24; 22:30; 23:9; 23:23; 23:24; 23:25; 23:27; 23:28; 23:30; 23:32; 23:42; 24:2; 24:3; 24:6; 24:9; 24:13; 24:21; 25:3; 25:5; 25:6; 25:7; 25:8; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 26:2; 26:3; 26:5; 26:6; 26:8; 26:9; 26:15; 26:18; 26:20; 27:3; 27:15; 27:16; 27:17; 27:19; 27:20; 27:21; 27:23; 27:28; 27:35; 28:2; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:10; 28:23; 28:24; 28:25; 29:8; 29:10; 29:12; 29:13; 29:16; 29:21; 30:4; 30:5; 30:8; 30:11; 30:16; 30:17; 30:25; 31:6; 31:11; 31:12; 31:14; 31:16; 31:17; 32:9; 32:10; 32:11; 32:13; 32:15; 32:18; 32:20; 32:22; 32:23; 32:24; 32:25; 32:26; 32:28; 32:29; 32:30; 33:2; 33:3; 33:4; 33:6; 33:7; 33:8; 33:10; 33:20; 33:22; 33:25; 33:26; 33:28; 33:31; 33:32; 34:10; 34:23; 34:27; 34:28; 34:29; 35:3; 35:6; 35:8; 35:14; 36:5; 36:10; 36:17; 36:20; 36:21; 36:22; 36:32; 36:34; 36:37; 37:1; 37:11; 37:19; 37:24; 38:2; 38:8; 38:10; 38:12; 38:17; 38:21; 38:22; 38:23; 39:6; 39:7; 39:12; 39:20; 39:21; 39:22; 39:23; 39:25; 39:27; 39:29; 40:4; 44:6; 44:12; 44:22; 45:17; 47:13)

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:4](#); [21:26](#); [21:29](#); [22:26](#); [22:29](#); [24:17](#); [26:19](#); [27:16](#); [28:23](#); [33:11](#); [33:14](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord*® *Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord*® *Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:5](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [11:1](#); [39:12](#); [40:17](#); [48:15](#); [48:16](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#); [48:30](#); [48:33](#))

## Order of Events

### Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

### Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

### Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See [Verse Bridges](#).)

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.



20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_events](https://ufw.io/figs_events).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[Verse Bridges](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:4](#))

## Ordinal Numbers

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:1](#); [8:1](#); [20:1](#); [21:14](#); [24:1](#); [26:1](#); [29:1](#); [29:17](#); [30:20](#); [31:1](#); [32:1](#); [33:21](#); [39:14](#); [40:1](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [45:21](#); [45:25](#))

## Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and delivers the lesson in a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

### Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often use figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

Then he also told them a parable. "A blind man is not able to guide a blind man, is he? Would not both fall into a pit?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

### Examples From the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket but, rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

>

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

### Translation Strategies

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the lesson the same.

Jesus also said to them, "The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the **lampstand**?" (Mark 4:21 ULT)

If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus also said to them, “The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on a **high shelf?**”

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **sowed** in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

**Jesus also said to them,** “The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?” (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly.** Jesus also said to them, “The lamp is not brought in order to put it under a basket, or under the bed, is it? Is it not so that it might be put on the lampstand?” (Mark 4:21 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them.** He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. It is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the kingdom of God grows.** He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all the seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:3](#); [24:6](#); [24:7](#); [24:9](#); [24:11](#); [24:13](#); [24:14](#); [30:20](#); [30:21](#); [30:22](#); [30:25](#); [31:3](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "**doublet**" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)



This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

**(Go back to:** [Ezekiel 7:8](#); [7:12](#); [11:17](#); [11:20](#); [12:15](#); [12:27](#); [13:19](#); [13:23](#); [14:6](#); [16:42](#); [18:26](#); [20:4](#); [20:23](#); [20:41](#); [21:21](#); [22:15](#); [22:27](#); [23:3](#); [23:9](#); [23:32](#); [24:16](#); [25:7](#); [26:12](#); [26:18](#); [30:23](#); [30:26](#); [36:19](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:5](#); [5:17](#); [7:3](#); [7:6](#); [7:26](#); [17:7](#); [17:24](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [21:10](#); [21:12](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [23:25](#); [24:7](#); [25:9](#); [26:5](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [29:10](#); [30:18](#); [35:2](#); [35:3](#); [35:6](#); [35:10](#); [35:14](#); [36:1](#); [36:15](#); [36:29](#))

# Pronouns

## Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are "I," "you," "he," "it," "this," "that," "himself," "someone," and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

## Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive "We"](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:3](#); [43:22](#); [43:23](#); [43:25](#); [43:27](#); [44:28](#))

## Proverbs

### Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples From the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

### Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

- (1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
- (2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing

them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,  
and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches,  
and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you?

I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,  
so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain  
in the harvest season;

And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow,  
for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

There is a generation that curses their father  
and does not bless their mother.

There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,

and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,  
and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 18:2](#))



## Reflexive Pronouns

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

**He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 28:4](#); [34:15](#); [34:20](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:6; 8:12; 8:15; 8:17; 9:8; 12:9; 12:22; 13:7; 13:12; 13:18; 14:3; 15:2; 15:3; 15:4; 16:20; 16:30; 17:9; 17:10; 17:12; 17:15; 17:19; 18:2; 18:13; 18:23; 18:24; 18:25; 18:31; 19:2; 20:3; 20:29; 20:30; 20:31; 20:49; 21:10; 22:2; 22:14; 23:36; 26:15; 27:32; 28:9; 31:2; 31:18; 32:19; 33:10; 33:11; 33:25; 34:2; 34:18; 36:20; 38:13; 38:14; 38:17; 47:6)

## Simile

### Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

### Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

### Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)



How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:7](#); [1:14](#); [1:24](#); [7:17](#); [13:4](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [20:30](#); [21:10](#); [21:15](#); [21:28](#); [22:25](#); [22:27](#); [23:20](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:10](#); [26:19](#); [26:20](#); [27:7](#); [28:2](#); [28:3](#); [28:6](#); [32:2](#); [33:32](#); [36:17](#); [38:9](#); [38:16](#))

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:3; 4:7; 6:2; 11:13; 13:17; 14:8; 15:7; 17:18; 18:6; 18:12; 18:15; 20:5; 20:15; 20:23; 20:42; 20:46; 21:2; 21:12; 21:14; 21:17; 22:13; 24:17; 25:2; 25:6; 27:30; 27:31; 27:36; 28:21; 29:2; 35:2; 36:7; 38:2; 44:12; 47:14)

## Symbolic Language

### Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

█ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

### Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

### Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

### Examples From the Bible

█ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

█ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

█ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven**

**stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 6:11](#); [19:10](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#))

## Symbolic Prophecy

### Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other Scriptures, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See *Dream and Vision* for help translating “dreams” and “visions.”) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images included a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies, strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for this. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense “the predictive past.” (See *Predictive Past*.)

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
- Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
- In places where God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

### Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Symbolic Language](#)

- When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.
- If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.
- Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.
- Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.
- Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

## Examples From the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images mentioned in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The bolded phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man, wearing a robe that reached down to his feet and he wore a golden sash across his chest. **His head and hair were as white as wool**—as white as snow—and his eyes were like a flame of fire. **His feet were like polished bronze**, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and **his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters**. He had seven stars in his right hand, and a sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULT)

As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was as white as snow, and **the hair of his head was like pure wool**. (Daniel 7:9 ULT)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and **his feet were like polished bronze**, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULT)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; **his voice was like the sound of many waters**, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULT)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The bolded verbs refer to past events.

The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he **saw** concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah. (Isaiah 1:1 ULT)

Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh **has spoken**: (Isaiah 1:2a ULT)

“I **have nourished** and **brought up** children, but they **have rebelled** against me.” (Isaiah 1:2b ULT)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The bolded verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish. In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations. The people who walked in darkness **have seen** a great light; those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light **has shone** on them. (Isaiah 9:1-2 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- If the prophecy uses the past tense to talk about the future and this would be misunderstood in your language, use the strategies in Predictive Past.
- If the images in the prophecy are of things that are unknown in your culture, use the strategies in [Translate Unknowns](#).

(Go back to: [Introduction to Ezekiel](#))



# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: Ezekiel 4:16; 5:11; 6:9; 7:4; 7:9; 7:17; 7:27; 8:18; 9:5; 9:10; 13:22; 14:6; 14:13; 16:4; 16:5; 16:27; 16:49; 16:56; 17:9; 18:4; 20:17; 20:22; 20:24; 20:47; 21:6; 21:7; 22:14; 23:39; 24:4; 24:16; 24:21; 24:27; 28:9; 28:16; 28:17; 29:11; 32:13; 35:12; 36:3; 36:8; 37:16; 37:20; 38:11; 43:3; 43:11)

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2]

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]  
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]  
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]  
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:9](#))

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

### Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:9](#); [4:12](#); [9:2](#); [9:11](#); [10:2](#); [10:9](#); [27:19](#); [28:13](#); [31:8](#))

## Verse Bridges

### Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://www.unfoldingword.com/en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg/)

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

### Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

<sup>4-5</sup> Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

<sup>4</sup> However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), <sup>5</sup> if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

<sup>16-17</sup> But Yahweh said to him, "I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

<sup>16</sup> Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. <sup>17</sup> But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](https://www.unfoldingword.com/translationstudio/).



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)

2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:4; 36:4](#))

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun]]

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise son makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples From the Bible

Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- (1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”  
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

“If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”  
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

>

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:29](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 27**

## abomination, abominable

### Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, [desolate](#), [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:9](#); [8:17](#); [9:4](#); [18:13](#); [18:24](#); [43:8](#))

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 33:24](#))

# Adam

## Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), Eve, image of God, [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:5](#); [1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:26](#); [2:1](#); [2:3](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:10](#); [3:17](#); [3:25](#); [4:1](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [5:1](#); [6:2](#); [7:2](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:12](#); [8:15](#); [8:17](#); [10:8](#); [10:14](#); [10:21](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:15](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [12:9](#); [12:18](#); [12:22](#); [12:27](#); [13:2](#); [13:17](#); [14:3](#); [14:13](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [15:2](#); [16:2](#); [17:2](#); [19:3](#); [19:6](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [20:21](#); [20:27](#); [20:46](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#); [21:14](#); [21:19](#); [21:28](#); [22:2](#); [22:18](#); [22:24](#); [23:2](#); [23:36](#); [23:42](#); [24:2](#); [24:16](#); [24:25](#); [25:2](#); [25:13](#); [26:2](#); [27:2](#); [27:13](#); [28:2](#); [28:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:21](#); [29:2](#); [29:8](#); [29:11](#); [29:18](#); [30:2](#); [30:21](#); [31:2](#); [31:14](#); [32:2](#); [32:13](#); [32:18](#); [33:2](#); [33:7](#); [33:10](#); [33:12](#); [33:24](#); [33:30](#); [34:2](#); [34:31](#); [35:2](#); [36:1](#); [36:10](#); [36:11](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:17](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [37:3](#); [37:9](#); [37:11](#); [37:16](#); [38:2](#); [38:14](#); [38:20](#); [39:1](#); [39:15](#); [39:17](#); [40:4](#); [41:19](#); [43:7](#); [43:10](#); [43:18](#); [44:5](#); [44:25](#); [47:6](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 30:16](#); [39:23](#); [39:27](#))



## alien, foreigner, sojourn

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 44:7](#); [44:9](#))

# Almighty

## Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:24](#); [10:5](#))

## altar

### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:13](#); [8:5](#); [8:16](#); [9:2](#); [40:46](#); [40:47](#); [41:22](#); [43:13](#); [43:18](#); [43:22](#); [43:26](#); [43:27](#); [45:19](#); [47:1](#))

## **amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(**Go back to:** [Ezekiel 3:15](#); [20:26](#); [25:3](#); [27:35](#); [28:19](#); [29:12](#); [30:7](#); [35:12](#); [35:15](#); [36:3](#))

## Amorite

### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

### Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567,

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:3](#); [16:45](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:3](#); [5:10](#); [16:3](#); [16:45](#); [18:2](#); [18:4](#); [18:14](#); [18:17](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [18:20](#); [20:4](#); [20:18](#); [20:24](#); [20:27](#); [20:30](#); [20:36](#); [20:42](#); [22:7](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [36:28](#); [37:25](#); [44:25](#); [47:14](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:9](#))



## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:21](#); [Notes](#); [2:1](#); [3:23](#); [4:2](#); [4:4](#); [8:11](#); [10:3](#); [10:17](#); [20:28](#); [21:21](#); [23:21](#); [27:29](#); [31:14](#); [33:26](#); [40:3](#); [40:4](#); [43:6](#); [44:5](#); [44:8](#); [44:11](#); [44:24](#); [47:10](#))

## Arabah

### Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 2:29
- Jeremiah 2:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1026, H6160

([Go back to: Ezekiel 47:8](#))

## Asher

### Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterranean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 48:2](#); [48:3](#); [48:34](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:40](#); [23:46](#); [23:47](#); [24:4](#); [27:27](#); [27:34](#); [29:5](#); [32:3](#); [32:22](#); [32:23](#); [34:29](#); [38:4](#); [38:7](#); [38:12](#); [38:13](#); [38:15](#); [39:17](#))

## Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:28](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:9](#); [23:12](#); [23:23](#); [27:23](#); [31:3](#); [32:22](#))

## atonement, atone, atoned

### Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, [forgive](#), propitiation, reconcile, [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 4:20
- Numbers 5:8
- Numbers 28:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G26430

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 45:15](#); [45:17](#))

## Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 12:13](#); [17:12](#); [17:16](#); [17:20](#); [19:9](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [23:23](#); [24:2](#); [26:7](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#); [30:10](#); [30:24](#); [30:25](#); [32:11](#))



## barley

### Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:12](#); [13:19](#); [45:13](#))

## barren, dry

### Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 19:13](#))

## Bashan

### Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:6](#); [39:18](#))

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), power, reveal, Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 29:11](#); [32:13](#))

## Benaiah

### Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: Asaph, Jehoiada, [Levite](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:36
- 1 Kings 1:8
- 2 Samuel 23:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1141

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11:1; 11:13](#))

## Benjamin, Benjaminite

### Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 48:22](#); [48:23](#); [48:24](#); [48:32](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:12](#); [34:26](#); [44:30](#))



## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:23](#); [9:9](#); [16:9](#); [16:38](#); [18:10](#); [18:13](#); [21:32](#); [22:3](#); [22:6](#); [22:9](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:27](#); [23:45](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [33:4](#); [33:5](#); [35:6](#); [39:17](#); [39:19](#); [43:18](#))

## bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:28](#); [3:23](#); [6:4](#); [6:7](#); [8:1](#); [9:8](#); [11:5](#); [11:13](#); [13:11](#); [13:14](#); [28:23](#); [30:6](#); [30:22](#); [38:20](#); [39:23](#); [43:3](#); [44:4](#); [47:14](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [5:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [13:19](#); [14:13](#); [16:19](#); [16:49](#); [18:7](#); [18:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:22](#); [44:3](#); [44:7](#))

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:7](#); [9:2](#); [22:18](#); [24:11](#); [27:13](#); [40:3](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:17](#); [11:15](#); [18:10](#); [18:18](#); [24:23](#); [33:30](#); [38:21](#); [44:25](#))

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:25](#); [39:13](#))

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 43:18](#); [43:24](#); [43:27](#); [45:15](#); [45:23](#); [46:2](#); [46:12](#); [46:13](#); [46:15](#))



## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 39:14](#); [39:15](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [10:13](#))

# camel

## Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

([Go back to: Ezekiel 25:5](#))

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:3](#))

## captive, captivate, captivity, catch

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:1](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [6:9](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [12:11](#); [16:53](#); [29:14](#); [30:17](#); [30:18](#); [39:25](#))

## cedar, cedarwood

### Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:5](#); [31:3](#); [31:8](#))

## Chaldea, Chaldean

### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:3](#); [11:24](#); [12:13](#); [16:29](#); [23:14](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:23](#))



## cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: angel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9:3](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:16](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [11:22](#); [28:14](#); [28:16](#); [41:18](#); [41:20](#); [41:25](#))

## chief, leader

### Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [head](#), chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 10:11](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, [David](#), Jesus, [anoint](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 37 General Notes](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48

- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 28:10](#); [31:18](#); [32:19](#); [32:24](#); [32:25](#); [32:26](#); [32:28](#); [32:29](#); [32:30](#); [32:32](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:9](#); [18:6](#); [Notes](#); [36:25](#))



## column, pillar

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 40:49; 42:6](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), Holy Spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:14](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:23](#); [9:7](#); [9:11](#); [10:7](#); [10:18](#); [11:9](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:7](#); [12:12](#); [16:14](#); [19:14](#); [20:10](#); [20:34](#); [21:3](#); [24:18](#); [28:18](#); [34:13](#); [37:1](#); [37:7](#); [37:10](#); [38:4](#); [38:8](#); [39:9](#); [42:1](#); [42:15](#); [46:2](#); [46:12](#); [46:21](#); [47:2](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 13:6](#))

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:24](#); [20:12](#); [20:20](#); [37:28](#); [44:19](#); [44:24](#); [44:29](#); [48:11](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:8](#); [5:12](#); [22:31](#))

## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 1:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 9:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 7:13
- Acts 5:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 3:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0533, H0553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G21140, G21150, G21740, G22920, G22930, G22940, G38700, G38740, G39540, G43890, G48370, G51110

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:6; 3:9](#))



## court, courtyard

### Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:7](#); [8:16](#); [9:7](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:5](#); [40:14](#); [40:17](#); [40:19](#); [40:20](#); [40:23](#); [40:27](#); [40:28](#); [40:31](#); [40:32](#); [40:34](#); [40:37](#); [40:44](#); [40:47](#); [41:15](#); [42:1](#); [42:3](#); [42:6](#); [42:7](#); [42:8](#); [42:9](#); [42:10](#); [42:14](#); [43:5](#); [44:17](#); [44:19](#); [44:21](#); [44:27](#); [45:19](#); [46:1](#); [46:20](#); [46:21](#); [46:22](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:59](#); [16:60](#); [16:62](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [17:19](#); [20:37](#); [30:5](#); [34:25](#); [37:26](#); [44:7](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:10](#); [14:13](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [25:13](#); [29:8](#); [36:11](#); [39:18](#); [43:19](#); [43:23](#); [43:25](#); [45:18](#); [45:22](#); [45:23](#); [46:6](#))

## **crown, crowned**

### **Definition:**

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

### **Bible References:**

- John 19:3
- Lamentations 5:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 4:1
- Psalms 21:3
- Revelation 3:11

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G12380, G47350, G47370

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:12](#); [23:42](#))

## **cry, cry out, outcry**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead, pray)

### **Bible References:**

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9:8](#); [11:13](#); [27:30](#))

## cut off, cut down

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 14:8](#); [14:13](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [16:4](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [25:7](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [29:8](#); [30:15](#); [31:12](#); [34:25](#); [35:7](#); [37:26](#))

## darkness

### Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), light, [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 32:8](#); [34:12](#))



## David

### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 34:23](#); [34:24](#); [37:24](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), [decree](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:18](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [20:29](#); [23:23](#); [36:29](#); [38:21](#); [39:11](#))

## decree, decreed

### Definition:

The term “decree” means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a “decree.”

- A “decree” is similar to a “law,” but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term “decree” could be translated as to “order” or to “command” or to “formally require” or to “publicly make a law.”
- God’s laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), law)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 8:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 2:13
- Esther 1:22
- Luke 2:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G13780

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 37:11](#))

# delight

## Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “to take pleasure in” or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person “delights in” something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 18:23](#); [18:32](#); [33:11](#))

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 13:21](#); [13:23](#); [14:22](#); [34:10](#); [34:12](#); [34:22](#); [34:27](#); [36:29](#); [37:23](#))

## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:5](#); [17:13](#); [43:19](#); [44:22](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 19:13](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [20:21](#); [20:23](#); [20:36](#); [34:25](#))

## desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

### Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, waste)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 6:14; 7:27; 12:20; 14:15; 14:16; 15:8; 23:33; 29:9; 29:10; 29:12; 32:15; 33:28; 33:29; 35:3; 35:4; 35:7; 35:9; 35:14; 35:15; 36:34](#))



## destroy, destruction, annihilate

### Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 6:3](#); [12:22](#); [22:27](#); [25:7](#); [25:16](#); [28:16](#); [30:13](#); [32:13](#); [37:11](#))

# devour

## Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: [consume](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:8; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 4:9; 4:10; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:16; 5:10; 7:15; 12:18; 12:19; 15:4; 15:5; 15:7; 16:13; 16:19; 18:2; 18:6; 18:11; 18:15; 19:3; 19:6; 19:12; 19:14; 20:47; 22:9; 22:25; 23:25; 24:17; 24:22; 25:4; 28:18; 33:25; 34:3; 34:28; 36:13; 36:14; 39:17; 39:18; 39:19; 42:5; 42:13; 43:8; 44:29; 44:31; 45:21](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9:6](#); [13:19](#); [18:26](#); [18:32](#); [21:11](#); [23:10](#); [23:47](#); [24:18](#); [26:6](#); [26:8](#); [26:11](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [33:18](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, [evil](#), [sin](#), obey)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 3:7
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 6:49
- Psalms 89:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:7** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G05060, G05430, G05440, G05450, G38470, G38760

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:6](#); [20:8](#); [20:13](#); [20:21](#))

## dominion

### Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 19:11](#))

## donkey, mule

### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 23:20](#))

## earth, land

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:19](#); [1:21](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [6:14](#); [7:2](#); [7:7](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:27](#); [8:3](#); [8:12](#); [8:17](#); [9:9](#); [10:16](#); [10:19](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [12:6](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:19](#); [13:14](#); [14:13](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [15:8](#); [16:29](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:13](#); [19:4](#); [19:7](#); [20:6](#); [20:8](#); [20:15](#); [20:28](#); [20:32](#); [20:34](#); [20:36](#); [20:41](#); [20:42](#); [21:32](#); [22:4](#); [22:24](#); [22:29](#); [22:30](#); [23:15](#); [23:48](#); [24:7](#); [25:7](#); [25:9](#); [26:16](#); [27:17](#); [27:29](#); [27:33](#); [28:17](#); [28:18](#); [29:5](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [29:12](#); [29:14](#); [29:19](#); [29:20](#); [30:5](#); [30:7](#); [30:11](#); [30:12](#); [30:25](#); [31:12](#); [31:14](#); [31:18](#); [32:4](#); [32:6](#); [32:8](#); [32:9](#); [32:15](#); [32:18](#); [32:24](#); [33:2](#); [33:3](#); [33:24](#); [33:28](#); [33:29](#); [34:6](#); [34:13](#); [34:25](#); [34:28](#); [35:10](#); [35:14](#); [36:5](#); [36:18](#); [36:24](#); [36:35](#); [37:25](#); [38:2](#); [38:8](#); [38:9](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:16](#); [39:12](#); [39:13](#); [39:14](#); [39:16](#); [39:18](#); [40:2](#); [43:14](#); [45:1](#); [45:4](#); [45:16](#); [45:22](#); [46:3](#); [46:9](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:18](#); [47:21](#); [48:12](#); [48:14](#); [48:29](#))



## Egypt, Egyptian

### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:26; 17:15; 19:4; 20:5; 20:6; 20:7; 20:8; 20:9; 20:10; 20:36; 23:3; 23:8; 23:19; 23:21; 23:27; 27:7; 29:2; 29:3; 29:6; 29:9; 29:10; 29:12; 29:13; 29:14; 29:19; 29:20; 30:4; 30:6; 30:8; 30:9; 30:10; 30:11; 30:13; 30:15; 30:16; 30:18; 30:19; 30:21; 30:22; 30:23; 30:25; 30:26; 31:2; 32:2; 32:12; 32:15; 32:16; 32:18](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:12](#); [9:6](#); [20:3](#); [27:9](#))

## En Gedi

### Definition:

En Gedi was the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- En Gedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means “fountain,” referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](#), [desert](#), [fountain](#), [Judah](#), [rest](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [stronghold](#), [vineyard](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:2
- Song of Songs 1:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5872

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 47:10](#))

## Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 37:16](#); [37:19](#); [48:5](#); [48:6](#))

## Ethiopia, Ethiopian

### Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:27
- Acts 8:30
- Acts 8:32-33
- Acts 8:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 3:9
- Zephaniah 3:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01280

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 29:10](#); [30:5](#); [30:9](#); [38:5](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:16](#); [5:17](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [7:5](#); [7:24](#); [8:9](#); [Notes](#); [11:2](#); [13:22](#); [14:15](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [16:23](#); [16:57](#); [20:43](#); [20:44](#); [Notes](#); [30:12](#); [33:11](#); [34:25](#); [36:31](#); [38:10](#))

## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:5](#); [34:2](#); [34:3](#); [39:18](#); [43:23](#); [43:25](#); [45:15](#); [45:23](#))



## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 10:4](#); [21:26](#); [31:10](#))

## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 2:25-26
- Ezekiel 1:1-3
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G39270

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:57](#); [22:10](#); [23:10](#); [39:23](#))

## Ezekiel

### Facts:

Ezekiel was a prophet of God during the exile period when many Jews were taken to Babylon.

- Ezekiel was a priest living in the kingdom of Judah when he and many other Jews were captured by the Babylonian army.
- For over twenty years, he and his wife lived in Babylon near a river, and the Jews came there to hear him speak messages from God.
- Among other things, Ezekiel prophesied about the destruction and restoration of Jerusalem and the temple.
- He also prophesied about the future kingdom of the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [exile](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:3
- Ezekiel 24:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3168

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:3](#); [24:24](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:6; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:15; 1:28; 2:4; 2:10; 3:8; 3:23; 4:3; 4:7; 6:2; 7:18; 7:22; 8:16; 9:8; 10:14; 10:21; 10:22; 11:13; 12:6; 12:12; 13:17; 14:3; 14:4; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 15:7; 16:5; 20:35; 20:46; 20:47; 21:2; 21:16; 25:2; 27:35; 28:21; 29:2; 29:5; 32:4; 32:10; 33:27; 34:6; 35:2; 37:2; 38:2; 38:20; 39:5; 39:14; 39:23; 39:24; 39:29; 40:6; 40:15; 40:20; 40:22; 40:44; 40:45; 40:46; 41:4; 41:12; 41:14; 41:15; 41:18; 41:19; 41:21; 41:25; 42:2; 42:3; 42:7; 42:8; 42:10; 42:13; 42:15; 43:3; 43:4; 44:4; 45:7; 47:1; 48:15; 48:21)

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: believe, faith, believe)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9 General Notes](#); [15:8](#); [17:20](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [18:24](#); [Notes](#); [39:23](#); [39:26](#))

# famine

## Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:17](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [7:15](#); [14:13](#); [34:29](#); [36:29](#); [36:30](#))



## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), [marvel](#), power)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:6](#); [3:9](#); [11:8](#); [30:13](#))

## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 44:24](#); [45:17](#); [45:21](#); [45:25](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:4](#); [1:13](#); [1:27](#); [5:4](#); [8:2](#); [10:2](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [16:41](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [20:31](#); [20:47](#); [21:31](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:31](#); [23:25](#); [23:47](#); [24:10](#); [24:12](#); [28:14](#); [28:16](#); [28:18](#); [30:8](#); [30:14](#); [30:16](#); [36:5](#); [38:19](#); [38:22](#); [39:6](#); [39:9](#); [39:10](#))

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:40](#); [44:30](#); [48:14](#))

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:14](#); [10:12](#); [11:19](#); [16:26](#); [20:48](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [23:20](#); [32:5](#); [36:26](#); [37:6](#); [39:17](#); [39:18](#); [40:43](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

### Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 25:5](#); [34:6](#); [34:8](#); [34:10](#); [34:11](#); [34:12](#); [34:15](#); [34:17](#); [34:19](#); [34:31](#); [36:38](#))

## **forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned**

### **Definition:**

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 36 General Notes](#))



## forsake, forsaken, leave

### Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:12](#); [9:9](#); [20:8](#); [23:8](#); [24:21](#))

## freewill offering

### Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 7:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

([Go back to: Ezekiel 46:12](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), grape, Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:8](#); [17:9](#); [17:23](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [25:4](#); [34:27](#); [36:8](#); [36:30](#); [47:12](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), minister, [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:8](#); [20:13](#); [20:21](#); [Notes](#))

## Gad

### Facts:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 48:27](#); [48:28](#); [48:34](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: Ezekiel 8:3; 8:14; 9:2; 10:19; 11:1; 21:15; 21:22; 26:2; 26:10; 40:3; 40:6; 40:7; 40:8; 40:9; 40:10; 40:11; 40:13; 40:14; 40:15; 40:18; 40:19; 40:20; 40:21; 40:22; 40:23; 40:24; 40:27; 40:28; 40:32; 40:35; 40:38; 40:39; 40:40; 40:41; 40:44; 40:48; 41:23; 41:24; 41:25; 42:15; 43:1; 43:4; 44:1; 44:2; 44:3; 44:4; 44:11; 44:17; 45:19; 46:1; 46:2; 46:3; 46:8; 46:9; 46:12; 46:19; 47:2; 48:31; 48:32; 48:33; 48:34)

## Gilead, Gileadite

### Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, Manasseh, [Reuben](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 47:18](#))



## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 44:18](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:28](#); [3:12](#); [3:23](#); [8:4](#); [10:4](#); [10:18](#); [11:23](#); [39:21](#); [43:2](#); [43:5](#); [44:4](#))

## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [9:3](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [14:11](#); [20:5](#); [20:7](#); [20:19](#); [20:20](#); [28:2](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:16](#); [28:26](#); [31:8](#); [31:9](#); [34:24](#); [34:30](#); [34:31](#); [36:28](#); [37:23](#); [37:27](#); [39:22](#); [39:28](#); [40:2](#); [43:2](#); [44:2](#))

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8 General Notes](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:19](#); [16:13](#); [27:22](#); [28:4](#); [28:13](#); [38:13](#))



## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:8](#); [18:18](#); [20:25](#); [24:4](#); [34:14](#); [34:18](#); [36:31](#))

## **govern, governor, proconsul, Tirshatha**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a large area of land (such as a territory, region, or province) within a nation or empire.

- In the Old Testament, the term “Tirshatha” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Persian province.
- In the New Testament, the term “proconsul” is a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or “supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, province, Rome, [ruler](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G04450, G04460, G07460, G14810, G22320, G22330, G22300, G42320

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 23:6](#); [23:12](#); [23:23](#))

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 44:29](#); [45:17](#); [45:24](#); [46:5](#); [46:7](#); [46:11](#); [46:14](#); [46:15](#); [46:20](#))

## grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 36:29](#))

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 32:22](#); [32:23](#); [32:25](#); [32:26](#); [37:12](#); [37:13](#); [39:11](#))

## Greece, Grecian

### Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called "Greeks" and their language is "Greek." People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term "Greek" is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Corinth, Gentile, Greek, Hebrew, Philippi, Thessalonica)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 8:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 9:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G16710

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:13](#); [27:19](#))

## groan

### Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:2
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:2
- Psalms 32:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0584, H0585, H0602, H0603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G47260, G47270, G49590

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:6](#); [21:7](#))



## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, [honor](#), [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 1:8; 2:9; 3:14; 3:18; 3:20; 3:22; 6:14; 7:21; 7:27; 8:1; 8:3; 8:11; 9:1; 9:2; 10:7; 10:8; 10:12; 10:21; 11:9; 12:7; 13:9; 13:18; 13:21; 13:22; 13:23; 14:9; 14:13; 16:11; 16:27; 16:39; 16:49; 17:18; 18:8; 18:17; 20:5; 20:6; 20:15; 20:22; 20:23; 20:28; 20:33; 20:34; 20:42; 21:7; 21:11; 21:14; 21:17; 21:19; 21:31; 22:13; 22:14; 23:9; 23:28; 23:31; 23:37; 23:42; 23:45; 25:6; 25:7; 25:13; 25:14; 25:16; 27:15; 27:21; 28:9; 28:10; 30:10; 30:12; 30:22; 30:24; 30:25; 31:11; 33:6; 33:8; 33:22; 34:10; 34:27; 35:3; 35:5; 36:7; 37:1; 37:17; 37:19; 37:20; 38:12; 38:17; 39:3; 39:9; 39:21; 39:23; 40:1; 40:3; 40:5; 43:7; 43:26; 44:12; 46:5; 46:7; 46:11; 47:3; 47:14; 48:1)

## hang, hung

### Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures “hung” a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 15:3](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#))

## head

### Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:22](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [5:1](#); [6:13](#); [7:18](#); [8:3](#); [9:10](#); [10:1](#); [11:21](#); [13:18](#); [16:12](#); [16:25](#); [16:31](#); [16:43](#); [17:4](#); [17:19](#); [17:22](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [22:31](#); [23:15](#); [23:42](#); [24:23](#); [27:22](#); [27:30](#); [29:18](#); [32:27](#); [33:4](#); [40:1](#); [42:12](#); [43:12](#); [44:18](#); [44:20](#))

## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:4](#); [3:7](#); [6:9](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [13:2](#); [13:17](#); [13:22](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:7](#); [16:27](#); [18:31](#); [20:16](#); [21:7](#); [21:15](#); [22:14](#); [25:6](#); [25:15](#); [27:4](#); [27:13](#); [27:25](#); [27:26](#); [27:27](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:8](#); [28:17](#); [31:10](#); [32:9](#); [33:31](#); [36:5](#); [36:26](#); [38:10](#); [40:4](#); [44:5](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:1](#); [8:3](#); [29:5](#); [31:6](#); [31:13](#); [32:4](#); [32:7](#); [32:8](#); [38:20](#))

## Hittite

### Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:3](#); [16:45](#))



## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:39](#); [20:40](#); [22:8](#); [22:26](#); [28:14](#); [36:20](#); [36:21](#); [36:22](#); [36:38](#); [39:7](#); [39:25](#); [41:4](#); [41:21](#); [41:23](#); [Notes](#); [42:13](#); [42:14](#); [42:20](#); [43:7](#); [43:8](#); [43:12](#); [44:8](#); [44:13](#); [44:19](#); [44:23](#); [44:27](#); [45:1](#); [45:2](#); [45:3](#); [45:4](#); [45:6](#); [45:7](#); [46:19](#); [48:10](#); [48:12](#); [48:14](#); [48:18](#); [48:20](#); [48:21](#))

## honey, honeycomb

### Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:13](#); [16:19](#); [20:6](#); [20:15](#); [27:17](#))

## honor

### Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 22:25](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), confidence, [good](#), obey, [trust](#), word of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 19:5; 37:11](#))

## horse, warhorse, horseback

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: chariot, [donkey](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:15](#); [23:6](#); [23:12](#); [23:20](#); [23:23](#); [26:7](#); [26:10](#); [26:11](#); [27:14](#); [38:4](#); [38:15](#); [39:20](#))

## horseman

### Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, [horse](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 38:4](#))

## house, household

### Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:27; 2:5; 2:6; 2:8; 3:1; 3:4; 3:5; 3:7; 3:9; 3:17; 3:24; 3:26; 3:27; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 5:4; 6:11; 7:15; 7:24; 8:6; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:9; 10:3; 10:4; 10:18; 10:19; 11:1; 11:3; 11:5; 11:15; 12:2; 12:3; 12:6; 12:9; 12:10; 12:24; 12:25; 12:27; 13:5; 13:9; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:11; 16:41; 17:2; 17:12; 18:6; 18:15; 18:25; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 20:5; 20:13; 20:27; 20:30; 20:31; 20:39; 20:40; 20:44; 22:18; 23:39; 23:47; 24:3; 24:21; 25:3; 25:8; 25:12; 26:12; 27:14; 28:24; 28:25; 28:26; 29:6; 29:16; 29:21; 33:7; 33:10; 33:11; 33:20; 33:30; 34:30; 35:15; 36:10; 36:17;](#)



36:21; 36:22; 36:32; 36:37; 37:11; 37:16; 38:6; 39:12; 39:22; 39:23; 39:25; 39:29; 40:4; 40:5; 40:45; 40:47; 40:48; 41:5;  
41:6; 41:7; 41:8; 41:9; 41:10; 41:13; 41:14; 41:17; 41:19; 41:26; 42:15; 43:4; 43:5; 43:7; 43:10; 43:11; 43:12; 43:21; 44:4;  
44:5; 44:6; 44:7; 44:11; 44:12; 44:14; 44:17; 44:22; 44:30; 45:4; 45:5; 45:6; 45:8; 45:17; 45:19; 45:20; 46:24; 47:1; 48:21)

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land, possess)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:24](#); [33:24](#); [35:10](#); [36:12](#); [44:28](#); [45:1](#); [46:16](#); [46:17](#); [46:18](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [47:22](#); [47:23](#))

## iniquity

### Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), [trespass](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [7:19](#); [9:9](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:7](#); [14:10](#); [16:49](#); [18:30](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:25](#); [21:29](#); [28:18](#); [29:16](#); [32:27](#); [35:5](#); [36:31](#); [36:33](#); [43:10](#); [44:10](#); [44:12](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means “He struggles with God.”
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “sons of Israel” or the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** ***its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.***
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:3; 3:1; 3:4; 3:5; 3:7; 3:17; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:13; 5:4; 6:2; 6:3; 6:5; 6:11; 7:2; 8:4; 8:6; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 9:3; 9:8; 9:9; 10:19; 10:20; 11:5; 11:10; 11:11; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; 11:22; 12:6; 12:9; 12:10; 12:19; 12:22; 12:23; 12:24; 12:27; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:9; 13:16; 14:1; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:9; 14:11; 17:2; 17:23; 18:2; 18:3; 18:6; 18:15; 18:25; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 19:1; 19:9; 20:1; 20:3; 20:5; 20:13; 20:27; 20:30; 20:31; 20:38; 20:39; 20:40; 20:42; 20:44; 21:2; 21:3; 21:12; 21:25; 22:6; 22:18; 24:21; 25:3; 25:6; 25:14; 27:17; 28:24; 28:25; 29:6; 29:16; 29:21; 33:7; 33:10; 33:11; 33:20; 33:24; 33:28; 34:2; 34:13; 34:14; 34:30; 35:5; 35:12; 35:15; 36:1; 36:4; 36:6; 36:8; 36:10; 36:12; 36:17; 36:21; 36:22; 36:32; 36:37; 37:11; 37:12; 37:16; 37:19; 37:21; 37:22; 37:28; 38:8; 38:14; 38:16; 38:17; 38:18; 38:19; 39:2; 39:4; 39:7; 39:9; 39:11; 39:12; 39:17; 39:22; 39:23; 39:25; 39:29; 40:2; 40:4; 43:2; 43:7; 43:10; 44:2; 44:6; 44:9; 44:10; 44:12; 44:15; 44:22; 44:28; 44:29; 45:6; 45:8; 45:9; 45:15; 45:16; 45:17; 47:13; 47:18; 47:21; 47:22; 48:11; 48:19; 48:29; 48:31)

## Issachar

### Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Leah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 48:25](#); [48:26](#); [48:33](#))

## Jacob, Israel

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:5](#); [28:25](#); [37:25](#); [39:25](#))



# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:1](#); [4:7](#); [4:16](#); [5:5](#); [8:3](#); [9:4](#); [9:8](#); [11:15](#); [12:10](#); [12:19](#); [13:16](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [15:6](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [17:12](#); [21:2](#); [21:20](#); [21:22](#); [22:19](#); [23:4](#); [24:2](#); [26:2](#); [33:21](#); [36:38](#))

## Job

### Facts:

Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

- Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
- It is thought that he lived during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
- The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
- After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
- The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Esau](#), [flood](#), [JacobNoah](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- James 5:9-11
- Job 1:1
- Job 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0347, G24920

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 14:14](#); [14:20](#))

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 47:18](#))

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 37:19](#); [47:13](#); [48:32](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:12](#); [25:6](#); [36:5](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9:9](#); [37:16](#))



## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24530

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:6](#); [8:1](#); [8:17](#); [21:20](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:12](#); [27:17](#); [37:19](#); [48:7](#); [48:8](#); [48:22](#); [48:31](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment?**”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [7:3](#); [7:8](#); [7:23](#); [7:27](#); [11:20](#); [16:38](#); [17:20](#); [18:5](#); [18:8](#); [18:17](#); [18:19](#); [18:21](#); [18:27](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [20:24](#); [20:35](#); [22:29](#); [23:24](#); [23:45](#); [33:14](#); [33:16](#); [33:19](#); [34:20](#); [34:22](#); [37:24](#); [38:22](#); [39:21](#); [44:24](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:7](#); [1:23](#))

## Kedar

### Facts:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, goat, Ishmael, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Song of Songs 1:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6938

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:21](#))

## Kerethites

### Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as “Cherethites.”

- The “Kerethites and Pelethites” were a special group of soldiers from King David’s army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David’s administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom’s revolt.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Absalom, [Benaiah](#), [David](#), [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- Zephaniah 2:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3774

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 25:16](#))

## king, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:2](#); [7:27](#); [17:12](#); [17:16](#); [19:9](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [24:2](#); [26:7](#); [27:33](#); [28:12](#); [28:17](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#); [30:10](#); [30:21](#); [30:22](#); [30:24](#); [30:25](#); [31:2](#); [32:2](#); [32:11](#); [32:29](#); [37:22](#); [37:24](#); [43:7](#); [43:9](#))



# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.

- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:14](#); [29:14](#); [37:22](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:13; 2:5; 3:22; 3:25; 5:4; 5:13; 6:7; 6:10; 6:13; 6:14; 7:4; 7:9; 7:10; 7:27; 9:7; 10:20; 11:5; 11:7; 11:10; 11:12; 12:4; 12:6; 12:7; 12:15; 12:16; 12:20; 13:9; 13:14; 13:21; 13:23; 14:8; 14:22; 14:23; 15:7; 16:2; 16:62; 17:12; 17:21; 17:24; 19:7; 20:4; 20:5; 20:9; 20:11; 20:14; 20:22; 20:26; 20:38; 20:42; 20:44; 21:4; 21:5; 21:19; 22:2; 22:16; 22:22; 22:26; 23:49; 24:6; 24:12; 24:24; 24:27; 25:5; 25:7; 25:11; 25:14; 25:17; 26:6; 28:19; 28:22; 28:23; 28:24; 28:26; 29:6; 29:9; 29:16; 29:21; 30:8; 30:9; 30:19; 30:25; 30:26; 32:9; 32:15; 33:29; 33:33; 34:27; 34:30; 35:4; 35:9; 35:11; 35:12; 35:15; 36:11; 36:20; 36:23; 36:32; 36:36; 36:38; 37:3; 37:6; 37:13; 37:14; 37:28; 38:8; 38:14; 38:16; 38:23; 39:6; 39:7; 39:22; 39:23; 39:28; 42:14; 43:11; 44:3; 44:23; 46:8; 46:9; 46:10; 46:12; 46:20; 47:1; 47:8; 47:12)

## **lamb, Lamb of God**

### **Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

### **Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 46:4](#); [46:6](#))

## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 22:26](#); [43:11](#); [43:12](#); [44:5](#); [44:24](#))



# Lebanon

## Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- Deuteronomy 1:7-8
- Psalms 29:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:3](#); [27:5](#); [31:3](#); [31:15](#); [31:16](#))

## Levi, Levite

### Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [Jacob](#), Leah, Matthew)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 40:46](#); [43:19](#); [44:10](#); [44:15](#); [45:5](#); [48:11](#); [48:12](#); [48:13](#); [48:22](#); [48:31](#))

## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:19; 3:21; 4:14; 5:11; 7:19; 13:18; 13:19; 13:20; 14:14; 14:16; 14:18; 14:20; 16:5; 16:6; 16:48; 17:16; 17:17; 17:19; 18:3; 18:9; 18:13; 18:17; 18:19; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:27; 18:28; 18:32; 20:3; 20:25; 20:31; 20:33; 22:25; 22:27; 23:17; 23:18; 23:22; 23:28; 24:21; 24:25; 26:20; 27:31; 32:23; 32:24; 32:25; 32:26; 32:27; 32:32; 33:5; 33:6; 33:9; 33:10; 33:11; 33:13; 33:15; 33:16; 33:19; 33:27; 34:8; 35:6; 35:11; 36:5; 37:5; 37:6; 37:9; 37:10; 37:14; 47:9)

## lion, lioness

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:10](#); [10:14](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:4; 3:11; 3:27; 4:14; 5:5; 5:7; 5:8; 5:11; 6:3; 6:11; 7:2; 7:5; 8:1; 9:8; 11:7; 11:8; 11:13; 11:16; 11:17; 11:21; 12:10; 12:19; 12:23; 12:25; 12:28; 13:3; 13:8; 13:9; 13:13; 13:16; 13:18; 13:20; 14:4; 14:6; 14:11; 14:14; 14:16; 14:18; 14:20; 14:21; 14:23; 15:6; 15:8; 16:3; 16:8; 16:14; 16:19; 16:23; 16:30; 16:36; 16:43; 16:48; 16:59; 16:63; 17:3; 17:9; 17:16; 17:19; 17:22; 18:3; 18:9; 18:23; 18:25; 18:29; 18:30; 18:32; 20:3; 20:5; 20:27; 20:30; 20:31; 20:33; 20:36; 20:39; 20:40; 20:44; 20:47; 20:49; 21:7; 21:9; 21:13; 21:24; 21:26; 21:28; 22:3; 22:12; 22:19; 22:28; 22:31; 23:22; 23:28; 23:32; 23:34; 23:35; 23:46; 23:49; 24:3; 24:6; 24:9; 24:14; 24:21; 24:24; 25:3; 25:6; 25:8; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:15; 25:16; 26:3; 26:5; 26:7; 26:14; 26:15; 26:19; 26:21; 27:3; 28:2; 28:6; 28:10; 28:12; 28:22; 28:24; 28:25; 29:3; 29:8; 29:13; 29:16; 29:19; 29:20; 30:2; 30:6; 30:10; 30:13; 30:22; 31:10; 31:15; 31:18; 32:3; 32:8; 32:11; 32:14; 32:16; 32:31; 32:32; 33:11; 33:17; 33:20; 33:25; 33:27; 34:2; 34:8; 34:10; 34:11; 34:15; 34:17; 34:20; 34:30; 34:31; 35:3; 35:6; 35:11; 35:14; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:6; 36:7; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:22; 36:23; 36:32; 36:33; 36:37; 37:3; 37:5; 37:9; 37:12; 37:19; 37:21; 38:3; 38:10; 38:14; 38:17; 38:18; 38:21; 39:1; 39:5; 39:8; 39:10; 39:13; 39:17; 39:20; 39:25; 39:29; 43:18; 43:19; 43:27; 44:6; 44:9; 44:12; 44:15; 44:27; 45:9; 45:15; 45:18; 46:1; 46:16; 47:13; 47:23; 48:29)

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using “lots” to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the “lots”) were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the “lots” actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 1:7
- Luke 1:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 22:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1486, H5307, G28190, G29750

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:6](#))



## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:33](#); [16:36](#); [16:37](#); [23:5](#); [23:9](#); [23:22](#))

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:40](#); [30:9](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:24](#); [30:22](#); [32:12](#); [32:21](#); [32:27](#); [34:16](#); [39:18](#); [39:20](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 12:6](#); [12:11](#))

## Moab, Moabite

### Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 25:8; 25:9](#))

## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:12](#); [7:27](#); [31:15](#))



## name

### Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:14](#); [16:15](#); [20:9](#); [20:14](#); [20:22](#); [20:29](#); [20:39](#); [20:44](#); [23:10](#); [24:2](#); [36:20](#); [36:21](#); [36:23](#); [39:7](#); [39:16](#); [43:7](#); [43:8](#); [48:1](#); [48:31](#))

# Naphtali

## Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Bilhah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 48:3](#); [48:4](#); [48:34](#))

## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: Ezekiel 2:3; 4:13; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:14; 5:15; 6:8; 6:9; 7:24; 11:12; 11:16; 12:15; 12:16; 16:14; 19:4; 19:8; 20:9; 20:14; 20:22; 20:23; 20:41; 22:4; 22:15; 22:16; 23:30; 25:7; 25:8; 25:10; 26:3; 26:5; 28:7; 28:25; 29:12; 29:15; 30:3; 30:11; 30:23; 30:26; 31:6; 31:11; 31:12; 31:16; 31:17; 32:2; 32:9; 32:12; 32:16; 32:18; 34:28; 34:29; 35:10; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:6; 36:7; 36:13; 36:15; 36:19; 36:20; 36:21; 36:22; 36:23; 36:24; 36:30; 36:36; 37:21; 37:22; 37:28; 38:16; 38:23; 39:7; 39:21; 39:23; 39:27; 39:28)

# Nebuchadnezzar

## Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 1:2
- Daniel 4:4
- Ezekiel 26:8

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:6** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:8** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:9** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 26:7](#); [29:18](#); [30:10](#))

## Negev

### Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5045, H6160

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:47](#))

## new moon

### Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:5
- 2 Kings 4:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G33760, G35610

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 46:1](#); [46:6](#))

# Noah

## Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), ark)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 14:14](#); [14:20](#))



## noble, nobleman, royal official

### Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 4:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 16:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G09370, G21040

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:23](#); [32:18](#))

## **oath, swear, swearing, swear by**

### **Definition:**

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:8](#); [17:13](#); [21:23](#))

# oil

## Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:13](#); [16:18](#); [16:19](#); [23:41](#); [27:17](#); [45:24](#); [46:5](#); [46:7](#); [46:11](#); [46:14](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:27](#))

## Passover

### Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6453, G39570

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 45:21](#))

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:25](#); [13:10](#); [13:16](#); [34:25](#); [37:26](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 34 General Notes](#))



## people, people group

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: Ezekiel 3:5; 3:6; 3:11; 7:27; 11:1; 11:17; 11:20; 12:19; 13:9; 13:10; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 13:21; 13:23; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 17:15; 20:34; 20:35; 20:41; 21:12; 22:29; 23:24; 24:18; 24:19; 25:7; 25:14; 26:2; 26:7; 26:11; 26:20; 27:3; 27:33; 27:36; 28:19; 28:25; 29:13; 30:11; 31:12; 32:3; 32:9; 32:10; 33:2; 33:3; 33:6; 33:12; 33:17; 33:30; 33:31; 34:13; 34:30; 36:3; 36:8; 36:12; 36:15; 36:20; 36:28; 37:12; 37:13; 37:18; 37:23; 37:27; 38:6; 38:8; 38:9; 38:12; 38:14; 38:15; 38:16; 38:22; 39:4; 39:7; 39:13; 39:27; 42:14; 44:11; 44:19; 44:23; 45:8; 45:9; 45:16; 45:22; 46:3; 46:9; 46:18; 46:20; 46:24)

## perish

### Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

### Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:26](#); [19:5](#); [26:17](#))

## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 35:6](#))

## Persia, Persians

### Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:20
- Daniel 10:13
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:10](#); [38:5](#))

## Philistines

### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:27](#); [16:57](#); [25:15](#); [25:16](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:1](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [20:37](#); [37:2](#); [39:15](#); [46:21](#); [47:3](#); [47:4](#))



## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:3](#); [22:26](#); [40:45](#); [40:46](#); [42:13](#); [42:14](#); [43:19](#); [43:24](#); [43:27](#); [Notes](#); [44:13](#); [44:15](#); [44:21](#); [44:30](#); [44:31](#); [Notes](#); [45:4](#); [45:19](#); [46:2](#); [46:19](#); [46:20](#); [48:10](#); [48:11](#); [48:13](#))

## prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, [Christ](#), demon, [lord](#), power, [ruler](#), Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11:1](#); [12:10](#); [17:12](#); [22:27](#); [44:3](#); [45:17](#); [45:22](#); [46:2](#); [46:4](#); [46:8](#); [46:12](#); [46:16](#); [46:18](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:21](#); [7:22](#); [7:24](#); [9:6](#); [13:19](#); [22:16](#); [22:26](#); [23:39](#); [28:7](#); [28:16](#); [36:20](#); [44:7](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 29 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [2:5](#); [4:7](#); [6:2](#); [Notes](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:9](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [14:4](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [20:46](#); [21:2](#); [22:25](#); [Notes](#); [25:2](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [28:21](#); [Notes](#); [29:2](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [33:33](#); [35:2](#); [37:7](#); [37:10](#); [38:2](#); [38:17](#))

## prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:13](#); [17:9](#); [26:12](#); [28:4](#); [28:5](#); [29:18](#); [32:31](#); [37:10](#); [38:4](#))



## prostitute, harlot, whored

### Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 6:9](#); [16:30](#); [16:33](#); [16:34](#); [16:35](#); [20:30](#); [23:3](#); [23:19](#); [23:30](#); [23:43](#); [23:44](#))

## prostrate, bow down, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), praise, [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 8:16](#); [46:2](#); [46:3](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 24:9; 31:4](#))

## provoke, provoked, provocation

### Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G20420, G38630, G39470, G39490, G42920

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 35:12](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 22:24](#); [24:13](#); [36:25](#); [36:33](#); [37:23](#); [39:12](#); [39:16](#); [43:26](#))

## purple

### Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:7](#); [27:16](#))

## Rabbah

### Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: Ammon, [David](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 2 Samuel 12:26
- Deuteronomy 3:11
- Ezekiel 25:3-5
- Jeremiah 49:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7237

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 21:20](#); [25:5](#))



## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 23:22](#))

## rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 2:3; 17:15](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11:15](#))

## reign, rule

### Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:16](#))

## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:10](#); [9:8](#); [11:13](#); [25:16](#); [36:5](#))

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(**Go back to:** [Ezekiel 33 General Notes](#))



## report, reported, tell, reputation

### Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:18](#); [33:8](#); [33:13](#); [36:20](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:13](#); [16:42](#); [21:17](#); [24:13](#); [37:1](#); [40:2](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:19](#); [7:13](#); [8:6](#); [8:13](#); [8:15](#); [9:11](#); [13:22](#); [14:6](#); [16:55](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:12](#); [18:17](#); [18:21](#); [18:30](#); [21:5](#); [21:30](#); [27:15](#); [33:9](#); [33:11](#); [33:12](#); [33:15](#); [34:4](#); [34:16](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [38:8](#); [38:12](#); [39:25](#); [46:9](#))

## return, turn back

### Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:14](#); [8:17](#); [14:6](#); [16:53](#); [18:28](#); [18:30](#); [18:32](#); [20:22](#); [29:14](#); [33:14](#); [35:7](#); [38:4](#); [39:2](#); [44:1](#); [46:17](#); [47:1](#); [47:6](#))

## Reuben

### Facts:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Leah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 48:6](#); [48:7](#); [48:31](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:20](#); [3:21](#); [13:22](#); [18:5](#); [18:9](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [23:45](#); [33:18](#))

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9:11](#); [26:16](#))



## rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, [governor](#), [king](#), synagogue)

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 19:14](#))

## Sabbath

### Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:12](#); [20:13](#); [20:16](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:24](#); [22:8](#); [22:26](#); [23:38](#); [44:24](#); [45:17](#); [46:1](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [46:12](#))

## sackcloth

### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: ash, [camel](#), goat, humble, [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:18; 27:31](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:22](#); [20:28](#); [20:40](#); [34:3](#); [39:17](#); [39:19](#); [44:30](#); [45:1](#); [45:6](#); [45:7](#); [45:15](#); [46:24](#); [48:10](#); [48:18](#); [48:20](#); [48:21](#))

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), Galilee, [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:1-3
- Acts 8:5
- John 4:4-5
- Luke 9:51-53
- Luke 10:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:4** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:8** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:9** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G45400, G45410, G45420

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:46](#); [16:53](#); [23:4](#); [23:33](#))

## sanctuary

### Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), Holy Spirit, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), tax, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G00400

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:11](#); [8:6](#); [9:6](#); [11:16](#); [21:2](#); [23:38](#); [23:39](#); [24:21](#); [25:3](#); [28:18](#); [37:26](#); [37:28](#); [43:21](#); [44:1](#); [44:5](#); [44:7](#); [44:8](#); [44:9](#); [44:11](#); [44:15](#); [44:16](#); [45:3](#); [45:4](#); [45:18](#); [47:12](#); [48:8](#); [48:10](#); [48:21](#))



## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), punish, [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:18](#); [33:5](#))

## scribe

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:5
- Luke 7:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 1:22
- Mark 2:16
- Matthew 5:19-20
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5608, H5613, H7083, G11220

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 9:2](#); [9:3](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: children, [descendant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 17:5](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:18](#); [3:20](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [14:3](#); [14:7](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [20:31](#); [20:40](#); [22:30](#); [26:21](#); [33:6](#); [33:8](#); [34:4](#); [34:6](#); [34:8](#); [34:16](#); [36:37](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

### Servant

- Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

## Enslave

- Strong's: H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:39](#); [20:40](#); [28:25](#); [29:18](#); [29:20](#); [34:23](#); [34:24](#); [36:34](#); [37:24](#); [37:25](#); [38:17](#); [42:14](#); [44:11](#); [44:12](#); [44:19](#); [45:4](#); [45:5](#); [46:24](#); [48:19](#))



## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 20:41](#); [28:22](#); [28:25](#); [36:23](#); [38:23](#); [39:27](#); [46:20](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:15](#); [7:18](#); [16:52](#); [16:54](#); [16:57](#); [16:61](#); [21:28](#); [22:4](#); [32:30](#); [36:30](#); [36:32](#); [43:10](#); [43:11](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
  - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
  - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:3](#))

## silver

### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:19](#); [16:13](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:22](#); [27:12](#); [28:4](#); [38:13](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:20](#); [3:21](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [14:13](#); [16:51](#); [16:52](#); [Notes](#); [18:14](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [21:24](#); [Notes](#); [28:16](#); [Notes](#); [33:10](#); [33:12](#); [33:16](#); [Notes](#); [37:23](#); [43:20](#); [43:22](#); [43:25](#); [44:27](#); [45:18](#); [45:22](#); [45:23](#))



## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:21](#))

## Sodom

### Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), Gomorrah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 16:46](#); [16:48](#); [16:49](#); [16:53](#); [16:55](#); [16:56](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 2:1; 2:3; 2:6; 2:8; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:10; 3:11; 3:17; 3:25; 4:1; 4:13; 4:16; 5:1; 5:10; 6:2; 6:5; 7:2; 8:5; 8:6; 8:8; 8:11; 8:12; 8:15; 8:17; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:13; 11:15; 12:2; 12:3; 12:9; 12:18; 12:22; 12:27; 13:2; 13:17; 14:3; 14:13; 14:16; 14:18; 14:20; 14:22; 15:2; 16:2; 16:20; 16:21; 16:26; 16:28; 16:36; 16:45; 17:2; 18:2; 18:4; 18:10; 18:14; 18:19; 18:20; 20:3; 20:4; 20:18; 20:21; 20:27; 20:31; 20:46; 21:2; 21:6; 21:9; 21:10; 21:12; 21:14; 21:19; 21:20; 21:28; 22:2; 22:18; 22:24; 23:2; 23:4; 23:7; 23:9; 23:10; 23:12; 23:15; 23:17; 23:23; 23:25; 23:36; 23:37; 23:39; 23:47; 24:2; 24:16; 24:21; 24:25; 25:2; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:10; 26:2; 27:2; 27:11; 27:15; 28:2; 28:12; 28:21; 29:2; 29:18; 30:2; 30:5; 30:21; 31:2; 31:14; 32:2; 32:18; 33:2; 33:7; 33:10; 33:12; 33:17; 33:24; 33:30; 34:2; 35:2; 35:5; 36:1; 36:17; 37:3; 37:9; 37:11; 37:16; 37:18; 37:21; 37:25; 38:2; 38:14; 39:1; 39:17; 40:4; 40:46; 43:7; 43:10; 43:18; 43:19; 43:23; 43:25; 44:5; 44:7; 44:9; 44:15; 44:25; 45:18; 46:6; 46:13; 46:16; 46:17; 46:18; 47:6; 47:22; 48:11)

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:4](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [2:2](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [3:24](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [8:3](#); [10:17](#); [11:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:19](#); [11:24](#); [12:14](#); [13:3](#); [13:11](#); [13:13](#); [17:10](#); [17:21](#); [18:31](#); [19:12](#); [20:32](#); [21:7](#); [27:26](#); [36:26](#); [36:27](#); [37:1](#); [37:5](#); [37:6](#); [37:8](#); [37:9](#); [37:14](#); [39:29](#); [42:16](#); [42:17](#); [42:18](#); [42:19](#); [42:20](#); [43:5](#))

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11:12](#); [16:27](#); [18:9](#); [20:25](#); [23:45](#); [36:27](#); [45:9](#); [45:14](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,



G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:14](#); [7:13](#); [16:49](#); [20:33](#); [20:34](#); [22:14](#); [26:17](#); [27:9](#); [27:27](#); [34:4](#); [34:16](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:1; 5:2; 5:12; 5:17; 6:3; 6:8; 6:11; 6:12; 7:15; 11:8; 11:10; 12:14; 14:17; 14:21; 16:40; 17:21; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:9; 21:11; 21:12; 21:14; 21:15; 21:19; 21:20; 21:28; 23:10; 23:25; 23:47; 24:21; 25:13; 26:6; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 28:7; 28:23; 29:8; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 30:11; 30:17; 30:21; 30:24; 30:25; 31:17; 31:18; 32:10; 32:11; 32:12; 32:20; 32:21; 32:22; 32:23; 32:24; 32:25; 32:26; 32:27; 32:28; 32:29; 32:30; 32:31; 32:32; 33:2; 33:4; 33:6; 33:26; 33:27; 35:5; 35:8; 38:4; 38:21; 39:23](#))

# tabernacle

## Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 25:4](#); [37:27](#))

## Tarshish

### Facts:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esther, Japheth, Jonah, Nineveh, Phoenicia, [wise men](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 2:16
- Jeremiah 10:9
- Jonah 1:3
- Psalms 48:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:12](#); [27:25](#); [38:13](#))

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [8:1](#); [8:16](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [40:43](#); [Notes](#); [41:1](#); [41:4](#); [41:20](#); [41:21](#); [41:23](#); [41:25](#); [Notes](#); [42:8](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), true)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60

- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 14:4](#); [14:7](#))



## threshold, doorway

### Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:17-19
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Isaiah 6:4
- Proverbs 17:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 41:16](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:26](#); [10:1](#); [26:16](#); [43:7](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:7](#); [7:12](#))

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 14:13](#); [15:8](#); [17:20](#); [20:27](#); [39:26](#))

## tremble, stagger, shake

### Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 26:10](#); [26:15](#); [27:28](#); [31:16](#))

## trespass

### Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 18:24](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 7:11](#); [19:11](#); [19:14](#); [20:37](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#); [45:8](#); [47:13](#); [47:21](#); [47:22](#); [48:1](#); [48:19](#); [48:23](#); [48:29](#); [48:31](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 33:3](#); [33:4](#); [33:5](#); [33:6](#))



## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, [faithful](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11 General Notes](#))

## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G51830, G51840

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 26:2](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:7](#); [27:2](#); [27:3](#); [27:8](#); [28:2](#); [28:12](#); [29:18](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 45:21](#))

## **vine**

### **Definition:**

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 15:2](#); [15:6](#); [17:7](#))

## vineyard

### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 28:26](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 44:22](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:30](#))

## VOW

### Definition:

A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5087, H5088, G21710

([Go back to: Ezekiel 17 General Notes](#))



## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 1:9](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:17](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [3:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [7:14](#); [7:17](#); [10:11](#); [10:16](#); [10:22](#); [11:12](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [12:11](#); [13:3](#); [16:47](#); [18:9](#); [18:17](#); [20:13](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [20:39](#); [21:7](#); [23:31](#); [25:3](#); [28:14](#); [30:17](#); [30:18](#); [31:4](#); [32:14](#); [33:15](#); [33:31](#); [36:27](#); [37:21](#); [37:24](#))

## watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 11:20](#); [18:9](#); [18:19](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [36:27](#); [37:24](#); [40:45](#); [40:46](#); [44:8](#); [44:14](#); [44:15](#); [44:24](#); [48:11](#))

## wheat

### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), thresh, [winnow](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 4:9](#); [45:13](#))

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:18](#); [44:21](#))

## winnow, sift

### Definition:

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

### Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 3:12
- Proverbs 20:8
- Ruth 3:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5128, H5130, G44250, G46170

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 5:2](#); [5:12](#); [12:14](#))

## wise men, advisor

### Definition:

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

### Old Testament

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

### New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [divination](#), [magic](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [ruler](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 27:8](#); [28:3](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 3:14](#); [5:13](#); [5:15](#); [6:12](#); [7:8](#); [8:18](#); [9:8](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [14:19](#); [16:38](#); [16:42](#); [19:12](#); [20:8](#); [20:13](#); [20:21](#); [21:17](#); [22:22](#); [23:25](#); [24:8](#); [24:13](#); [25:17](#); [30:15](#); [36:18](#); [38:18](#))

# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5



- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: Ezekiel 1:3; 1:28; 3:12; 3:14; 3:16; 3:22; 3:23; 4:13; 5:13; 5:15; 5:17; 6:1; 6:7; 6:10; 6:13; 6:14; 7:1; 7:4; 7:9; 7:19; 7:27; 8:12; 8:14; 8:16; 9:4; 9:9; 10:4; 10:18; 10:19; 11:1; 11:5; 11:10; 11:12; 11:14; 11:15; 11:23; 11:25; 12:1; 12:8; 12:15; 12:16; 12:17; 12:20; 12:21; 12:25; 12:26; 13:1; 13:2; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:14; 13:21; 13:23; 14:2; 14:4; 14:7; 14:8; 14:9; 14:12; 15:1; 15:7; 16:1; 16:35; 16:58; 16:62; 17:1; 17:11; 17:21; 17:24; 18:1; 20:1; 20:2; 20:5; 20:7; 20:12; 20:19; 20:20; 20:26; 20:38; 20:42; 20:44; 20:45; 20:47; 20:48; 21:1; 21:3; 21:5; 21:8; 21:17; 21:18; 21:32; 22:1; 22:14; 22:16; 22:17; 22:22; 22:23; 22:28; 23:1; 23:36; 24:1; 24:14; 24:15; 24:20; 24:27; 25:1; 25:5; 25:7; 25:11; 25:17; 26:1; 26:6; 26:14; 27:1; 28:1; 28:11; 28:20; 28:22; 28:23; 28:26; 29:1; 29:6; 29:9; 29:17; 29:21; 30:1; 30:3; 30:6; 30:8; 30:12; 30:19; 30:20; 30:25; 30:26; 31:1; 32:1; 32:15; 32:17; 33:1; 33:22; 33:23; 33:29; 33:30; 34:1; 34:7; 34:9; 34:24; 34:27; 34:30; 35:1; 35:4; 35:9; 35:10; 35:12; 35:15; 36:1; 36:11; 36:16; 36:20; 36:23; 36:36; 36:38; 37:1; 37:4; 37:6; 37:13; 37:14; 37:15; 37:28; 38:1; 38:23; 39:6; 39:7; 39:22; 39:28; 40:1; 40:46; 41:22; 42:13; 43:4; 43:5; 43:24; 44:2; 44:3; 44:4; 44:5; 45:1; 45:4; 45:23; 46:3; 46:4; 46:9; 46:12; 46:13; 46:14; 48:9; 48:10; 48:14; 48:35)

## Zadok

### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark of the covenant, [David](#), Jotham, Nehemiah, [reign](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 1:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 1:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G45240

(**Go back to:** [Ezekiel 40:46](#); [43:19](#); [44:15](#); [48:11](#))

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [Ezekiel 31:9; 39:25](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway



Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher

David Book

Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000

Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary

Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto

Matthew Latham

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics

Richard Joki

Door43 World Missions Community